

A M E R I C A N C U T T I N G E D G E

LEVEL 2

www.irLanguage.com



with minidictionary

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

STUDENTS' BOOK

sarah cunningham peter moor

with frances eales



longman.com

AMERICAN CUTTING EDGE

LEVEL 2



این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان
به صورت نشر برخط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است.
کپی برداری از آن خلاف قانون، شرع و اخلاق است و شامل پیگرد خواهد شد.



STUDENTS' BOOK

sarah cunningham peter moor
with frances eales

Module	Grammar	Vocabulary	Reading and Listening
What English do you know? (pages 6–7)			
Module 1 People and places page 8 Do you remember? page 15	1) be : names and countries 2) be : personal information 3) be : personal questions 4) indefinite articles: a, an ; jobs Pronunciation: <i>be</i> ; short forms WB Possessive adjectives	Vocabulary: names and countries Pronunciation: word stress WB Vocabulary booster: countries and nationalities	Listening: listening for personal information WB Listen and read: <i>People from different places</i>
Module 2 You and yours page 16 Do you remember? page 23	1) this, that, these, and those 2) (do) have/don't have 3) possessive 's Pronunciation: <i>this /ðɪs/ that /ðæt/ these /ði:z/ and those /ðoʊz/ and questions</i>	Vocabulary: everyday objects; family vocabulary Pronunciation: word stress WB Vocabulary booster: more everyday objects	Reading and listening: <i>My favorite thing!</i> WB Listen and read: <i>A famous family</i>
Module 3 Something in common page 24 Do you remember? page 30	1) Present Simple: questions (I, you, we, and they) 2) Present Simple: positive and negative 3) Prepositions of time Pronunciation: sentence stress in questions and answers	Vocabulary: common verbs WB Vocabulary booster: buildings	Reading: <i>Life in Britain</i> Find the times from information WB Listen and read: <i>Studying in South Korea</i>
Module 4 Loves and hates page 31 Do you remember? page 38	1) Present Simple: he and she; like ...ing 2) Present Simple questions: he and she 3) Activity verbs and adverbs of frequency Pronunciation: word stress	Vocabulary: likes and dislikes WB Vocabulary booster: everyday activities	Reading: <i>An Englishwoman in California</i> Listening: radio interview with an American in England WB Listen and read: <i>An Englishman's home</i>
Module 5 Getting from A to B page 39	1) Articles: the, a, an, and zero 2) Can and can't Pronunciation: <i>can and can't</i> WB Prepositions	Vocabulary: Means of transportation <i>Most, a lot of, some, not many</i> WB Vocabulary booster: travel	Reading: <i>Transportation facts</i> Listening: How to go to ... WB Listen and read: <i>Transportation statistics</i>
Consolidation Modules 1–5 (pages 46–47)			
Module 6 Eating and drinking page 48 Do you remember? page 55	1) There is and there are 2) Some and any 3) How much? and how many?	Vocabulary: food; countable and uncountable nouns WB Vocabulary booster: things to eat	Reading: <i>Healthy eating!</i> Listening: "Waiter! Waiter!" jokes WB Listen and read: a recipe
Module 7 Extraordinary lives page 56 Do you remember? page 64	1) Past Simple: was and were 2) Past Simple: regular and irregular verbs Pronunciation: present and past forms of <i>be</i>	Vocabulary: past time phrases WB Vocabulary booster: common verbs	Reading: Ordinary lives, important ideas Listening: My great-grandfather WB Listen and read: <i>The strange soldier</i>

Task and Speaking

Writing

Functions and Situations

Preparation for task: read a document and check information

Task: use documents to exchange information about two people (speaking)

Writing: complete personal details on a form

WB **Punctuation:** capital letters

WB **Improve your writing:** addresses in English

Real life: giving personal information

Pronunciation: sentence stress in questions

Preparation for task: listen to someone talking about her family tree (listening)

Task: draw a family tree and talk about your own family (speaking)

WB **Spelling:** plurals

WB **Improve your writing:** writing about people in your family

Real life: classroom English

Preparation for task: identify the topic of short conversations (listening)

Task: find six things in common with a partner (speaking)

Writing: write about the difference between your country and Britain

WB **Improve your writing:** commas (,), periods (.), *and*, and *but*

Real life: telling the time

Pronunciation: polite intonation

Preparation for task: read an email from Laura and answer questions

Task: read replies to Laura's email and choose the best email friend for Laura (speaking)

Writing: a paragraph about a foreigner who lives in your country

WB **Improve your writing:** a paragraph about a friend

Real life: classroom English

Preparation for task: listen to people answering questions about transportation

Task: prepare and conduct a class survey on transportation (speaking)

Writing: complete an Internet booking form for train tickets

WB **Improve your writing:** completing an immigration form

Real life: buying a ticket

Preparation for task: listen to someone describing a picture

Task: ask and answer questions to compare two pictures (speaking)

WB **Improve your writing:** Describing food from your country

Real life: ordering food and drinks

Preparation for task: listen to someone describing different times in her life

Task: talk to a partner about different times in your life (speaking)

WB **Improve your writing:** time linkers

Real life: ordinal numbers; dates, and years

Module

Grammar

Vocabulary

Reading and Listening

Module 8
Fact or fiction?
page 65
Do you remember?
page 72

1) Past Simple: negative
2) Past Simple: question words
Pronunciation: past forms

Vocabulary: common verbs in the Past Simple
WB Vocabulary booster: books, magazines, and newspapers

Listening: interview with a writer of a very short story
WB Listen and read: National heroes and heroines

Module 9
Buying and selling
page 73
Do you remember?
page 80

1) Comparative adjectives
2) Superlative adjectives

Vocabulary: stores and shopping
WB Vocabulary booster: a supermarket

Reading: Street markets around the world
WB Listen and read: The three most intelligent machines for your home

Module 10
Street life
page 81

1) Present Continuous
2) Present Simple and Present Continuous

Vocabulary: describing people; clothes

Listening: jobs with uniforms
WB Listen and read: Street style

Consolidation Modules 6–10 (pages 88–89)

Module 11
The world around us
page 90
Do you remember?
page 97

1) Can and can't for ability
2) Question words

Vocabulary: animals
WB Vocabulary booster: animals

Reading: Amazing animal facts!
Listening: Man's best friend
WB Listen and read: The animal world

Module 12
A day out
page 98
Do you remember?
page 105

1) Future intentions: going to, would like to, and want to
2) Suggestions and offers
Pronunciation: weak forms of to

Vocabulary: going out and staying in

Listening: listen to someone talking about the weather in Canada
WB Listen and read: The world weather report

Module 13
Keeping in touch
page 106
Do you remember?
page 113

1) Present Perfect
2) Articles: the, a, an, and zero

Vocabulary: ways of communicating
WB Vocabulary booster: the mail

Reading: Getting in touch through the ages

Module 14
Places to go
page 114
Do you remember?
page 121

1) have to, don't have to, can, and can't
2) Prepositions of movement
Pronunciation: have to and don't have to

Vocabulary: town facilities
WB Vocabulary booster: a shopping center

Listening: A guided tour of Edinburgh
WB Listen and read: unusual places to visit

Module 15
English for the future
page 122

1) Infinitive of purpose
2) Modal verbs for possibility: might and will
Pronunciation: word stress

Vocabulary: education and learning
WB Vocabulary booster: in an Internet café

Listening: An expert talks about the English language
Reading: Easy English?
WB Listen and read: The five ages of English

Consolidation Modules 11–15 (page 131–132)

Communication activities (pages 133–140)

Task and Speaking

Writing

Functions and Situations

Preparation for task: identify what is happening in some pictures

Task: use the pictures to invent a story (writing)

WB Improve your writing: a diary

Real life writing: write a diary in English

Preparation for task: listen to people talking about souvenirs

Task: decide on the best souvenirs for different people (speaking)

Writing: write a paragraph about a market you know

WB Improve your writing: describing a place

Real life: asking in stores

Preparation for task: answer questions about a picture and listen to someone describing it

Task: add details to a picture, then ask and answer questions with a partner (speaking)

Writing: write sentences to describe someone

WB Spelling: ...ing forms

WB Improve your writing: correcting mistakes

Real life: street talk

Preparation for task: take a general knowledge quiz, and listen and check your answers

Task: write quiz questions in groups, then take a class quiz

Optional writing: write questions to test your teacher's general knowledge

WB Improve your writing: periods, apostrophes, and question marks

Real life: different ways of saying numbers

Preparation for task: read descriptions of three places, then listen to people discussing plans for a day out

Task: Plan a day out in groups (speaking and writing)

WB Improve your writing: writing about a popular vacation resort

Real life: talking about the weather

Preparation for task: read three class web pages

Task: plan a class web page (speaking and writing)

WB Improve your writing: writing a note

Real life: telephoning

Pronunciation: polite intonation

Preparation for task: read an advertisement for a tourist attraction

Task: advertise a tourist attraction you know (writing)

WB Spelling and pronunciation: silent letters

WB Improve your writing: a postcard

Real life: directions

Preparation for task: read about three students

Task: choose a course for each of the students (speaking and listening)

WB Improve your writing: abbreviations on application forms (*Mr., Mrs., Dr., n/a*)

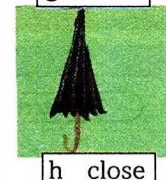
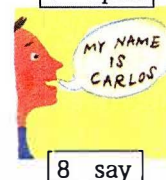
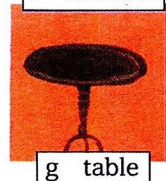
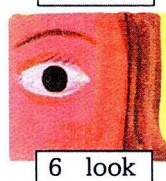
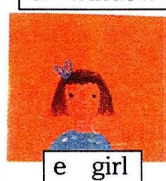
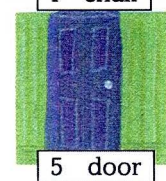
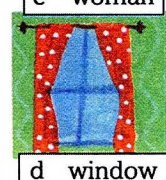
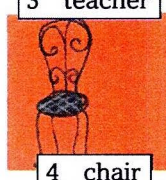
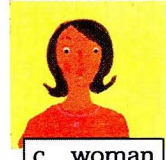
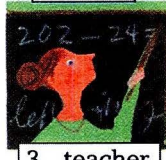
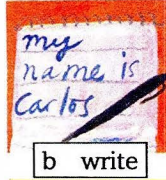
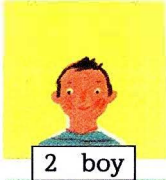
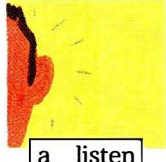
Real life: complete an application form for an English course

What English do you know?

1 Common words

Find the pairs of words. Say the words.

1 man - c woman



2 Numbers 0-21

Write the numbers with the words.

twenty <u>20</u>	eight	nine	four
sixteen	fifteen	five	ten
three	zero	seven	two
one	seventeen	twelve	thirteen
six	twenty-one	nineteen	
eleven	eighteen	fourteen	

3 Plurals

a) What are the plurals?

1 book <u>books</u>	5 chair	9 man
2 teacher <u>teachers</u>	6 student	10 woman
3 desk	7 girl	
4 pen	8 boy	

b) How many can you see in the picture?

five students



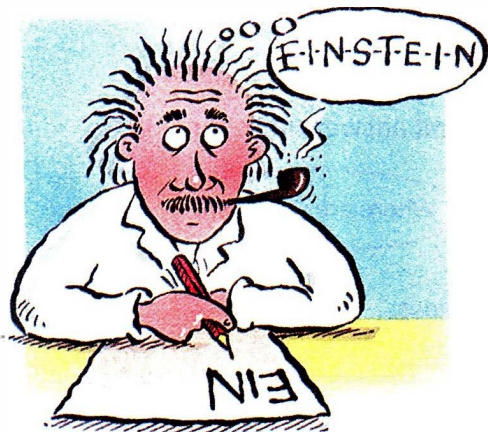
4 The alphabet

a) Say the alphabet in English.



b) Spell:

- your first name.
- your surname.
- the name of your street.
- the name of your city.



5 Pronouns

Match the pronouns to pictures a-g.

they he I it you she we



6 Possessive adjectives

Put the words into the table.

your his our their ~~my~~ her

- | | | | |
|-------|-------------------------|--------|-----------------|
| a I | → my teacher | d she | → teacher |
| b you | → teacher | e we | → teacher |
| c he | → teacher | f they | → teacher |

My teacher!



7 Numbers 1-100

a) Write the next three numbers.

- 21 twenty-two, twenty-three, twenty-four
- | | |
|--------------------|---------------------|
| • twenty-one (21) | • sixty-six (66) |
| • thirty-five (35) | • seventy-four (74) |
| • forty-three (43) | • eighty-one (81) |
| • fifty-six (56) | • ninety-seven (97) |

b) Say the number then say the number before.

21 twenty-one.... twenty

21	17	65	86	54	11	45
13	100	25	90	7	33	18

module 1

People and places

- ▶ be: positive, negative, questions and answers
- ▶ Names and countries
- ▶ be: personal questions and information
- ▶ Articles *a, an*; jobs

Task: find information from documents


Language focus 1

be; names and countries

1 a) Match sentences 1–4 with answers a–d.

- 1 How are you? **d**
- 2 What's your name?
- 3 Where are you from?
- 4 Nice to meet you.

- a And you.
- b I'm from England.
- c My name's Emily Harman.
- d I'm fine, thanks.

b)  [1.1] Listen and check your answers.

2 Practice this conversation in pairs.

Hello, my name's
What's your name?

My name's

Nice to meet you.

And you.



Grammar

be: questions and answers

you *Where are you from?*

What's your name?

I *I'm from England.*

My name's Emily Harman.

▶ *Language summaries A and B page 141.*

Practice

1 a) Walk around the class. Ask and answer these questions.

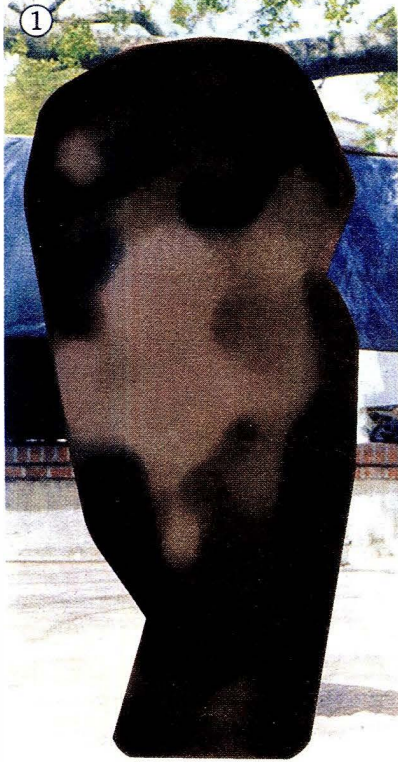
What's your name?

Where are you from?

b) Now introduce a student to the class.

This is Ramón, he's from ...

This is Monika, she's from ...



Grammar

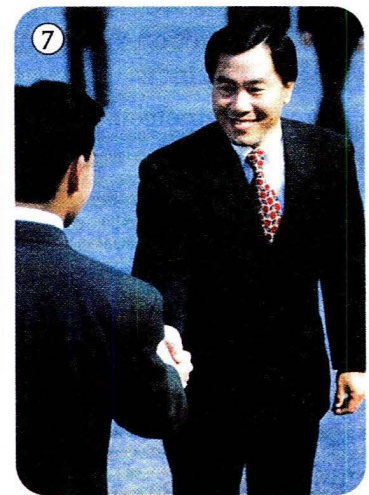
be: questions and answers with *he*, *she*, and *they*

he *Where's he from?*
 He's from Milan.

she *Where's she from?*
 She's from Brazil.

they *Where are they from?*
 They're from New York.

► **Language summary A page 141.**



2 Match these sentences with the pictures above.

- a He's from Brazil.
- b She's from Britain.
- c They're from Spain.

Pronunciation

[1.2] Listen and practice saying these countries.

•• Brazil •• Britain • France ••• Italy ••• Argentina

•• Japan •• Poland • Spain •• the US

3 Point to the pictures. Ask and answer questions like this:


Where's she from?


She's from Poland, I think.

Language focus 2


be: personal information


1 a) Complete the blanks in conversations 1–3 on the right.

b)  [1.3] Listen and check your answers.


2 a)  Match sentences a–k with the people in pictures 1–3.

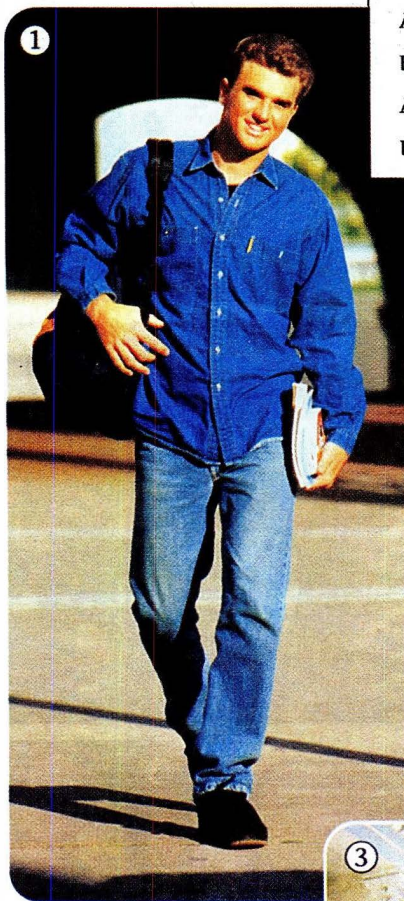
- a He's from Poland.
- b They're from Tokyo.
- c They're about twenty-two.
- d He's a student at Warsaw University.
- e They're tourists.
- f She isn't on vacation, she's on business.
- g He's nineteen years old.
- h They're on vacation in Italy.
- i She's about thirty-five and she's married.
- j He isn't married, he's single.
- k They aren't married, they're friends.

b)  [1.4] Listen and check your answers.

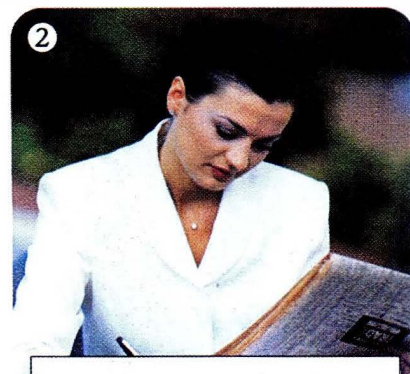
3  [1.5] Complete the table in the *Grammar* box. Then listen and check your answers.

Pronunciation

 [1.5] Listen again and practice saying the short forms.



A: What's his name?
 B: His name's Jarek.
 A: Where'.... he from?
 B: He'.... from Poland.



A: What's her name?
 B: Her name'.... Carmen.
 A: Where'.... she from?
 B: She'.... from Spain.



A: What are their names?
 B: Their names Toshi and Mariko.
 A: Where they from?
 B: They'.... from Tokyo.

Grammar

be: positive, negative, and short forms

+	short form	-	short form
I am	I'm	I am not	I'm not
you are	you're	you are not	you aren't
he is	.....	he is not	.....
she is	.....	she is not	.....
it is	it's	it is not	it isn't
we are	we're	we are not	we aren't
they are	.....	they are not	they aren't

► *Language summary A page 141.*

Practice

1 a) Make four true sentences and four false sentences about the people on page 10.

b) Test your partner. Your partner corrects the false sentences.

Toshi's from Tokyo.

True!

Toshi and Mariko are married.

False! They aren't married, they're friends.



2 Read sentences a–j. Check (✓) the ones that are true. Correct the false ones.


- a You're in an English lesson.
- b You're from China.
I'm not from China, I'm from Hungary.
- c You're from Italy.
- d Your school's in New York.
- e Your classroom's very small.
- f Your teacher's from Scotland.
- g Your teacher's married.
- h Your father's a politician.
- i Your parents are from the US.
- j Your English lessons are in the evening.

Language focus 3

be: personal questions

1 Check (✓) the correct answer to questions 1–6.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Are you a student? | 4 Are you married? |
| a Yes, she is. | a Yes, we are. |
| b No, they're on vacation. | b No, they aren't. They're friends. |
| c Yes, I am. I go to London University. ✓ | c No, I'm on vacation. |
| 2 Where are you from? | 5 Are you on vacation? |
| a I'm a student. | a No, I'm from Brazil. |
| b We're from Australia. | b Yes, I am. |
| c I'm on business. | c No, they aren't. |
| 3 How old are you? | 6 What's your job? |
| a I'm fine, thank you. | a I'm an architect. |
| b He's about thirty-two. | b I'm from Italy. |
| c I'm twenty-one. | c I'm a tourist. |

2  [1.6] Now listen to the conversations and check.

Grammar

1 Questions with *be*

Notice the word order:

How old are you?

Are you married?

What's your job?

Is your teacher American?

2 Short answers to yes/no questions:

Are you married?

Yes, I am.

No, I'm not.

Is she American?

Yes, she is.

No, she isn't.

► *Language summary A page 141.*

Language focus 4

Indefinite articles: *a, an*; jobs

1 Match the jobs with the pictures.

an actor/an actress

a doctor

a manager

a waiter

a police officer

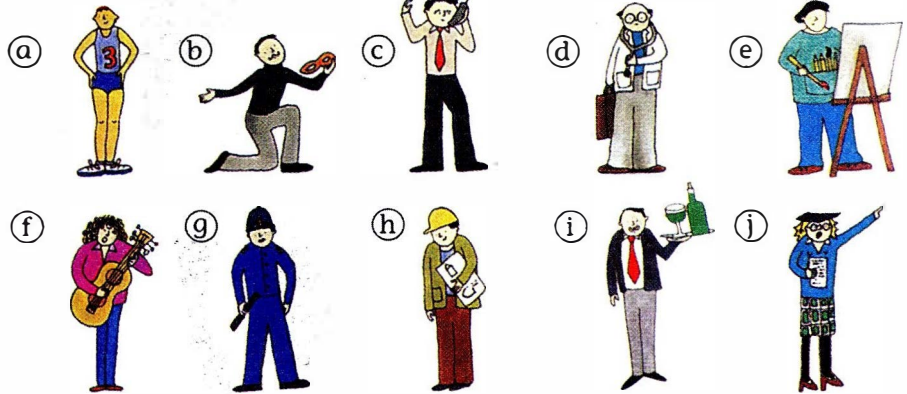
an engineer

a musician

an artist

a sportsman/a sportswoman

a teacher



2 Ask and answer questions about the pictures in pairs.

What's his job?

He's an engineer.

Practice

1 Put these questions into the correct order.

- a 's/name/your/what?
What's your name?
- b married/you/are?
- c old/you/how/are?
- d you/are/how?
- e your mother/old/how/is?
- f job/your/what's?
- g your teacher/married/is?
- h your father/old/how/is?
- i student/you/are/a?
- j your teacher/from Britain/is?
- k you/are/on vacation?
- l the US/you/are/from?
- m your teacher/old/how/is?

2 Choose seven questions to ask a partner.

Grammar

With jobs we use the articles *a/an*.

an + vowel (a, e, i, o, u)

He's an engineer.

She's an actress.

a + other letters

I'm a waiter.

He's a police officer.

► *Language summary C page 141.*

Practice

1 a) Read about a famous person on page 134, 136, 139, or 140.

b) Work in groups. Ask and answer questions to find who your partners read about. (Do not ask "What's his/her name?")

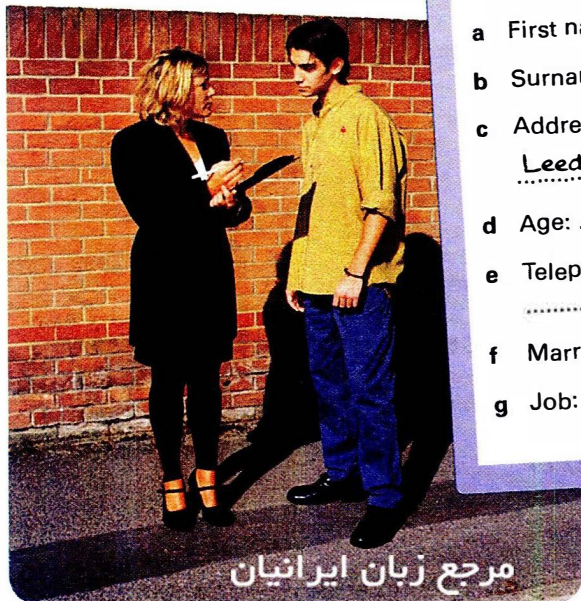
Is it a man or a woman?

How old is he?

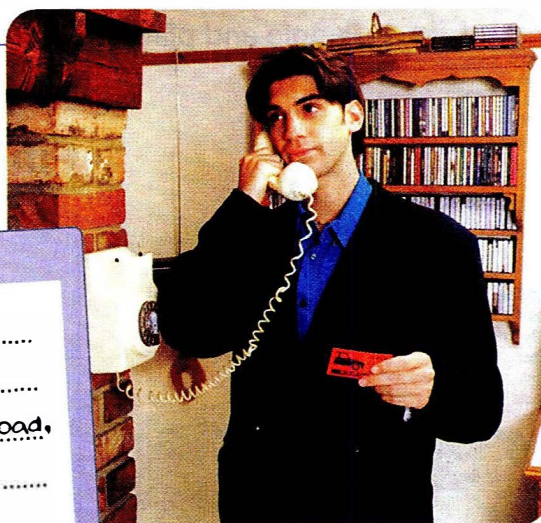
2 Play again. This time you think of the famous people.

Real life and writing

Giving personal information



a First name: Bruno
 b Surname:
 c Address: Newton Road, Leeds
 d Age:
 e Telephone number:
 f Married / Single
 g Job:



3 Interview another student and complete the information below.

a First name:
 b Surname:
 c Address:

 d Age:
 e Telephone number:
 f Married / Single
 g Job:

1 [1.7] Listen to two conversations, then complete the information about Bruno.

2 [1.7] What questions did you hear? Listen again and complete the blanks.

- a How ~~old~~ are you?
- b married?
- c ' job?
- d ' address?
- e What ' number?
- f ' your?
- g do spell it?

Pronunciation

1 [1.8] Listen to these questions. Notice the stress.

What's your name?

What's your job?

What's your address?

What's your surname?

What's your first name?

What's your phone number?

How do you spell it?

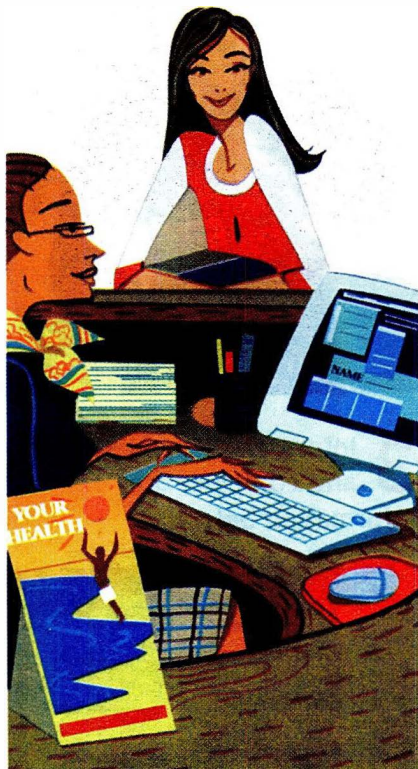
How old are you?

2 Listen again and practice.

4 a) Read the sentences about Bruno. Find **four** mistakes and correct them.

His name's Bruno Sertori, and he's an actor from Leeds, a city in England. His address is 19c Newton Road, and his telephone number is 906 0297. He's twenty-five years old and he isn't married.

b) Write similar sentences about a student in your class.



Find information from documents

This is your **medical card**

Your local Family Health Services Authority (FHS) is
COLCHESTER

Please keep it in a safe place. It is proof that you are entitled to treatment.

Your reference number is
480-320-1639

Surname Slater

Forenames Nicola Rachel

Address 21 Chapel Street, Colchester C02 7AR

Tel. no. (Home) 01206 439094 (Work)

Date of Birth 6/12/79

Country of Birth Britain

Marital Status Married Single Widowed
Divorced

Your doctor is

Dr. Shah (4777)
Bradbury Medical Centre
186 Elm Road
Colchester C02 9JG
Tel. 01206 382029

Useful language

Questions

- “What’s her full name?”
- “How do you spell it?”
- “What’s his (email) address?”
- “What’s her job?”
- “What’s his telephone number?”
- “How old is he?”
- “Where is she from?”
- “Is he married?”

Other useful phrases

- “I don’t know.”
- “Sorry? I don’t understand.”

Preparation for task

Look at Nicky’s medical card. Mark the sentences Yes (✓), No (X), or Don’t Know (?).

- a Her full name is Nicky Slater.
- b She’s British.
- c She’s from Colchester.
- d She isn’t married.
- e Her telephone number is 01206 382029.
- f She’s twenty years old.

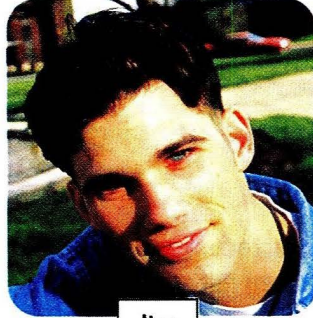


Nicky

Task



Chrissie



Jim

1 a) Work in pairs, Student A and Student B.

Student A: Look at Chrissie's documents on page 133. Complete the table about Chrissie.

Student B: Look at Jim's documents on page 134. Complete the table about Jim.

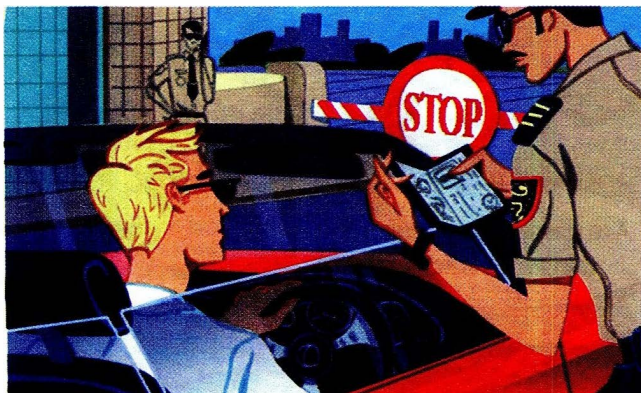
	Chrissie	Jim
Full name		
Age		
Address		
Job		
Where from?		
Email address		
Telephone number		
Married / Single?		

b) **Student A:** Ask Student B questions about Jim. Write the information in the table.

Student B: Ask Student A questions about Chrissie. Write the information in the table.

Look at the *Useful language* box.

► Useful language



Do you remember?

1 Write the questions.

- My name's Elizabeth. What's your name?
- I'm fine, thanks.
- We're from Britain.
- She's about thirty-five.
- No, he's single.
- Their names are Jeff and Rachel.
- I'm a doctor.

2 What are the countries?

- Br_i_t_a_i_n
- J_p_ _ _
- P_l_ _ _ _
- _t_ _ _y
- S_ _ _ _n
- _r_z_l
- A_g_ _ _t_ _ _

3 Short forms: put ' in the correct place.

- Shes married. *She's married.*
- Theyre from England.
- Were police officers.
- Mike isnt twenty-one.
- The full names *Music Television (MTV).*
- Im not a teacher.
- Its 707 4932.

4 Pronunciation: mark the stress.

• actor manager doctor politician
 artist sportsman musician teacher
 engineer sportswoman

5 Write short answers to these questions.

- Is your school big? Yes, *it is.* .
- Are you married? No,
- Is John from England? No,
- Are you an engineer? Yes,
- Is your email address samwest@BST.co.uk? No,

module 2


You and yours

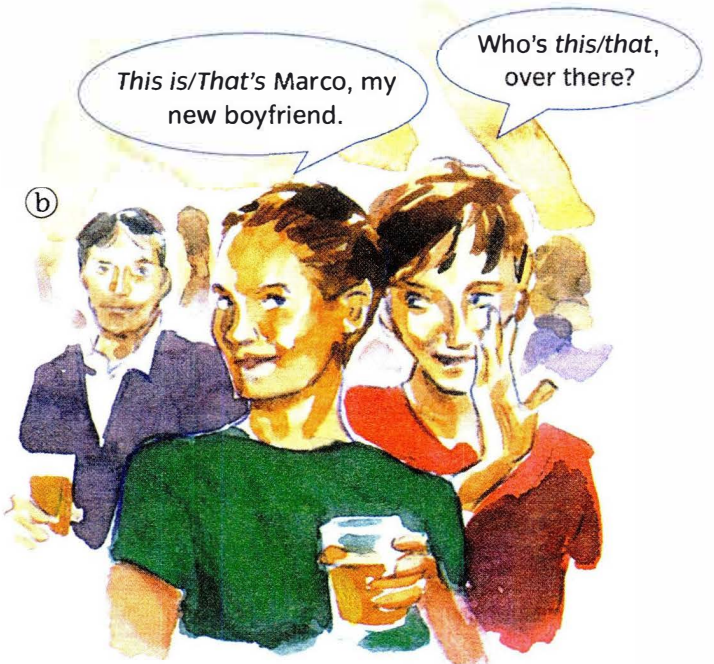
- ▶ *this, that, these, those*
- ▶ *(do) have/don't have*
- ▶ Family vocabulary and possessive 's
- ▶ Vocabulary: everyday objects

Task: complete a family tree

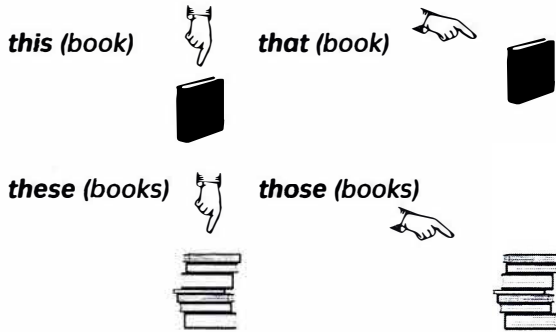
Language focus 1

this, that, these, those

 [2.1] Circle the correct word (*this, that, these, or those*) in conversations a–d. Then listen and check your answers.



Grammar



► Language summary A page 141.

Pronunciation

- [2.2a] Listen to the pronunciation.
 this /ðɪs/ these /ði:z/ that /ðæt/ those /ðoʊz/
 Practice the four words.
- [2.2b] Listen to the pronunciation of these questions. Practice saying them.
 - What's this? • What's that?
 - What are these? • What are those?
- Practice conversations a–d on page 16 with a partner.



Practice

- Find the objects in the pictures on the left and test your partner.

a credit card a camera an eraser candy
 an apple keys photos a datebook
 a postcard a comb a dictionary
 a watch a phonecard a bottle of water
 an identity card a cellphone

What's this in English?

I don't know!

a credit card

What are these?

keys

Pronunciation

- [2.3] Listen to the stress in these words:
 apple eraser photos
 camera datebook dictionary
 postcard phonecard credit card
 identity card bottle of water cellphone
- Practice saying the words.

- Point to things in the classroom and ask your partner.

What's that in English?

I don't know!

It's a cassette player.

What are those?

Chairs.

Language focus 2

(do) have/don't have

1 Work in pairs. Say **three** things that you have with you and **three** that you don't have with you.

I have a pen, a datebook, and a comb, but I don't have a cellphone, a dictionary, or a watch.

2 Work with a new partner. Guess what your partner has in his/her pocket or bag.

Do you have a dictionary with you?

Yes, I do. Here it is!

No, I don't, it's at home ...

3 Tell the class about your partner.

Paolo has a cellphone in his bag, but he doesn't have a pen!

Grammar

Complete the blanks.

- +** I *have* a new computer. **-** We *don't* a car.
- She *has* blue eyes. He a brother.
- ?** Do you your passport?
- Does it a name?

▶ **Language summary E page 142.**

Practice

1 Complete the blanks with the correct form of (do) have/don't have.

- a "~~Do~~ you ~~have~~ the time, please?" "Yes, it's 7:30."
- b I think her parents are rich: they four cars!
- c "I'm sorry - I a pen with me."
"Here you are - I two."
- d We a new pet dog - his name's Fang!
- e "..... the children a new video?"
"Yes, it's great!"
- f Anne a very big family - six brothers!
- g "..... Paul a new motorcycle?" "Yes, it's a Honda."

2 a) Match questions 1-5 with answers a-c and complete the gaps.

- | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1 you have a car? | a From Italy. |
| 2 Where it from? | b Very old - about ten years old! |
| 3 What make it? | c Red. |
| 4 old is it? | d It's a Fiat. |
| 5 What is it? | e Yes, I do. |



b) Use questions 1-5 to ask your partner about the things in the box. Then write sentences like this:

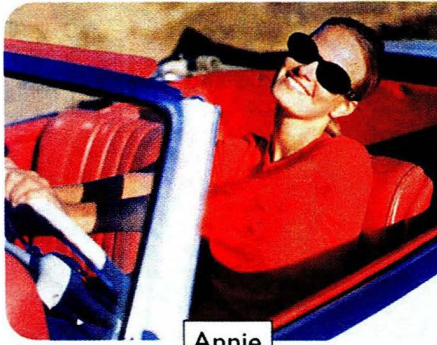
Paul has a motorcycle. It's a Honda and it's two years old.

a car a TV in your bedroom a moped a computer
a DVD player a bicycle a cellphone a personal stereo

Reading and listening

My favorite thing!

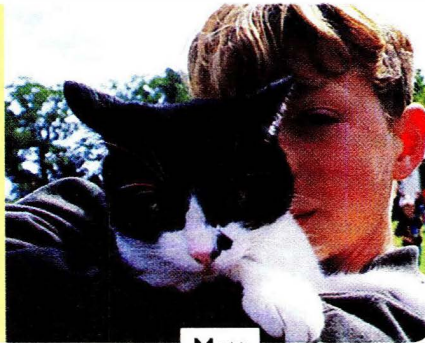
1  [2.4]  Look at the pictures. What are Annie's, Matt's, Ed's, and Lucy's favorite things? Listen and read to check your answers.



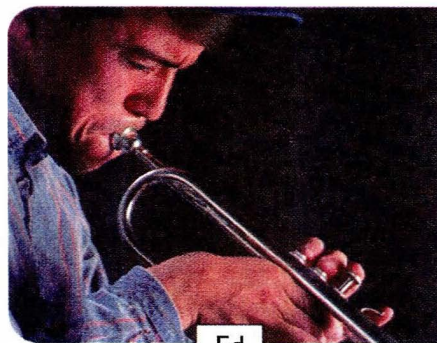
Annie

“ This is my car ... it's a convertible, an American car. It's great! It's very comfortable, and it has a wonderful CD player! White is my favorite color, so it's perfect for me. ”

“ My favorite 'thing' isn't really a thing – it's our pet cat, Milly. We have four cats in my family, but Milly's my favorite. She's black and white, and she has beautiful eyes. She isn't very friendly to other people, but she loves me! ”



Matt



Ed

“ I'm a professional musician, so my trumpet's really important to me. Actually, I have three, but this one's my favorite: it's a Bach trumpet made in America – and it's about forty years old! ”

“ I have a fantastic new computer ... I love it! It's a beautiful color, blue, and it has games, a DVD player, Internet ... in fact, it has everything! ”



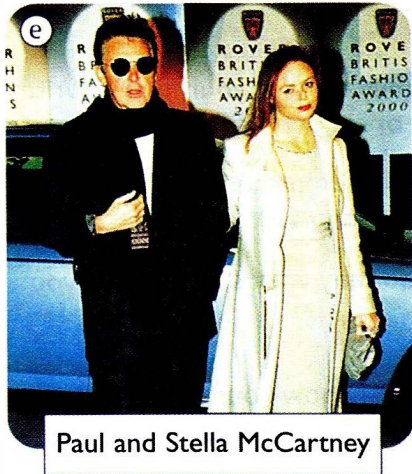
Lucy

2 Read and discuss in pairs.

- a **What is:** ...
 - blue?
 - very comfortable?
 - American?
 - new?
 - about forty years old?
- b **Who is:** ...
 - black and white?
 - a musician?
 - about eighteen?
 - not very friendly?
- c **Who has:** ...
 - three trumpets?
 - four cats?
 - beautiful eyes?
 - an American car?
- d **What has:** ...
 - games?
 - a CD player?
 - a DVD player?

3 Complete these sentences about each person's favorite things. Cover the text!

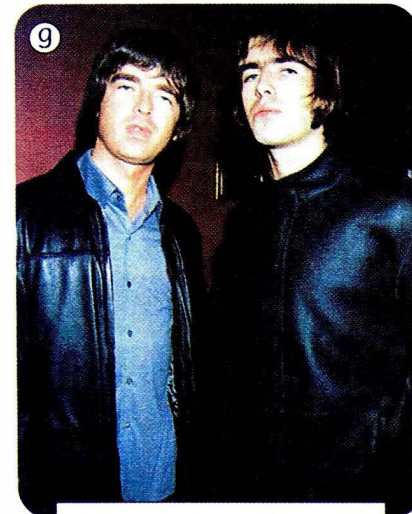
- a **Annie:** Her favorite thing is her It's and it has
- b **Matt:** His favorite “thing” is his She's and she has
- c **Ed:** He has three His favorite one is from and it's
- d **Lucy:** Her favorite thing is her It's and it has



Paul and Stella McCartney



Astérix and Obélix



Noel and Liam Gallagher

Real life Classroom English




1 Read the conversations and check (✓) the best reply.

- 1 **TEACHER:** How do you spell "cousin" ... Simona?
STUDENT: a) C-O-U-S-I-N.
 b) She's fine.
- 2 **STUDENT:** Can you write that, please?
TEACHER: a) Yes, of course.
 b) No, thank you.
- 3 **STUDENT:** Excuse me, how do you say this word?
TEACHER: a) I understand.
 b) Just a minute, let me see ... it's "wonderful."
STUDENT: Thank you.
- 4 **TEACHER:** What do you have for Number 3?
STUDENT: a) That's right.
 b) I'm not sure.
- 5 **TEACHER:** OK, everyone, open your books to page twenty.
STUDENT: a) Sorry? I don't understand.
 b) Sorry, I don't remember.
TEACHER: Open your books to page twenty.

2 [2.7] Listen and check your answers. Cross out the wrong answers.

Pronunciation

 [2.7] Listen again and practice the conversations. Copy the voices on the recording.


3 Now practice the conversations with a partner.

Complete a family tree

Preparation for task

1 Look at Hannah's family tree. Find Hannah.

- a Who is John? Who is Sally?
- b Is Hannah married? Is John married?
- c Who are Marc and Lily?
- d Who is Marc and Lily's father?

2  [2.8] Listen to Hannah talking about her family and write the extra information from the box in the right place.

from France	48	baby of the family
not married	Elaine	a student Pat

Task

1 a) Make a family tree for your family. Write in the names of six people.

b) Decide which extra information you can give about each person. Don't write it down!

Ask your teacher for any words or phrases you need.

2 a) Work in pairs. Show your family tree to your partner. Tell your partner about your family and answer any questions.

► *Useful language a)*

b) Ask questions about the people on your partner's family tree.

► *Useful language b)*

www.irLanguage.com

John
 b) teacher
 c) very nice!
 d) Serge
 e) Hannah me!.....
 f) Marc

Useful language

a Your family tree

"This person is my uncle."

"She's (five) years old."

"He's (not) married."

"I have (two) cousins."

"I'm an only child."

"His wife's name is (Sarah)."

"Their names are (Richard) and (Jo)."

b Asking questions

"Who is this?"

"How old is (Lisa)?"

"What's (Julia)'s job?"

Do you remember?

1 Make five groups of words from the box.

beautiful	cousin	red	comfortable	television
cassette player	blue	grandfather	coffee	aunt
wonderful	candy	CD player	white	bottle of water

- a) black ...~~blue~~.....
- b) computer
- c) important
- d) apple
- e) wife

2 a) Put the words in the correct order to make questions.

- 1) do/spell/How/you/"beautiful?"
How do you spell "beautiful?"
- 2) Sylvia/a/Does/brother/have ?
- 3) your/is/from/camera/Where ?
- 4) you/identity card/Do/your/with you/have ?
- 5) mean/does/"wonderful"/What ?
- 6) say/do/word/this/How/you ?

b) Match answers a-f with questions 1-6.

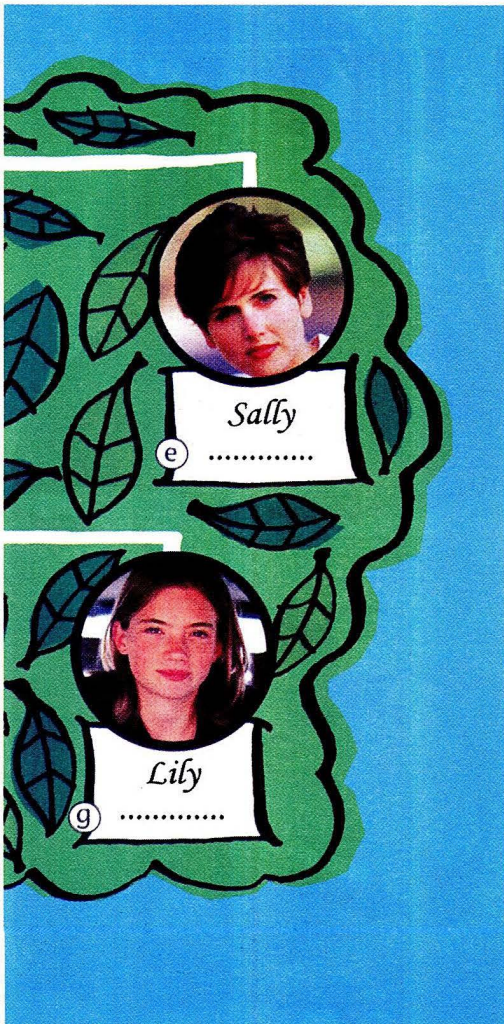
- a) Yes, I have. Here it is.
- b) It's Japanese.
- c) B-E-A-U-T-I-F-U-L.
- d) "Cellphone."
- e) No, she doesn't. She's an only child.
- f) It means "very, very good."

3 Complete the sentences.

- a) My father is my mother's ~~husband~~ .
- b) My mother's mother is my
- c) My mother's brother is my
- d) My sister is my father's
- e) My mother and father are my

4 What does 's mean (is or possessive)?

- a) What's this in English? ~~is~~
- b) Ken's bicycle is new.
- c) Mary's on vacation in New Zealand.
- d) Gordon's teacher is from India.
- e) Jo's address is 7 Park Road, Birmingham.





module 3

Something in common

- ▶ **Vocabulary:** common verbs
- ▶ **Present Simple:** questions, (*I, you, we, they*)
- ▶ **Present Simple:** positive and negative (*I, you, we, they*)

Task: find things in common with your partner

2  [3.1] Listen and check your answers to Exercise 1. Practice saying the phrases.

3  Add these words and phrases to the verbs in Exercise 1.

classical music
in an apartment


in a house
Coke

German
chocolate

Law

Vocabulary


Common verbs

1  Write the correct verb in the circles.

Speak like drink
study live

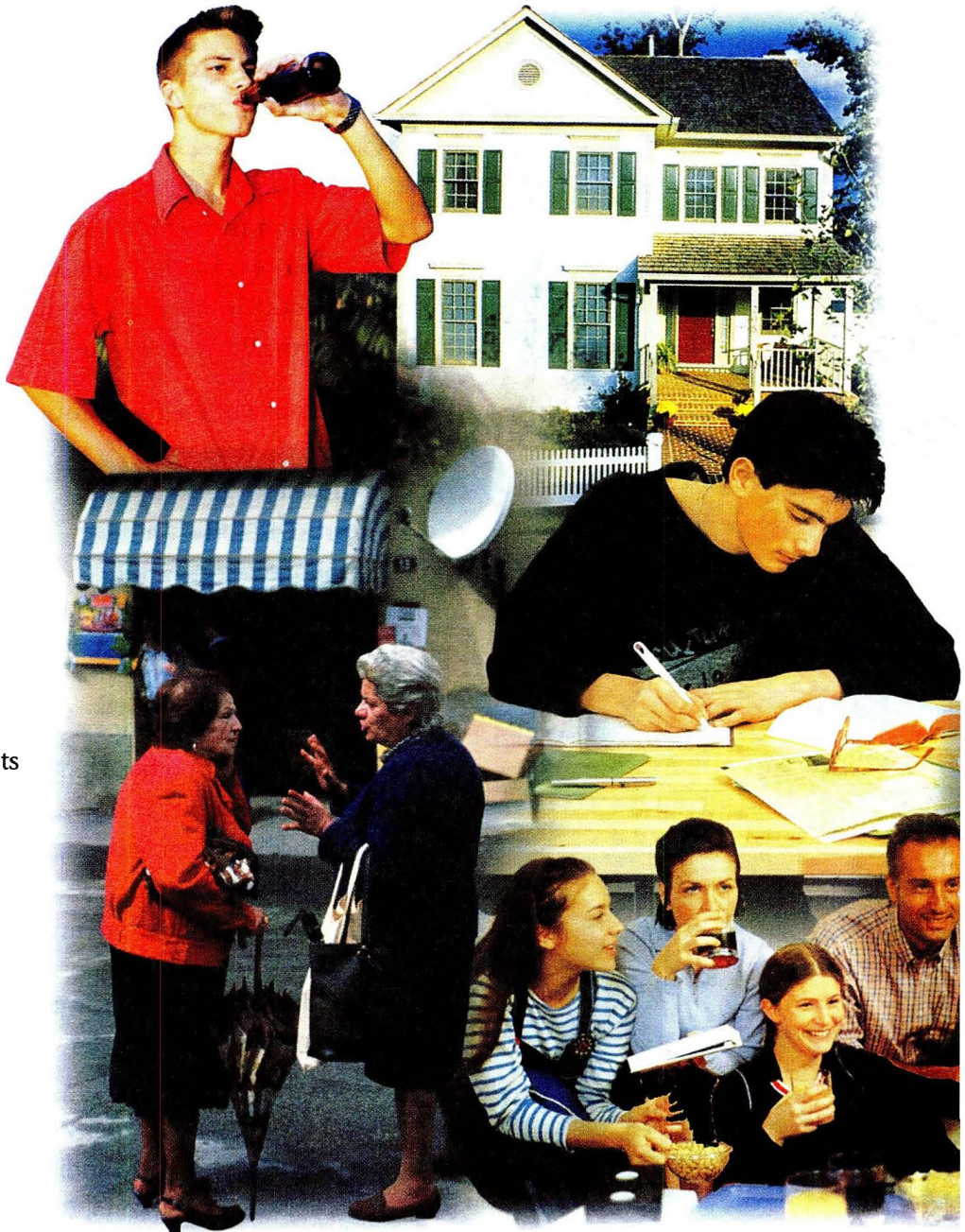
a I  Chinese food
pop music

b I  English
French

c I  in a big city
with my parents


d I  at college
Economics

e I  coffee
tea




Language focus 1

Present Simple: questions

1  [3.2] Listen to the questions and check (✓) the answer that is true for you.

- | | | |
|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| a | Yes, I do. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | No, I don't. <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b | Yes, I do. <input type="checkbox"/> | No, I don't. <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c | Yes, I do. <input type="checkbox"/> | No, I don't. <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d | Yes, I do. <input type="checkbox"/> | No, I don't. <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e | Yes, I do. <input type="checkbox"/> | No, I don't. <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f | Yes, I do. <input type="checkbox"/> | No, I don't. <input type="checkbox"/> |

2  [3.3] Listen to the questions and answers. Complete the blanks.

- a Do you live in a big city?
Yes, I live in
- b Do you like?
....., I love
- c study at college?
....., I work in a bank.
- d Italian?
No, I don't, but I very well.
- e you with your ?
Yes, I
- f tea?
No, but I



Grammar

Present Simple with I

I live in Tokyo. I speak Spanish.

Present Simple questions with you


Do you speak Italian?

Short answers:

Yes, I do. No, I don't.

► **Language summary A page 142.**

Pronunciation

 [3.3] Listen again and notice the stress on important words.

*Do you live in a **big** city? Yes, I live in **Tokyo**.*

*Do you like **chocolate**? Yes, I **love** it!*

Do you...? /djə/ is very weak in the questions.

Practice saying the questions and answers.

Practice

1 Work in pairs. Ask your partner the questions in Exercise 2 above.

2 a) Look back at the phrases in Exercise 1 on page 24. Think of five questions to ask other students.

b) Walk around the class and ask your questions.

Silvia, do you live in an apartment?


No, I don't. I live in a house.

Luc, do you study Economics?

Yes, I do.

Language focus 2

Present Simple: positive and negative

1  Find five pairs of words.

- | | |
|------------------|------------------|
| 1 start | a in the evening |
| 2 a big meal | b yards |
| 3 in the morning | c close |
| 4 houses | d finish |
| 5 open | e a snack |

2 a) Read the text and complete the blanks with a word or phrase from Exercise 1.

b)  [3.4] Listen and check your answers.

Grammar

Present Simple: *I, you, we, they*

- ⊕ *They live in houses.*
- ⊖ *They don't close for lunch.*

▶ *Language summary A page 142.*

Life in Britain...



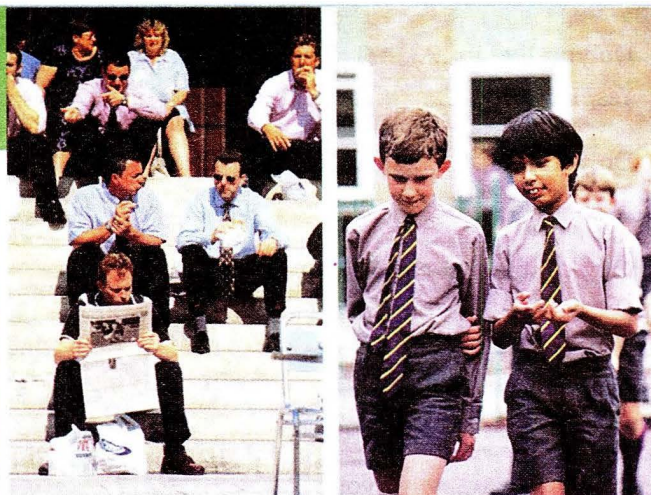
Homes and families

Many British people live in (a), not apartments. Most houses have yards.

Daily life

Most office workers (b) work at about nine in the morning and finish at about five or six (c) Most people don't go home for lunch.

People usually eat a big meal in the evening; they just have a (d) at lunchtime.



School life

Children start school at about nine, and (e) at about three thirty.

Most children have lunch at school.

All children (f) school when they are four or five years old, and leave when they are sixteen or eighteen.

Stores and restaurants

Most stores (g) at about nine and (h) at about six. Usually, they don't close for lunch.

Many supermarkets stay open twenty-four hours. Most bars and restaurants close at about eleven o'clock.

Practice

- 1 Complete the sentences for your country.
Use either the negative or the positive form.

Most people don't live in houses. They live in apartments.

Life in my country...

- A Most people (live) in houses.
- B Most people (have) yards.
- C Most office workers (start) work at nine in the morning.
- D Most people (go home) at lunchtime.
- E Most people (have) a big meal in the evening.
- F Children (go to school) in the afternoon.
- G Most children (leave school) at sixteen.
- H Most stores stay (open) twenty-four hours.
- I Most stores (close) for lunch.
- J Restaurants (close) at eleven in the evening.

- 2 a) Compare answers to Exercise 1 with a partner.

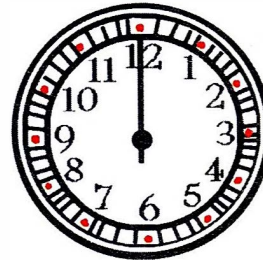
- b) Write five sentences about the differences between your country and Britain.

In Britain, children start school at about nine o'clock in the morning, but in Argentina they start school at...

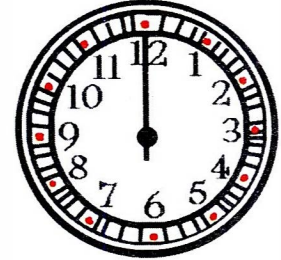
Real life

Telling the time

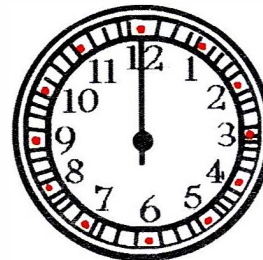
- 1 [3.5] It's four o'clock in London.
Listen and mark the times around the world on the clocks.



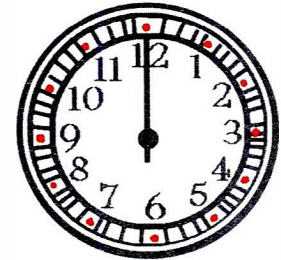
Los Angeles



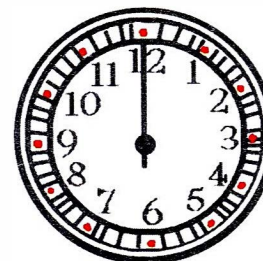
São Paulo



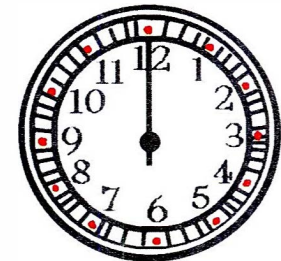
London



Moscow



Tokyo



Auckland

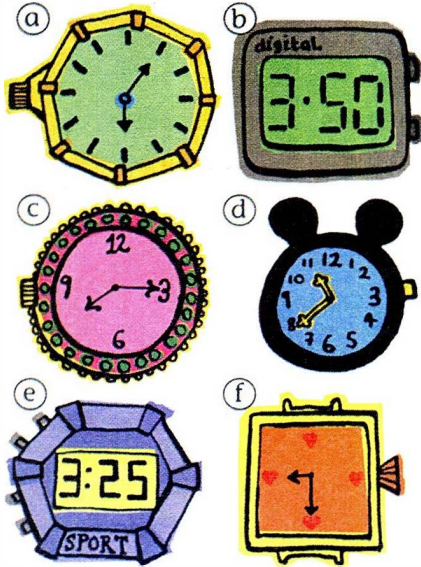
Grammar

Prepositions of time

one o'clock *in the morning*
three o'clock *in the afternoon*
seven o'clock *in the evening*
twelve o'clock *at night*

Notice: we say **at** six o'clock.

2 Match the times with the watches.



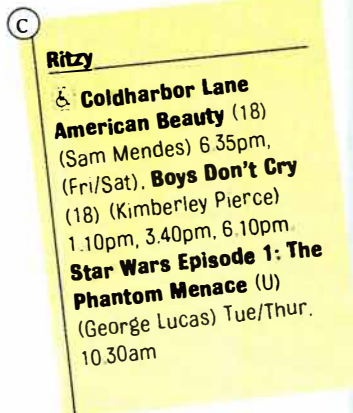
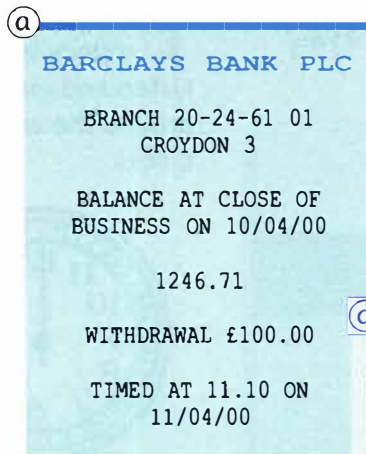
twenty of eleven / twenty to eleven
 quarter past eight
 five past six
 twenty-five past three
 half past nine / nine thirty
 ten of four / ten to four

3 a) [3.6] Write down the times you hear in column A.

b) Complete column B.

A	B
a five of <u>twelve</u>	...11:55
b quarter past .....	...15
c twenty of .....	...40
d half past .....	...30
e quarter .....	.....
f five .....	.....
g ten .....	.....
h half .....	.....
i twenty-five .....	.....
j .....	.....
k .....	.....

4 Circle the times in a-d. Practice saying the times.



CHANNEL 4

6.00 Friends
 PM The one set at the beach, Rachel is jealous of Ross. (R) (s) 562
 Another Friends episode is on Wednesday at 6pm

6.30 Hollyoaks
 Zara is questioned about the fire. Dan blames Nikki for their troubles. 814
 HELPLINE: for advice on issues raised in tonight's episode, call free on 0800 500 000. Lines are open 7-9pm tonight, 9am-9pm tomorrow

7.00 Channel 4 News
 With Jon Snow and Kirsty Lang. Weather (s) 698611

7.55 Films this week

8.00 Billy Elliot The story of a young boy from the north of England who learns to dance.

5 Ask and answer the following questions in pairs.

a What time do your English lessons start and finish?

They start at about five o'clock in the evening, and they finish at half past six.

b What time do banks open in your country? What time do they close?

c What time do you get up, usually? What about on Sundays?



d What time do you come home from work/school?

e What time do you usually go to bed? What about at weekends?


f What time does your family have dinner, usually?


Find things in common with your partner

Preparation for task

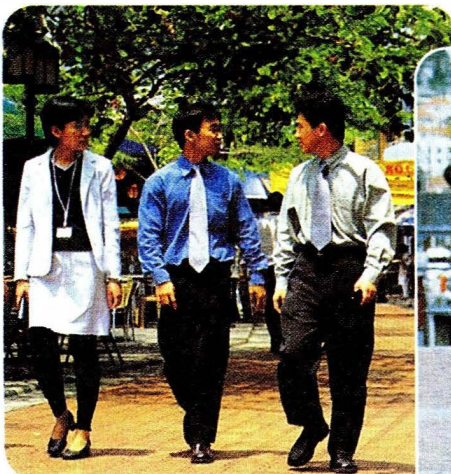
1   [3.7] Listen to seven short conversations. Number these topics in the order you hear them 1–7.

- nationality
- jazz
- where they live
- their ages
- married or not
- breakfast
- brothers and sisters

2  [3.7] Listen again. Check (✓) the topics if the speakers have something in common. Write a cross (X) if they are different.

3  [3.8] Listen and complete the blanks. Then practice saying the phrases.

- 1 R.....?
- 2 too!
- 3 neither.
- 4 How you?
- 5 No,



Useful language

a Asking questions

- "Are you *married*?"
- "Are you (*at college*)?"
- "Do you (*live in a city*)?"
- "Do you (*like skiing*)?"
- "Do you have (*any brothers or sisters*)?"

b Telling the class

- "Both of us (*live at home*)."
- "Maria lives (*in a city*)."

Task

1 Work with a partner. Write **ten** questions for another student. You can ask about:

- family
- school/college
- where she/he lives
- married?
- job
- likes/dislikes
- age
- languages

► Useful language a)

2 Work with a new partner. Ask and answer your questions. Find **six** things in common. Use the phrases in Exercise 3.

3 Tell the class **three** things you have in common.

► Useful language b)

Do you remember?

1 Which words are missing from the following sentences?

- My wife and I ~~live~~ in a big house in Washington.
- Simon and Carina to school at 8:30.
- We Law at Manchester University.
- Do you tea with milk?
- What time do you lunch?
- Do your children English?

2 The following sentences have mistakes. Correct them.

- Jessica and I really like ~~dog~~^{dogs}.
- Do you live in Tokyo? No, I don't live.
- I no speak English.
- What time people finish work in your country?
- Wayne and Carla live in Miami?
- Do you like pasta? Yes, I like.

3 Put a word from the box in the correct place to complete the following sentences.

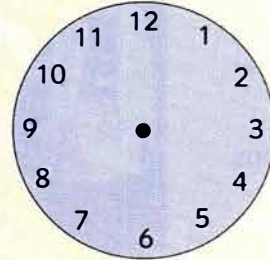
in at with do the of

- It's quarter~~of~~^{of} three.
- Do your cousins live their parents?
- What time you have lunch?
- I usually go home at about 11 night.
- We have an English lesson at 8:30 in morning.
- My sister and her family live Chicago's downtown.

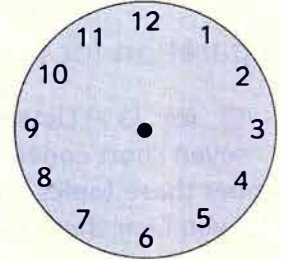
4 Are the sounds in bold the same (S) or different (D) in the sentences?

- Stores close at half past seven. (S)
- "Where are you?" "We're here."
- We live at apartment number three.
- I love lunch. It's my favorite meal!
- We've got four Law students in our class.
- I like good French food.

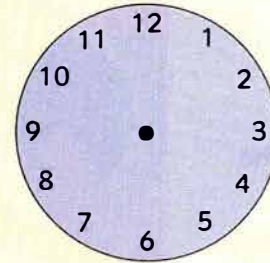
5 Draw the time on the clocks.



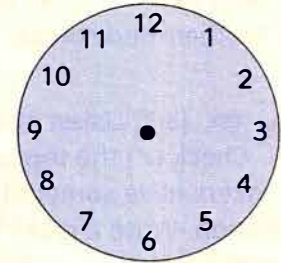
a) half past two



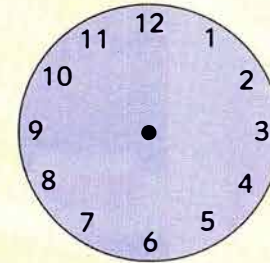
b) seven o'clock



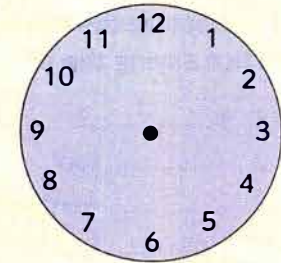
c) quarter of nine



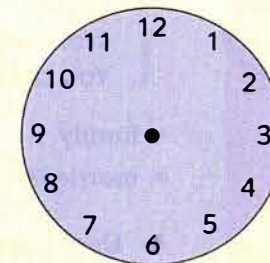
d) twenty past eleven



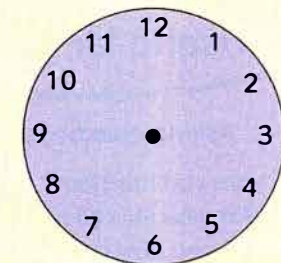
e) half past twelve



f) five of four



g) quarter past eight



h) twenty-five of ten

Now practice reading the sentences.

module 4

Loves and hates

- ▶ Present Simple: *he* and *she*; like ...*ing*
 - ▶ Present Simple questions: *he* and *she*
 - ▶ Activity verbs and adverbs of frequency
- Task: find an email friend


Language focus 1

Present Simple *he* and *she*; *like ...ing*

1 a) Who are the people in the pictures? What are their jobs?


b)  Guess who ...

- likes doing housework?
- hates flying?
- loves dogs?
- loves playing golf?
- doesn't like crowds?
- hates television?

2  [4.1] Listen and check your answers **without** reading.

3 a) Complete blanks a–k in the text with the words in the box.

Does	doesn't like	hates
doesn't travel	stops	
has	likes	loves
likes	like	hates

b)  [4.1] Listen again and check your answers.

American superstar **Whitney Houston** (a) loves dogs. She (b) two dogs who live in a \$75,000 doghouse in her yard!



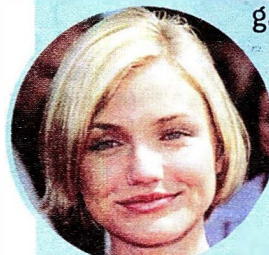
Actress **Kim Basinger** (c) crowds – she also (d) open spaces!



Sylvester Stallone – star of the “Rocky” movies (e) playing golf so much he sometimes (f) filming for a game!



Hollywood actress **Cameron Diaz** (g) TV.



Actor and movie director **Harrison Ford** says he really (h) doing housework!



(i) Superman (j) flying? Well, actor **Dean Cain** – Superman in the TV series – (k) by plane ... he's too nervous!



Grammar

1 Present Simple: *he* and *she*

She loves dogs.

She doesn't like crowds.

2 Notice: We use **verb + ...ing** after *like/hate/love*:

He likes doing housework.

He doesn't like flying.

▶ Language summaries A, B, and C pages 142 and 143.

Practice

1 Test your partner. Without looking at the text on page 31, make sentences about each famous person.

Kim Basinger

She hates crowds.

b) Ask your partner what she or he likes and doesn't like. Use the ideas in the pictures to help you.

Do you like cooking?

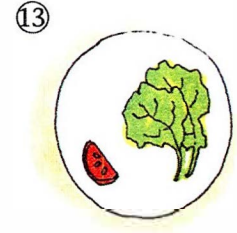
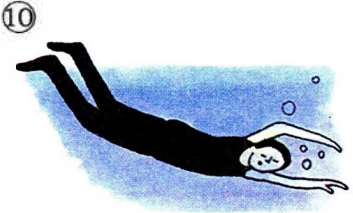
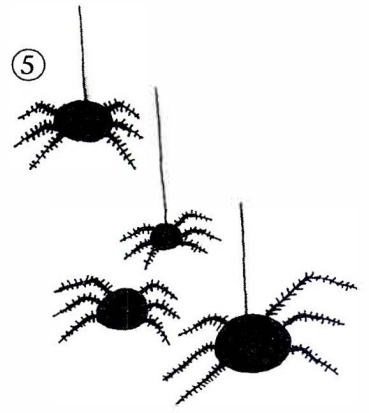
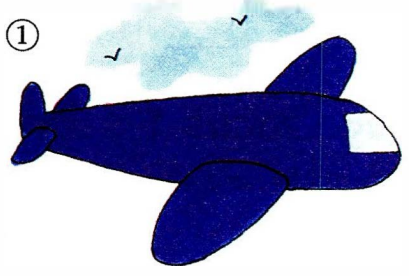
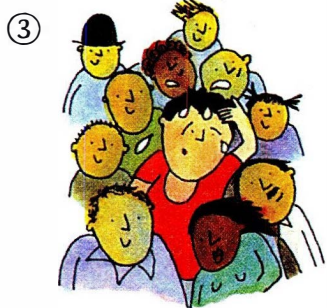
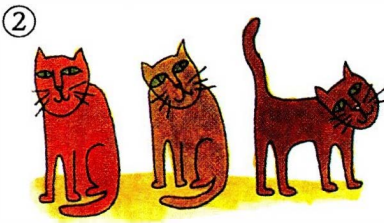
No, I don't - I hate it!

It's OK.

Yes, I love it.

2 a) Match pictures 1-13 with these words.

- playing computer games spiders flying
- coffee running salad swimming
- cats crowds doing housework
- cooking pasta walking



3 Use the information below to write about yourself.

I love
(food/drink)

I also like
and
(activity/sport)

I think 's ok.
(activity/sport)

I don't like

I hate

NAME

4 Take another student's information and read it to the class. Don't read the name! The other students guess who it is.

This person loves Italian food. She also likes playing tennis and watching soccer. She doesn't like spiders. ... Who is it?

Pronunciation

1 [4.2] How many syllables are there? Listen and mark the syllables.

likes closes finishes

loves hates watches opens

starts understands lives

speaks

2 Listen again and practice.

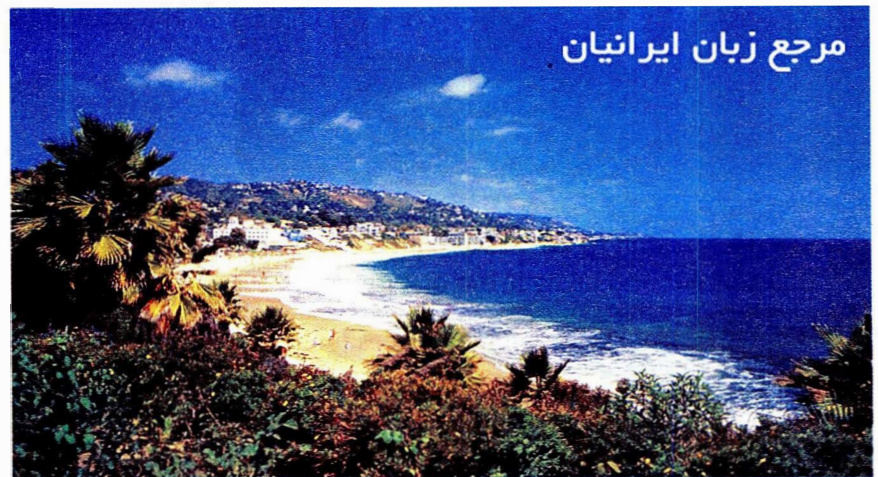
Language focus 2

Present simple questions: *he* and *she*

1 Would you like to live in another country? Which country?

2 Read about Emma. Ask and answer the questions in pairs.

- a Where is she from? c Where does she live?
b What is her job? d Does she like it?



An Englishwoman

in California...

Twenty-four-year-old Emma comes from Manchester, in the north of England, but now she doesn't live in England; she lives in the United States. Her apartment is near the beach in Santa Mónica, California. "It's fantastic," she says. "I go swimming every morning." Emma is an actress; she lives in Los Angeles because it's near Hollywood, the home of the American movie industry.



"I love the way of life here," she says. "It's a beautiful and exciting place ... the weather's really good – it doesn't rain very much, like at home! – the people are open and everyone looks so good! The only problem is that people think my accent is strange ... when I speak to taxi drivers, sometimes they don't understand me!"

An American in England...



3 [4.3] Listen to an interview with Bob Kessler and answer the questions.

- a Where is he from? c Where does he live?
b What is his job? d Does he like it?

Grammar

1 Present Simple questions: *he and she*

Where does he live?

Does he like it?

2 Short answers:

Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.

▶ *Language summary D page 143.*

Practice

1 a) Make questions about Emma on page 33.

- 1 Emma/live in England?
Does Emma live in England?
- 2 she/like going to the beach?
- 3 she/like life in the United States?
- 4 it/rain a lot in California?
- 5 Emma/speak with an American accent?

b) Now make five questions about Bob.

- 1 *Does Bob live in England?*

c) Ask and answer the questions from Exercise 1a) and b) with a partner.

Does Emma live in England?

No, she doesn't.

2 a) Think of a foreigner who lives in your country: a friend, a famous person, or perhaps your teacher! Write a paragraph about the person like this:

My friend Rita comes from Amsterdam in the Netherlands, but now she lives in my city, Madrid. She works in a store in the morning, and in the afternoon she teaches English to small children. She loves life in Madrid. She thinks the restaurants and nightlife are fantastic, and she likes the weather. There's only one problem, she says; in July and August it is very, very hot here! She loves life in Madrid, and she says Spanish people are very friendly.

3 Work in pairs. Ask your partner questions about their person like this:

What's his name?

His name's David.

- a What's his/her name?
- b What's his/her job?
- c Where does he/she come from?
- d Where does he/she live?
- e What does he/she like about your country?
- f What does he/she think of the weather?
- g What does he/she think of the people?



Language focus 3

Activity verbs and adverbs of frequency

1 **MD** Put the verbs in the box in the right place in the circles.

play listen to write watch

a) read a newspaper b) go swimming

c) soccer d) a letter

e) the radio f) television

g) go to school h) visit friends

2 a) **MD** Add these words to verbs a-h above.

shopping a magazine an email the guitar
CDs a video the movies your grandparents

b) It is important to remember words that often go together. Practice saying the phrases above. Then test your partner like this:

play play the guitar ...
 play soccer ...



3 a) Put the adverbs in the right place on the line.

always usually often sometimes
not...often never



b) Which sentences are true for you?

- 1 I often go shopping on Saturday.
- 2 I always read the newspaper in the morning.
- 3 I never watch soccer on television.
- 4 I don't often write letters.
- 5 I usually listen to the radio in the car.

Grammar


Word order with adverbs of frequency
He **never** watches soccer on television.
I **always** read the newspaper in the morning.
I **don't often** listen to the radio.

► Language summary E page 143.

Practice

1 Look at the activity verbs on page 35 again. Write a sentence about something:

- a you never do.
I never listen to the radio.
- b you don't often do.
- c you sometimes do.
- d you often do.
- e you usually do on weekends.
- f you always do in the evening.

2 a)  Work with a partner. Ask and answer these questions:

Do you ever ...

- play tennis?
- visit your grandparents?
- watch a video on the weekend?
- read poems?
- go swimming in the sea?
- watch television in the morning?
- listen to jazz music?
- go to school on Saturday?
- read magazines?

Do you ever visit your grandparents?

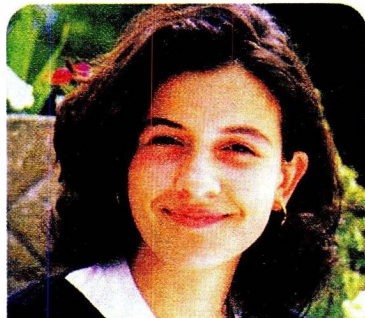
Not often ...
how about you?

b) Write four sentences about your partner.

Jarek never reads magazines.

Find an email friend for Laura

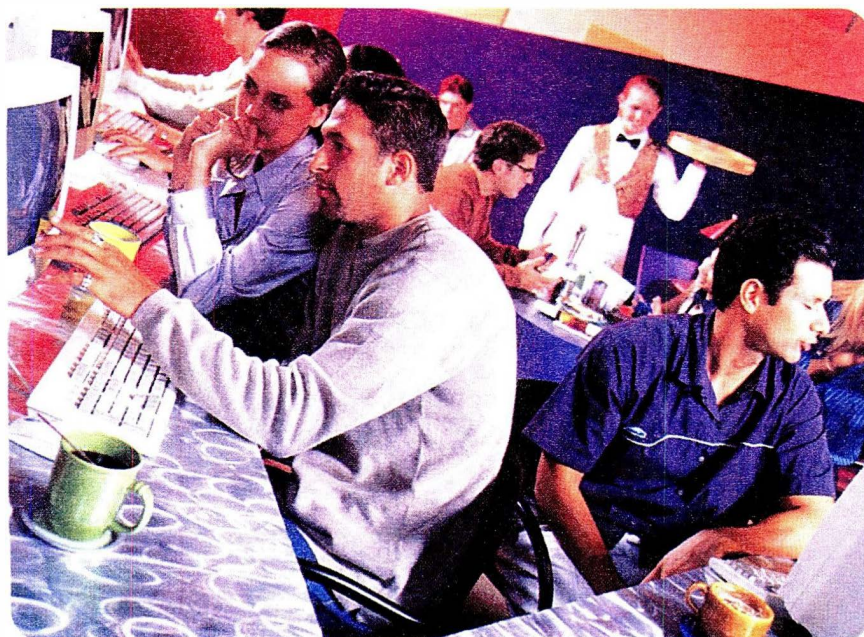
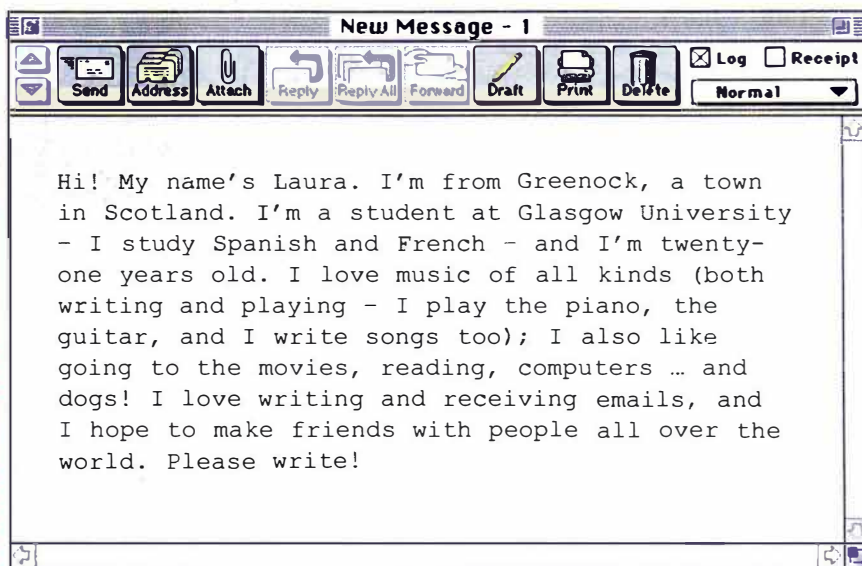
Preparation for task



Laura wants to find new friends on the Internet.

Read what Laura writes about herself in her email, and answer these questions:

- a Where is Laura from?
- b Is she a student?
- c How old is she?
- d Does she like music?
- e Does she enjoy reading?
- f Does she have any other hobbies?



Task

1 Laura gets replies from four people. Work in pairs, Student A and Student B.



Ariel from Argentina



Johanna from Sweden



Peter from Singapore



Rachel from the United States

Student A

- a)** Ask Student B questions about Ariel and Johanna. Write the answers in the table.
- b)** Look at the information about Peter and Rachel on page 140. Answer Student B's questions.

Student B

- a)** Look at the information about Ariel and Johanna on page 139. Answer Student A's questions.
- b)** Ask Student A questions about Peter and Rachel. Write the answers in the table.

► **Useful language a)**

	Ariel	Johanna	Peter	Rachel
age?				
student?				
likes? (<i>music, reading, animals</i>)				
plays (<i>the guitar, the piano, soccer, tennis</i>)				
speaks (<i>English, Spanish, German</i>)				
other information?				

2 a) Who is the best email friend for Laura? Put the people in order, 1–4.

Ariel Peter
 Johanna Rachel

b) Discuss your answers with other students in the class.

► **Useful language b)**

Useful language

a Asking for information


How old is (*Ariel*)?
 Is he/she a student?
 Does she like (*music*)?
 Does he play (*the piano*)?
 Does she speak (*German*)?
 What does he/she like doing?
 Have you got any other information about him/her?

b Talking about the best email friend

I think (*Ariel*) is good because he speaks (*German*).
 I don't think (*Rachel*) is good because she doesn't like (*music*).

Real life

Classroom English

1  [4.4] Put questions from the box into the sentences below. Then listen and check your answers.

Can you read aloud, please?
How do you say "futebol" in English?
What does "town" mean?
Do you have any questions?
Is it correct to say ?
How do you spell it?

(a)
NUNO: (1) How do you say "futebol" in English?

TEACHER: In American English, we say "soccer." In British English, it's "football."

NUNO: OK, I always play soccer on weekends.

TEACHER: Good!

NUNO: (2)..... ?

TEACHER: S-O-C-C-E-R.

(b)
TEACHER: Luisa, (1)..... ?

LUISA: (reads) Fairburn is an industrial town in the ...

TEACHER: Yes, Angelo?

ANGELO: (2)..... ?

TEACHER: A town is a small city. Do you understand?

ANGELO: Yes. Thank you.


(c)
TEACHER: OK, that's the end. (1)..... ?
Yes, Pierre ...

PIERRE: (2)..... "time for going home?"

TEACHER: Well, we usually say "time to go home."

PIERRE: So ... is it time to go home?

TEACHER: Yes!

2  [4.5] Listen to conversations a-c and say the students' parts yourself.

3 Ask how to say a word from your language in English and what an English word means.

Do you remember?

1 Write the *he/she* form of these verbs. Practice saying them.

- watch ~~watches~~
- study
- think
- hate
- do
- want
- go
- have
- close
- finish

2 One of these sentences is correct. Correct the other six.

- a) The supermarket does stay open 24 hours?
Does the supermarket stay open 24 hours?
- b) Does your grandfather lives with you?
- c) Sonia really likes fly.
- d) What time does the movie finish?
- e) My wife often go to Peru on business.
- f) Where your brother live?
- g) Doctor Milego not speak English.
- h) Does Ben like computer games?
Yes, he like.

3 Put the words in the correct order.

- a) evening/studies/the/never/Ellen/in
Ellen never studies in the evening.
- b) six/sometimes/Javier/in the morning/at/leaves home
- c) to/You/listen/never/me
- d) but this fish/don't usually/is/like fish/good/I
- e) city/very/is/New York/a/exciting
- f) help/daughter/me/in the house/My/doesn't often

4 Mark the stressed syllable.

• beautiful	computer	cooking	
accent	languages	housework	exciting
magazine	movies	piano	guitar

module 5

Getting from A to B

► **Vocabulary:** means of transportation

► **Articles:** *the, a, an,* and zero

► **Can and can't**

Task: conduct a class survey on transportation

Vocabulary

Means of transportation

1 Find the different types of transportation in the pictures.

a motorcycle a scooter
a taxi a car an airplane
a bicycle a bus a train
a subway train a streetcar

2 Put the words in order from fast to slow.

1 = airplane

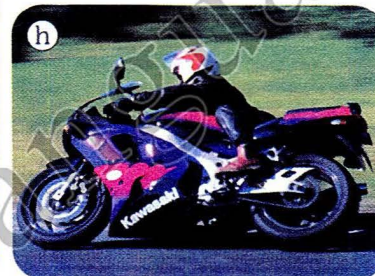
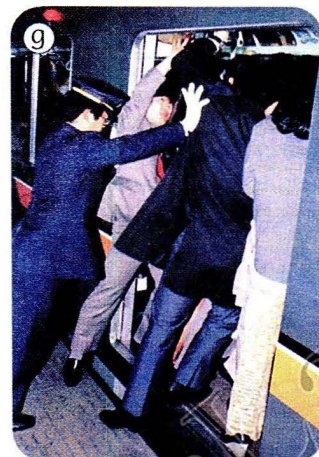
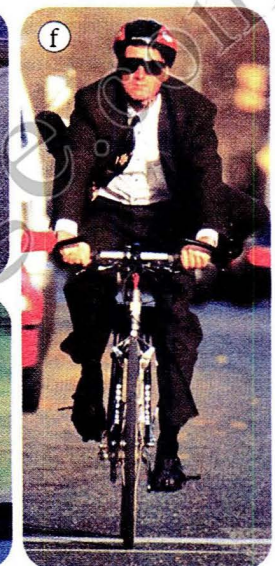
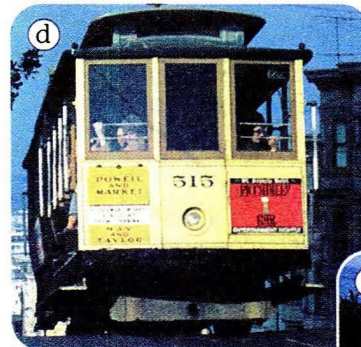
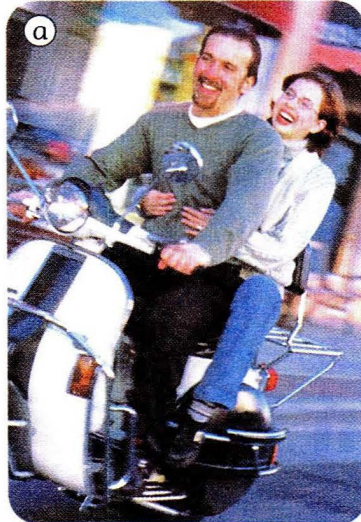
3 [5.1] Listen to someone putting the words in order. Is your order the same?

4 How do these people usually travel in your town?

- schoolchildren
- students and young people
- businesspeople
- old people
- police officers

by car

on foot



Reading and vocabulary

1 Check the meaning of the words in the box.

a traffic jam a journey wait crowded

2 [5.2] Read the text and put the numbers from the box in the blanks. Then listen to the recording and check.

1,000,000 (one million) 25 3 53,000,000 (fifty-three million)
59 100,000,000 (one hundred million) 5

factfile factfile factfile factfile factfile

Transportation facts!

- Traffic jams in Bangkok, the capital city of Thailand, are so bad that a normal journey to work takes about (a) hours!
- People in most countries drive on the right – but people drive on the left in (b) countries, including Japan, India, Australia, and Great Britain.
- More than (c) people in the world ride a bicycle!
- Every day, more than (d) people travel into downtown London: 35% go in by subway, 30% take the train, (e)..... % travel by car, 7% catch the bus, and 3% walk to work!
- In Tokyo, people never wait for more than (f) minutes for a subway train. The only problem is that the trains are so crowded that it's difficult to get on – or get off!
- (g) people fly to and from O'Hare Airport in Chicago, USA, every year! (That's about one hundred people every minute!)



factfile factfile factfile factfile factfile

3 a) Look back at the text and choose the correct words to go together.

- | | | |
|---|----------------|-----------|
| 1 | drive/ride | a car |
| 2 | drive/ride | a bicycle |
| 3 | travel with/by | car |
| 4 | fly in/to | Chicago |
| 5 | wait/wait for | a bus |
| 6 | get on/in | a train |
| 7 | get off/out | a train |
| 8 | walk to/in | work |
| 9 | ride/take | a train |

b) Test your partner like this:



4 Make sentences that are true for your town or country. Compare your answers in small groups.

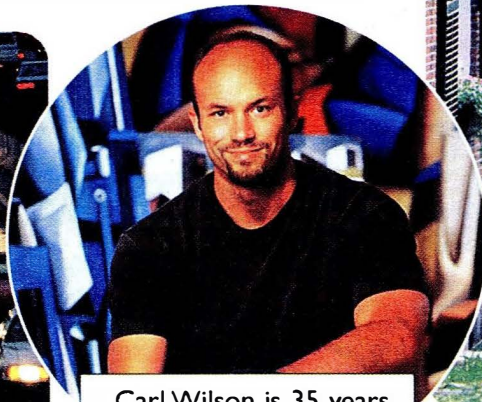
- In
- most people *drive very fast/ drive very well/don't drive very well.*
 - not many people/some people/ a lot of people* ride bicycles.
 - traffic jams *are a big problem/ are sometimes a problem/ aren't a problem.*
 - the buses are *very crowded/ sometimes crowded/not very crowded.*
 - you *often/sometimes/never* wait a long time for a bus.
 - people *often/don't very often/ never* fly from one city to another.
 - people *always/usually/never* wait in line to get on and off buses and trains.

► **Language summary A page 143.**

Language focus 1

Articles : *the, a, an,* and zero

Look at the pictures and read about Carl Wilson. Underline the articles *a, an,* and *the*.



Carl Wilson is 35 years old. He's an artist, and he lives in Boston, a large city in the United States.



b) [5.3] Listen and check your answers.

Grammar

- 1 When do we use **an** instead of **a**?
 - 2 Is there usually an article with names?
 - 3 Which article goes with which group (*a/an, the, zero Ø*)?
- a I've got a new car, I live in a big city. *a.*
- b she's ... teacher, ... tennis player, ... doctor. *.....*
- c in ... morning, in ... afternoon, in ... downtown area. *.....*
- d in Paris, in New York, in Spain. *.....*
- e in ... United States, in ... UK. *.....*
- f by ... bus, by ... car, by ... train. *.....*
- g go ... home, go to ... school, go to ... work. *.....*
- h on ... Friday, on ... Saturdays. *.....*

► Language summary B page 143.

Practice

- 1 a)** Read what Carl Wilson says about transportation problems in his city. Complete the blanks with *a, an, the,* or zero (\emptyset).

I live near (1) the downtown area, and we have (2) real problem with cars here. Most people go to (3) work by (4) car, so in (5) morning when people drive into (6) Boston, and in (7) evening, it's very busy. I have (8) car, but I don't drive much; I'm (9) artist, so I usually work at (10) home!

- 2** Answer the questions using a phrase with *a, the,* or zero (\emptyset).

Quiz

a Write five ways to go home from your school.

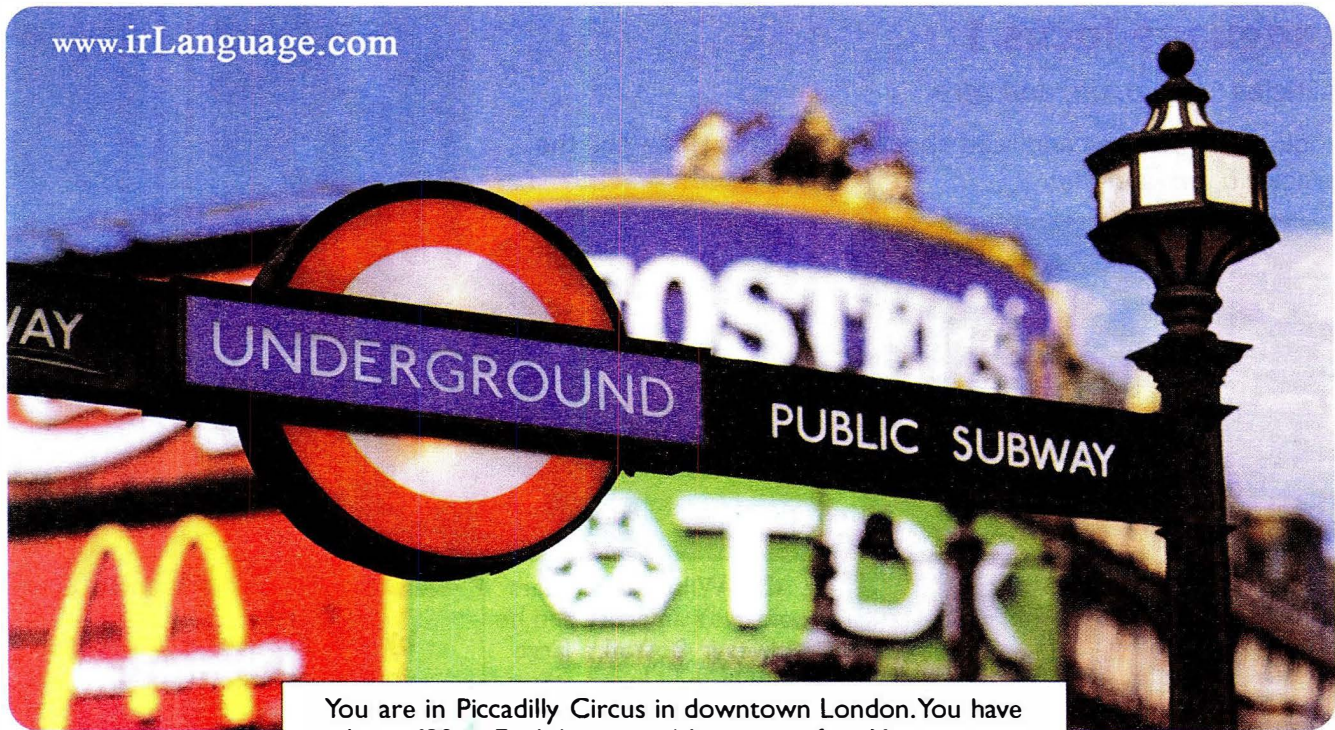
b When do most people...
get up?
have breakfast?
go home from work?
watch TV?

c What are these people's jobs?

Kate Winslet
Ricky Martin
Martina Hingis
Tony Blair

d Which day of the week do people usually...

go to church?
eat out?
watch soccer?
stay at home?



You are in Piccadilly Circus in downtown London. You have about £20 in English money. It's ten past four. You want to be at Heathrow Airport at half past five.

Language focus 2

Can and can't

1 Look at the picture and read the information. Where are you? What journey do you need to make?

2 Read about four ways to get to Heathrow. Answer these questions for each journey.

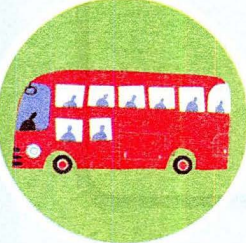
- a What is the means of transportation?
- b How long does the journey take?
- c How much does the journey cost?

1



You can take a subway train from Piccadilly Circus to Paddington Station (it takes fifteen minutes and costs £1.50). From there, you can take a fast train from Paddington Station direct to Heathrow. The fast train costs £12: there are four trains every hour, and the journey takes exactly fifteen minutes.

2



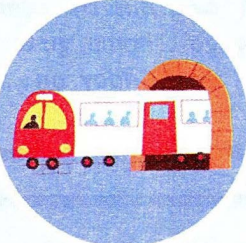
You can walk to Victoria Station (about thirty minutes), and catch a bus to Heathrow. It costs £8.00, but it's quite slow because of the traffic; the journey takes about an hour. The buses leave every hour at 3:00, 4:00, 5:00

3



You can take a taxi: it takes about forty-five minutes and costs £30.00.

4



You can take the subway from Piccadilly Circus to Heathrow Airport. It's cheap (£3.50), but the trains are very crowded in the afternoon. The journey takes about fifty minutes.

3 Work with a partner. Decide how to go to the airport.

Grammar

Complete the gaps with **can** or **can't** (cannot).

- + You ...~~can~~... take a fast train from Paddington.
- We take a taxi, we've only got £20.
- ? I take the subway?

▶ **Language summary C page 144.**

Pronunciation

1 [5.4] Listen to the sentences on the recording. Mark each sentence +, -, or ?

- a b c d e
- f g h i j

2 Listen again and practice saying the sentences.

Practice

a) Which of these things can you do in your town? Make sentences.

You can't travel by streetcar.

- a travel by streetcar
- b travel by subway
- c ride a bicycle safely
- d find a taxi easily
- e go shopping on a Sunday
- f eat in a restaurant at midnight
- g eat food from other countries
- h meet people from other countries

b) Compare your answers with other students.

Listening

How to go to ...

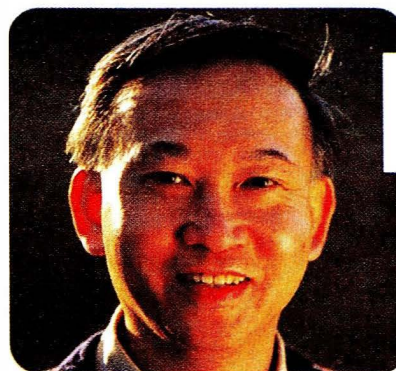
Louise comes from a town near New York City, in the United States. She works in downtown New York.



Ara is from San Sebastián in Spain.



Yuka lives in Tokyo, the capital city of Japan.



1 [5.5] Louise, Ara, and Yuka talk about their journeys. Listen and complete the table.


	From	To	How	Time	Cost
Louise	home				
Ara					/
Yuka					
Journey 1					
Journey 2					

2 Tell your partner about two journeys you make. Then listen and complete the table about your partner's journeys.

Conduct a class survey on transportation

Useful language

Preparation for task

- 1 Read the survey below and check any words or phrases you don't know.
- 2  [5.6] Listen to people answering the questions. Which question does each person answer?

Person A = Question
 Person B = Question
 Person C = Question
 Person D = Question
 Person E = Question
 Person F = Question

Task

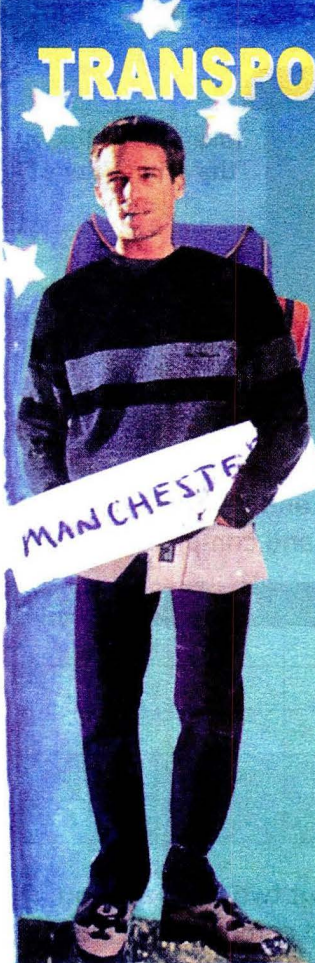
- 1 Work in groups of three or four. Write two more questions for the survey.
- 2 Use the survey to interview each other.

Asking questions

"Do you use *(the bus)*?"
 "How far do you *(walk)*?"
 "How do you *(go downtown)*?"
 "How long does it take?"
 "What do you think of *(public transportation)*?"

Answering questions

"Yes, often/sometimes/ every day."
 "No, never".
 "About *(five)* kilometers/ minutes/hours."
 "By *train/bus/bicycle*."
 "I walk to *(the downtown area)*."



TRANSPORTATION SURVEY

Your personal transportation

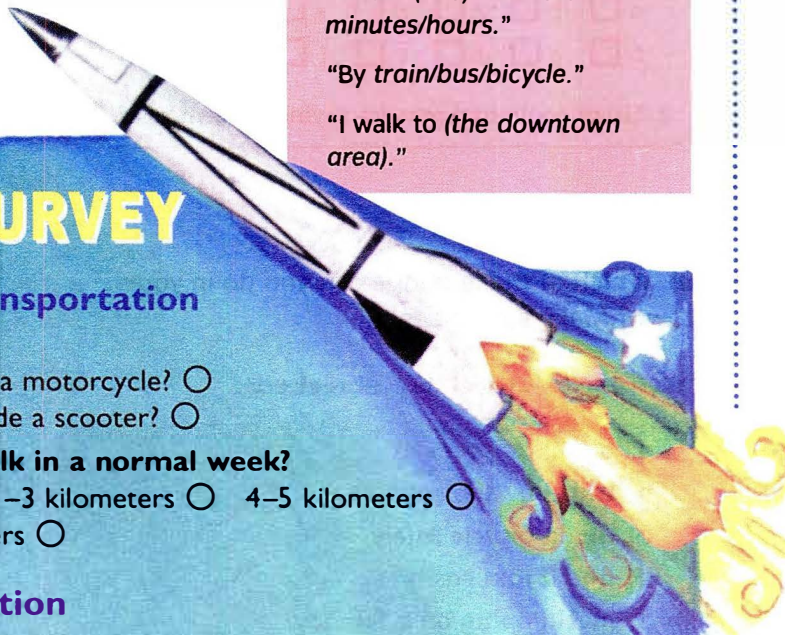
- 1 Do you ...
 drive a car? ride a motorcycle?
 ride a bicycle? ride a scooter?
- 2 How far do you walk in a normal week?
 0-1 kilometers 1-3 kilometers 4-5 kilometers
 more than 5 kilometers


Public transportation

- 3 Do you use public transportation
 every day? often, but not every day? sometimes? never?
- 4 What do you think of the public transportation in your town
 or city?
 Excellent Good I don't know other

Your journey to school/work

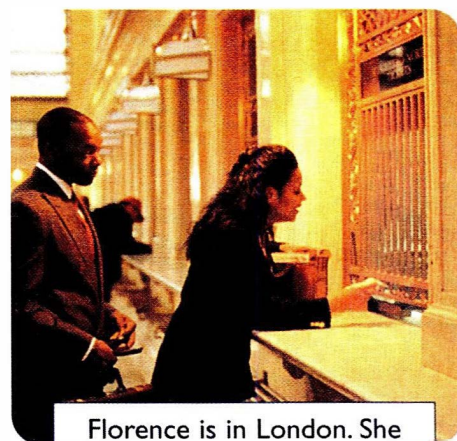
- 5 How do you go to school or work every day?
 by car by bus I walk other
- 6 How long does it take?
 1-5 minutes 5-15 minutes
 15-30 minutes more than 30 minutes





Real life and writing

Buying a ticket



Florence is in London. She wants to travel to Paris.

1 Read the conversation in a ticket office and put it in the right order.

- Here you are.
- Platform eighteen.
- One-way.
- One-way or round-trip?
- Thanks. Which platform is it?
- That's £49.50, please.
- A ticket to Paris, please ... the six o'clock train.
- Thank you. Sign there, please.

2 [5.7] Listen to the conversation and check. Then practice the conversation in pairs. Change:

- the city.
- the cost.
- the ticket (one-way/round-trip).
- the platform number.

3 a) You can also buy a train ticket over the Internet. You want to catch the train to Paris. Decide:

- who you want to travel with.
- where and when.

b) Complete the order form.

Home
Browse Timetable
Book Your Ticket
Destinations
Services & Facilities

Ticket Order Form

Send ticket(s) to

Person 1
 Name as on passport: Mr. or Ms.
 Address
 City Country
 Phone
 Email

Person 2
 Name as on passport: Mr. or Ms.

Tickets
 Ticket ordered
 Depart City Date Time
 Arrive City Date Time

Click on **1st CLASS** or **Standard**

Number of Persons

Here is my CREDIT CARD INFORMATION

Registration
Contact Us
مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Consolidation

modules 1-5

A Listening and speaking: personal information

1 Write one word in each blank.

Elspeth (1)..... a really good friend of mine.
She' (2)..... about twenty-five years old and she
(3)..... in Edinburgh, in (4)..... big apartment near
(5)..... downtown area. She (6)..... at the Scottish
Museum and her job (7)..... very important to her.
She isn't (8)..... but she (9)..... a boyfriend, Nick.
They (10)..... have a car because they (11)..... like
driving, but they (12)..... their bicycles all round the
city. Elspeth (13)..... going to restaurants, (14).....
to the movies, and meeting people, and she' (15).....
very friendly.

2 [1] Listen and check your answers.

3 Take two minutes to think about one of your friends. Think about:

- his/her age • where he/she lives • his/her work
- married or not? • his/her family
- his/her likes and dislikes • travel? • possessions
- anything else?

4 Work with a partner. Speak about your friend for one minute!

B Question words

1 Complete each question in the quiz opposite with one of the question words from the box. Then choose the correct answer, (a), (b), or (c).

Who? When? Where? How old? What?

2 In groups, make some more questions about people and places in your country. (Use the verb *be*.)


3 Ask your questions to the other groups.

QUIZ

How much do you know about the English-speaking world?

- is Ontario?
(a) in Canada
(b) in the US
(c) in Great Britain
- color are the buses in London?
(a) black
(b) red
(c) yellow
- is the Sydney Opera House in Australia?
(a) about thirty years old
(b) about forty years old
(c) about fifty years old
- is Christmas?
(a) December 25th
(b) December 31st
(c) January 6th
- is the singer George Michael from?
(a) Britain
(b) the United States
(c) Greece
- is the White House in Washington, DC?
(a) about 100 years old
(b) about 200 years old
(c) about 500 years old?
- is NOT a tennis player?
(a) Venus Williams
(b) Lindsay Davenport
(c) Courteney Cox
- is the capital city of New Zealand?
(a) Christchurch
(b) Auckland
(c) Wellington

C Listening: information about times and prices

1a  [2] Listen to the three conversations. What are the people talking about? Listen and check (✓) the topics.

traveling by plane the zoo the movies
traveling by train television programs a jazz concert

b Put the words in order to make questions.

Conversation 1

- 1 the first train/Belfast/What time/leave/does?
What time does the first train leave Belfast?
- 2 does/arrive/When/it/in Dublin?
.....
- 3 it/How/is/much?
.....

Conversation 2

- 4 open/What time/the zoo/does?
.....
- 5 it/What time/does/close?
.....
- 6 How much/it/does/for a ten-year-old child/cost?
.....
- 7 you/can/there/travel/How?
.....

Conversation 3

- 8 the soccer/When/does/start/game?
.....
- 9 finish/does/When/it?
.....
- 10 is/What time/the movie?
.....

c  [2] Listen again and answer questions 1–10.

D Can and can't

1a Work with a partner. Write two things you can do:

- a in a restaurant. You can have lunch.
- b on weekends in your town/city.
- c in a classroom.
- d with an email.

b Write two things you can't do:

- e in your town/city on a Sunday.
- f in very hot weather.
- g with a bicycle.

2 Work with a new partner. Read out your ideas (not in order) and guess the topic.

You can talk to people and listen to cassettes.

In a restaurant?

No, in a classroom.

E Vocabulary: alphabet quiz

Work in pairs. Complete the sentences with words from Modules 1–5. The first letter of each word is given.

- 1 My father's sister is my **a**unt...
- 2 My mother's son is my **b**rother.
- 3 What time does the store **c**lose?
- 4 Every night I write in my **d**ictionary.
- 5 I love New York! It's a very **e**xcellent city!
- 6 My **f**avorite color is red.
- 7 You can **g**o to the number 4 bus over there.
- 8 When does Alan **h**ave lunch?
- 9 Can I see your **i**dentification card, Madam?
- 10 I hate traffic **j**ams!
- 11 I'm sorry, I don't **k**now your name.
- 12 Ludmila studies **l**anguages at college.
- 13 My sister's a **m**usician – she plays the piano.
- 14 Subway trains stop at **n**earby stations.
- 15 Banks **o**pen at 9:30 in England.
- 16 My son's a **p**olice officer.
- 17 When you want to know something, you ask a **q**uest.
- 18 A lot of people **r**ide bicycles in the Netherlands.
- 19 Jennifer's not married. She's **s**ingle.
- 20 Many people **t**ake the train to work by train.
- 21 My cousin's father is my **u**ncle.
- 22 Kieron **v**isits his grandfather every week.
- 23 I often **w**ait for a bus for one hour!
- 24 Liam is two **y**ears old.
- 25 This **z**oo hasn't got many animals.

module 6

Eating and drinking

- ▶ **Vocabulary:** food; countable and uncountable nouns
- ▶ *There is and there are*
- ▶ *Some and any*
- ▶ *How much? and how many?*

Task: describe the differences between two pictures



Vocabulary

Food: countable and uncountable nouns

1 Look at the meal in a hotel. Is it breakfast, lunch, or dinner?

2 Find these things in the picture.

milk	coffee	fruit juice	cereal	fruit
bananas	apples	oranges	cheese	meat
eggs	toast	bread rolls	butter	jam
yogurt	crackers	grapes	sausages	

3 a) Put the words in the box into two groups:

things you can count (countable nouns)

- ~~eggs~~.....
-
-

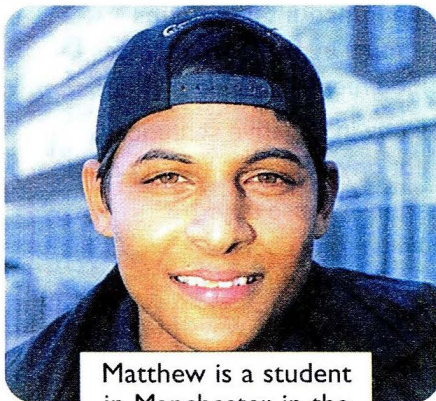
things you can't count (uncountable nouns)

- ~~cheese~~.....
- ~~butter~~.....
-
-

b) Can uncountable nouns have a plural form?

▶ *Language summary A page 144.*

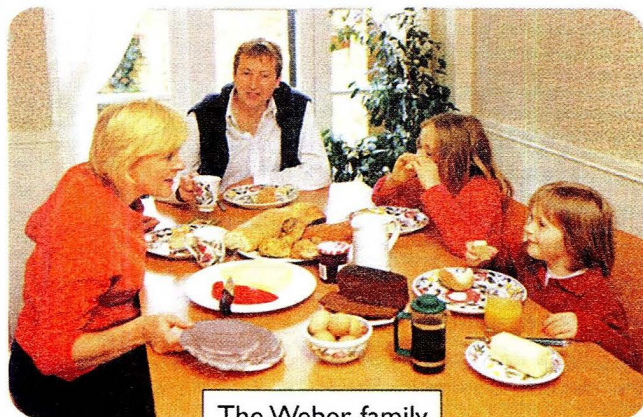
4 [6.1] Listen to three people talking about what they have for breakfast. Write down what they have.



Matthew is a student in Manchester, in the north of England.



Sonia comes from Recife, in the north of Brazil.



The Weber family live in Germany.

5 What do you usually have for breakfast? Tell your partner.

For breakfast I usually have ...

Language focus 1

There is and there are

[6.2] Listen to the sentences about the picture on page 48. Are they true or false?

- a True b c d
 e f g

Grammar

Circle the correct answers to complete these sentences.

Singular: *There's/There are* a pitcher of milk.

Uncountable: *There's/There are* a lot of cheese.

Plural: *There's/There are* eight bread rolls.

► **Language summary B page 144.**

Practice

1 Look back at the picture on page 48. Write four **true** sentences and four **false** sentences about the things in the picture.

There are eight bread rolls. ✓

There are seven oranges. ✗

2 Work in pairs. Test your partner using your sentences. Your partner closes his/her book and corrects the false sentences.

There's a lot of cheese.

True.

There are seven oranges.

False – I think there are about four oranges.

Language focus 2

Some and any

1 a) Find the pictures of these things. Check (✓) the foods which are healthy, and cross (X) the foods which aren't healthy.

vegetables ✓	French fries	hamburger
soup	sugar	grilled fish
		nuts
		cream

b) Compare answers in pairs.

2 Read the text. Are your ideas the same or not?

3 Use the text to complete these two sentences:

- a If you want a healthy lunch, have some ...
- b If you want to lose weight, don't eat any...

4 Do you eat healthy food? What's your favorite food?

Grammar

Plural and uncountable nouns

We use **some** in positive sentences.

Try **some green vegetables**. Eat **some fruit**.

We use **any** in negative sentences.

Don't eat **any cookies**. Don't drink **any Coke**.

In questions we use **any**:

Do you have **any cookies**?

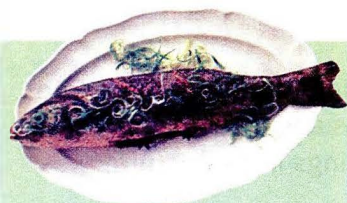
Do we have **any milk**?

Notice: there are two ways of making negative sentences:

a **Water doesn't have any calories**.

b **It has no calories**.

► **Language summary C page 144.**



Healthy Eating!

www.irLanguage.com

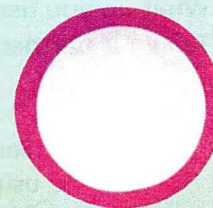


- Do you want to be healthy? Perhaps you need to go on a diet. Start the day by drinking a glass of water or orange juice ... but no coffee or tea, and no milk or sugar, please!
- For lunch, don't eat any fried foods ... French fries, or burgers, for example ... some grilled fish, perhaps with some green vegetables, is really good for you!
- Do you want some pasta for lunch? OK, but don't put any cheese or tomato sauce on top!!

- Don't eat any desserts that contain cream, butter, or chocolate!!
- If you're still hungry, eat some fruit, or have some nuts – they're really healthy!

And to drink ... just water! It doesn't have any calories so you can drink as much as you want.

- For dinner, have some soup and bread. (But remember – no butter!) It's simple ... but delicious!!



Practice

- 1 **MD** a) Katie wants to eat healthy food. Look at her shopping list on page 134 for two minutes.



- b) Work in pairs. Can you remember what Katie wants to buy? There are twelve things.

She wants to buy some apples and some ...

- 2 When Katie goes shopping she forgets her list! Look at the things she brings home and answer the questions.



- a Which things from her list does she have?
b Which things from her list doesn't she have?

She has some grapes, but she doesn't have any oranges.

- c Is there any unhealthy food in her shopping bag?

Language focus 3

How much? and how many?

Match questions 1–4 with the answers a–d.

- 1 How much money do you have?
- 2 How many brothers and sisters do you have?
- 3 How much milk is there?
- 4 How many days are there in November?

- a About two liters.
- b About £10.
- c Thirty.
- d Two – one brother and one sister.

Grammar

Questions with *how much?* and *how many?*

- a We use *how much* with *uncountable* nouns.
- b We use *how many* with *countable* nouns.

► **Language summary D page 144.**

Practice

MD Complete each question with *how much* or *how many*. Then choose the best answer.

- a McDonald's restaurants are there in the world?
• 100 • 10,000 • 100,000
- b water do you drink every day?
• 2 liters • 5 liters • 50 liters
- c blood is there in the human body?
• 4 liters • 8 liters • 20 liters
- d cups of coffee do you drink every day?
• I don't drink coffee • one or two
• three or more
- e kilometers there in ten miles?
• six • sixteen • sixty
- f time is there until the end of the lesson?
• More than 45 minutes
• 15–45 minutes • Less than 10 minutes

Listening

“Waiter! Waiter!” Jokes

1 Find the meaning of these words, and match them to one of the pictures a–c.

- cherry surprise feathers fly ice cream

2 [6.3] Listen to three jokes. Which joke goes with which picture?



3 Write the last line of each joke. Check your answers.

JOKE 1
Waitress: Do you want a cherry on top?
Customer: No,

JOKE 2
Waiter: Oh yes, you're right.
 a knife and fork, sir?

JOKE 3
Customer: So, what's the surprise?
Waiter:, sir!

4 [6.4] Look at the joke below. Complete the sentences with a word or phrase from the box. Listen and check.

- you're sir on can
~~waiter~~ a it see there

Customer: Waiter!
 (1) Waiter!
Waiter: Yes, (2) ?
Customer: (3) 's
 (4) spider in my soup!
Waiter: Really, sir?
 (5) I see?
Customer: Look! There
 (6) is!
Waiter: Oh, I (7)
 Yes, (8) right, sir.
 The fly is (9) vacation.

Real life

Ordering food and drinks

1 Look at pictures 1–3 on page 53. Which restaurant sells:

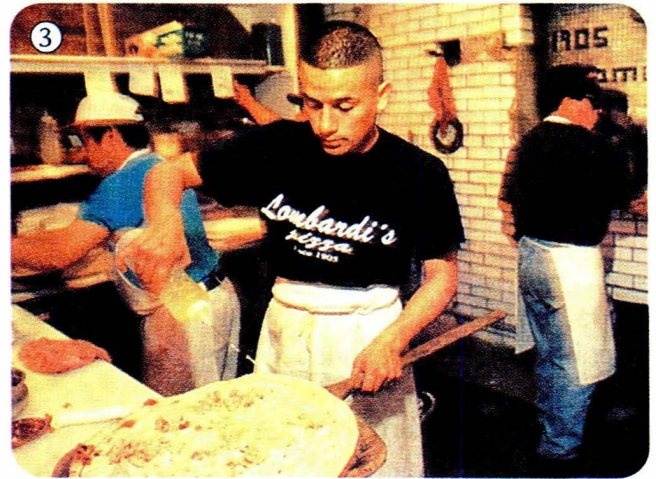
- a pizzas? b hamburgers?
 c coffee and cakes?

2 [6.5] Listen to three conversations.

- a Which of the three restaurants are they in?
 b What do the people order?
 c How much does it cost?

3 Listen again and complete the phrases with words from the box. Practice with a partner.

- can anything out
 else have keep
 what order much



4 Work in pairs, Student A and Student B.

Student A: Choose something to eat and drink from the menu. Order your food!

Student B: Take Student A's order. Tell him/her how much it costs.

C = CUSTOMER W = WAITER

(from Conversation 1)

w: Can I take your order, please?
 c: (1) I have two Super King-Size Burgers, please.
 w: (2) to drink with that?
 w: Eat in or take (3)

(from Conversation 2)

w: Would you like anything (4)?
 c: Can I (5) the bill, please.
 c: (6) the change.


(from Conversation 3)

c: I'd like to (7) a pizza – to be delivered, please.
 w: (8) would you like?
 c: How (9) is that altogether?

m enu			
Breakfast			
croissant and jam	1.40		
fried eggs and tomatoes	1.20		
sausages and eggs	1.05		
Burgers			
king-size	2.35		
classic	2.10		
with cheese	2.50		
Cakes · homemade ·			
chocolate	1.50		
coffee	1.50		
apple	1.75		
Drinks			
tea	.55	hot chocolate	.90
coffee	.70	Coke	.80
cappuccino	1.40	orange	.80
Sandwiches			
tuna salad	2.20		
egg salad	1.99		
cheese	1.99		
Extras			
French fries	1.80		
salad	1.80		
bread	1.50		

Describe the differences between two pictures

Preparation for task

 [6.6] Listen to someone describing the picture. Put a number in the circle next to the part of the picture she describes.

Useful language

a Describing your own picture

"In my picture ...

there's a (*small dog*)."

there are some (*potatoes*)."

there aren't any (*apples*)."

"On the left/on the right/in the middle, there's ..."

b Asking questions

"In your picture, is there a (*cat*)?"

"Are there any (*oranges*)?"

"How many (*potatoes*) are there?"

"How much are the (*bananas*)?"

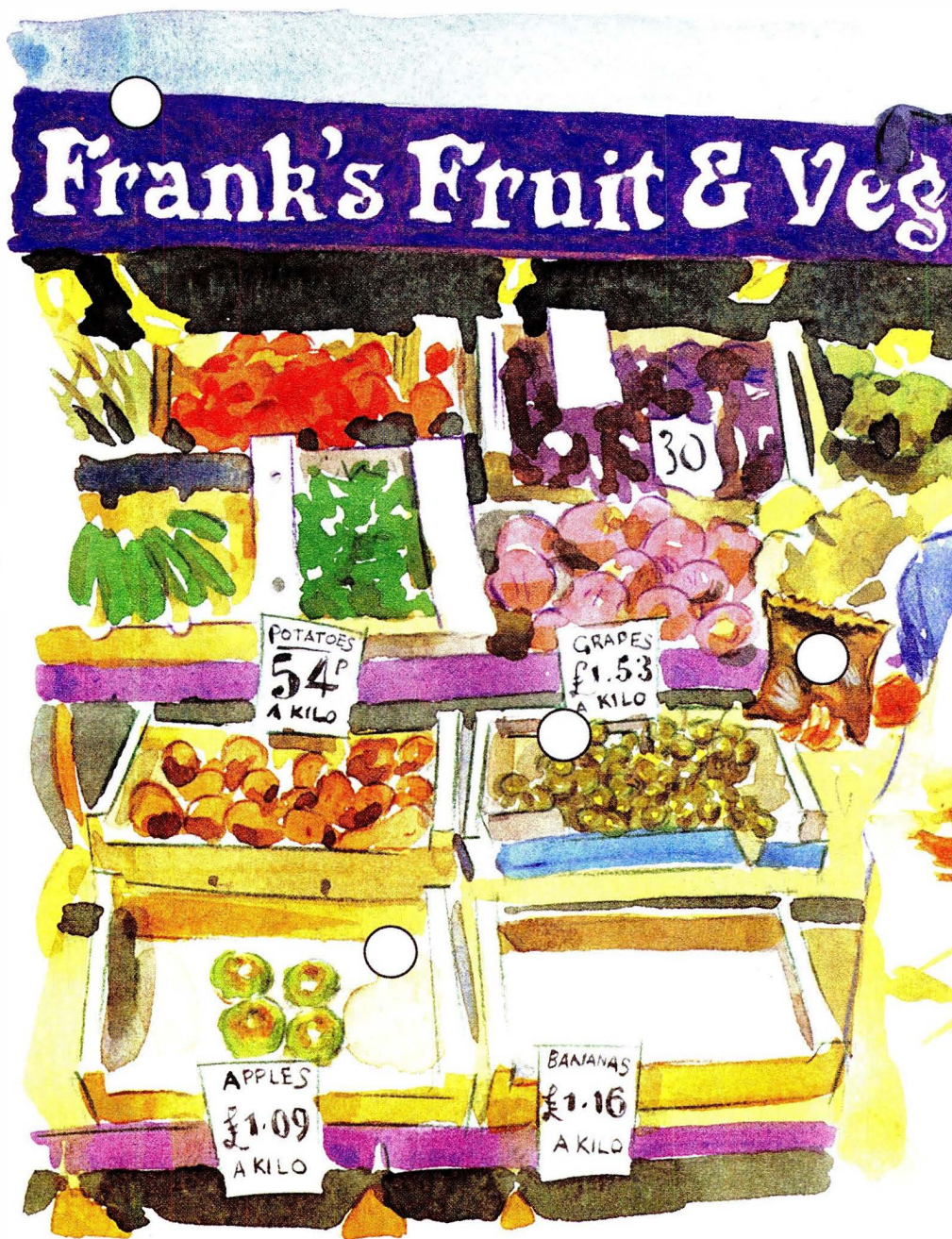
"What color is (*the cat*)?"

c Talking about differences

"In Picture A (*there's a cat*), but in Picture B (*there isn't*)."

"I don't have any (*apples*) in my picture."

"In his/her picture there's (*a dog*), there isn't (*a cat*)."



Task

1 a) Work in pairs. Do not look at your partner's picture.

Student A: Look at Picture A on this page.

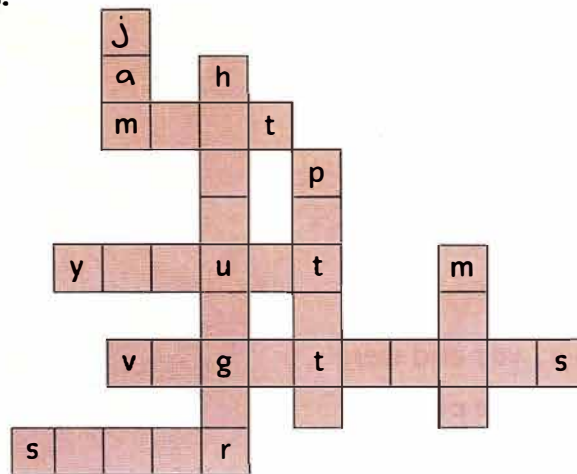
Student B: Look at Picture B on page 135.

b) There are eight differences between the two pictures. Find them by describing your picture and asking questions. Mark the differences on the picture.

► Useful language a) and b)

Do you remember?

1 Write the missing letters to make seven food and drink words.



2 Check (✓) the sentences that are true and change the ones that are false.

- a) There are twenty students in my class.
No, there aren't. There are twenty-five students.
- b) There are two railroad stations in town.
- c) There's a college in town.
- d) There's a computer room in the school.
- e) There are three children in my family.
- f) There's a beach near my home.

3 Write the questions, using *how much* or *how many*.

- a) How meat/you/eat in a week?
How much meat do you eat in a week?
- b) How fruit/you/eat?
- c) How sugar/you/have with your coffee or tea?
- d) How hours' sleep/you/have at night?
- e) How time/you/work on a computer every day?

4 Make five groups of words with the same sounds.

eggs wife milk meat juice healthy
cheese grilled spoons ~~fried~~

- a) knife fried
- b) bread
- c) fish
- d) cream
- e) fruit



2 a) With your partner describe the differences between the two pictures.

► Useful language c)

b) Compare answers with the class. Did you find all eight differences?

module 7


Extraordinary lives

- ▶ Past Simple: was and were
 - ▶ Past Simple: regular and irregular verbs
 - ▶ Vocabulary: past time phrases
- Task: tell a life story

Language focus 1

Past Simple: was and were

1 Why were the people in the pictures famous?

2 a)  In pairs underline the correct answer.

Icons of the last century

- a The artist Pablo Picasso was French/Spanish.
- b The 1970s group Abba were from Germany/Sweden.
- c Franz Kafka was a famous musician/writer.
- d From 1994 to 1999, Nelson Mandela was the president of South Africa/Zimbabwe.
- e The Spice Girls were popular in the 1990s/in the 1970s.
- f Marie Curie was born in Warsaw/Paris.
- g John Lennon and Paul McCartney (members of The Beatles) were both originally from London/Liverpool.
- h Marilyn Monroe's real name was Norma Jean Baker/Jean Harlow.

b)  [7.1] Listen and check.



Grammar

Past Simple: was and were

Complete the blanks.

+

I was.
 he/she/it
 you/we/they

-

I wasn't
 he/she/it
 you/we/they

?

..... I?
 he/she/it?
 you/we/they?

▶ Language summary A page 145.



b) Match answers a–e with questions 1–5.

- a It was in June – I was twenty-one! **Question 3**
- b I don't know – I think there was a film, or maybe a soccer game ...
- c Yes, Patrick was late – as usual!
- d I was born in London. My father and mother were born in Ireland.
- e I was at home with my family.

c) [7.2] Now listen and check your answers.

4 Ask and answer questions 1–5 from Exercise 3 in pairs. Tell the class about your partner.

Practice

1 Write sentences about five of the famous people in the pictures.

a Picasso wasn't French, he was Spanish.

2 Make true sentences with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*.

- a I *was/wasn't* born in the 1980s.
- b I *was/wasn't* at home at ten o'clock last night.
- c The weather *was/wasn't* very good yesterday.
- d The 1990s *were/weren't* a good time for my country.
- e I *was/wasn't* late for class today.
- f My first teacher *was/wasn't* a woman.

3 a) Complete the questions with *was* or *were*.

- 1 Where *...were...* you born? Where your parents born?
- 2 Where you at eight o'clock last night?
- 3 When your last birthday? How old you?
- 4 What programs on television last night?
- 5 anybody late for class today? Who?

Jan was born in Prague. His parents were born in Brno.

At eight o'clock last night Nil was at her friend's house.

Pronunciation

1 [7.3] Listen and complete the blanks with present or past forms of *be*.


- a Where *...are...* the children?
- b Where you?
- c The train fast.
- d The food very good.
- e You here yesterday.
- f They on vacation.
- g They at home.
- h We at school.

2 Listen again and practice.

Reading

Ordinary lives, important ideas

1 Tim Berners-Lee invented something very important. Do you know what it was?

2  Check the meaning of the words in the box.

ordinary	surprising	become	interested in
graduate	a network	decide	linked

3 Read the text. Then complete the fact file.

Tim Berners-Lee looks ordinary – he is about 45 years old and has brown hair. His life is quite normal – he was born in England, and went to school in London, but his home is now in Massachusetts, USA. However, in 1989, Tim had a very important idea. He invented the World Wide Web (www)!



Both Tim's parents worked with computers, so it isn't surprising that he loved computers from an early age. When he was eighteen, he left school and went to Oxford University, where he studied Physics. At Oxford, he became more and more interested in computers,

and he made his first computer from an old television. He graduated in 1976 and got a job with a computer company in Dorset, England. In 1989, he went to work in Switzerland, where he first had the idea of an international information network linked by computer ... and he decided to call it the World Wide Web. In 1994, he went to live in the United States, where he now works. In 1995, he wrote an article in the *New York Times* where he said "The Web is a Universe of information: it is for everyone." His idea of a web, where people from all over the world can exchange information, is now real.


Tim Berners-Lee: Fact file

His important idea	
Place of birth	
Place(s) of study	
Place(s) of work	
Personal details	
Now lives in	

Language focus 2

Past Simple: regular and irregular verbs

1 a) Look back at the text about Tim Berners-Lee. Find **two** sentences about his life now, and **two** sentences about his life in the past.

b)  Underline the verbs in the sentences and say if they are regular or irregular. Check your answer in the *Minidictionary*.

Grammar

1 Regular verbs:

a Find the past forms in the text.

invent invented
 work
 love
 study
 graduate
 decide

b How do we form the Past Simple of regular verbs?


2 Irregular verbs

Find the past forms in the text.

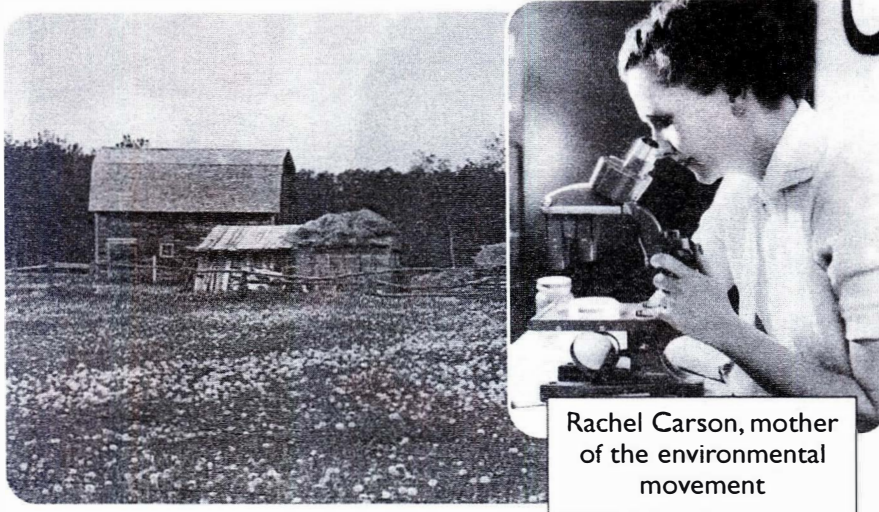
have
 go
 leave
 become
 make
 get
 write

► *Language summary B*
 page 145.

Practice

1  Check the meaning of the words in the box. Then read the text and put the verbs into the past tense.


childhood a farm zoology a poem the environment



Rachel Carson, mother of the environmental movement

The Story of Rachel Carson


Rachel (a) ~~was~~ (be) born in a small town in Pennsylvania, USA, – in 1907. She (b) (have) a happy childhood with her family on a small farm. She soon (c) (become) very interested in nature, and (d) (write) poems about her favorite animals. At the age of 18, she (e) (leave) her home town and (f) (go) to study zoology at the Pennsylvania College for Women.

2  Put these regular verbs in the past to complete the story.


work die help love study believe

Rachel (a) graduated from the Pennsylvania College for Women in 1929; she then (b) at Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore. For many years she (c) for the US government as a biologist. Rachel always (d) nature, and (e) that people, animals, and plants are all linked. Her books (f) people to understand the importance of the environment for everyone. Now people call her “the mother of the environmental movement.” She (g) in 1964, aged fifty-seven.

Pronunciation

1  [7.4] Listen and mark the number of syllables and the stress. Practice saying the verbs.

•	•	•	•	•
worked	studied	invented		
helped	finished	decided		
believed	graduated			
traveled	started	loved		
walked	wanted			

3  Here is some more information about the famous people on page 56. Find the past form of new verbs in your *Minidictionary*.

Nelson Mandela (a) (spend) twenty-seven years in prison. Before that, he (b) (be) a lawyer.

Abba (c) (write) most of their songs in English. They (d) (sell) millions of records in the 70s and 80s.

John Lennon and Paul McCartney first (e) (meet) at a party when they (f) (be) students.

Marilyn Monroe (g) (change) her name before she (h) (become) famous.

Marie Curie and her husband Pierre Curie (i) (discover) radium. She (j) (win) the Nobel Prize twice, in 1903 and again in 1911.

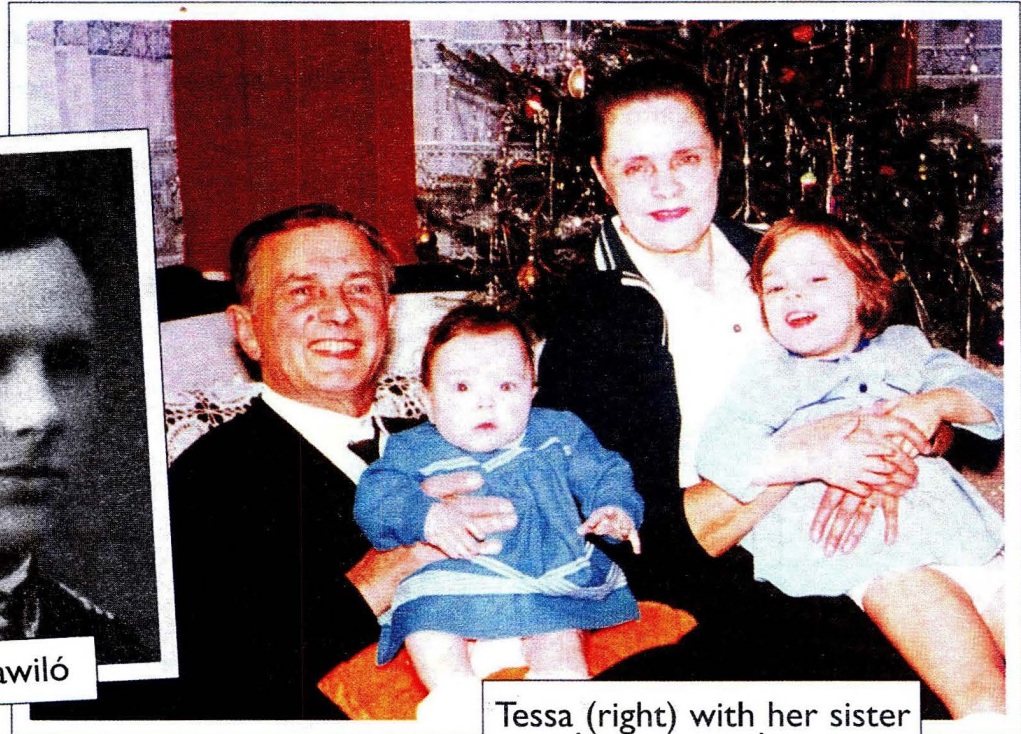
Pablo Picasso (k) (leave) Spain in 1904. He (l) (live) in France for most of his life. He (m) (die) in 1973.

Listening

My great-grandfather



George Zawiló



Tessa (right) with her sister and great-grandparents

1 [7.5] Listen to Tessa talking about her great-grandfather, George. Answer these questions.

- Where was George born?
- Where did he live before the war?
- Where did he live after the war?
- What nationality was his wife?

2 a) Put the verb into the past form, then match the two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1 Tessa only (<i>know</i>) knew | a he (<i>decide</i>) to leave Poland. |
| 2 George (<i>die</i>) | b about three months. |
| 3 George (<i>be</i>) born | c her great-grandfather George for a few years. |
| 4 World War II (<i>begin</i>) | d he (<i>go</i>) to live in England. |
| 5 When the soldiers (<i>come</i>) | e in the 1920s. |
| 6 He (<i>walk</i>) | f and they (<i>get</i>) married. |
| 7 It (<i>take</i>) him | g when Tessa (<i>be</i>) about ten. |
| 8 When the war (<i>end</i>) | h in 1939. |
| 9 He (<i>meet</i>) her great-grandmother | i from Poland to Egypt. |

3 What do you know about your grandparents', or great-grandparents' lives?

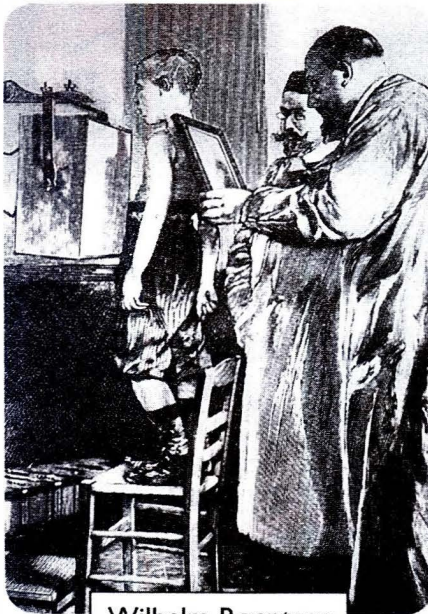
Tell your partner:

- their names.
- where they were originally from.
- when they were born.
- when and where they met/ got married.
- any other interesting information.

b) [7.5] Now listen and check your answers.



Elvis Presley



Wilhelm Roentgen



Mozart as a child

Vocabulary

Past time phrases

1 a) [7.6] Listen and say these years.

1995	1933	1968	1914	1905
1848	1779	1333	1709	2002

b) Write down five more years. Your partner says them.

2 Complete the sentences with a time phrase from the box.

in the 1950s	in the sixteenth century	when he was eight
in 1895	about 30 years ago	

- The German scientist Wilhelm Röntgen discovered X-rays ~~in 1895~~.
- The Austrian composer Wolfgang Amadeus Mozart wrote his first symphony
- Rock 'n' roll first became popular
- The Sony electronics company made the first videocassette recorder
- William Shakespeare wrote *Romeo and Juliet*

3 a) Put the verbs in the past tense, then use a time phrase to complete the sentences.

- My mother (be) born in
- My father (be) born in
- I (go) to elementary school from to
- I (learn) to walk when
- I (start) learning English ago.
- My last vacation (be) ago.
- My great-grandparents (be) born
- I (have) breakfast ago.
- I first (meet) my English teacher ago.
- I (move) to my present address in

b) Compare your answers in pairs.

► Language summary C page 145.

Tell a life story

Preparation for task

1 Marlene is a singer. She comes from Swansea, a town in Wales. What can you see in each picture?

2 [7.7] Listen to Marlene talking about the pictures. Which picture does she describe in each extract?

Extract A = picture

Extract B = picture

Extract C = picture

Extract D = picture

Extract E = picture

Extract F = picture

Useful language

"I was born in (1981)."

"I went to school in (Athens)."

"As a child I liked/loved (playing tennis)."

"When I was (thirteen) I became interested in (photography)."

"I left school when I was (sixteen)."

"I studied Mathematics at college."

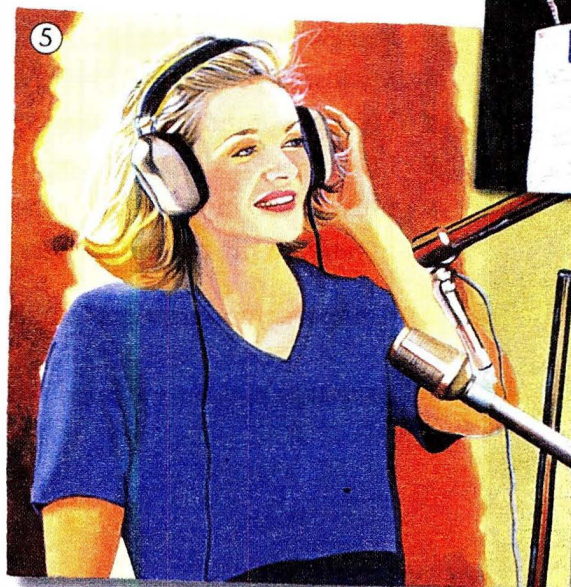
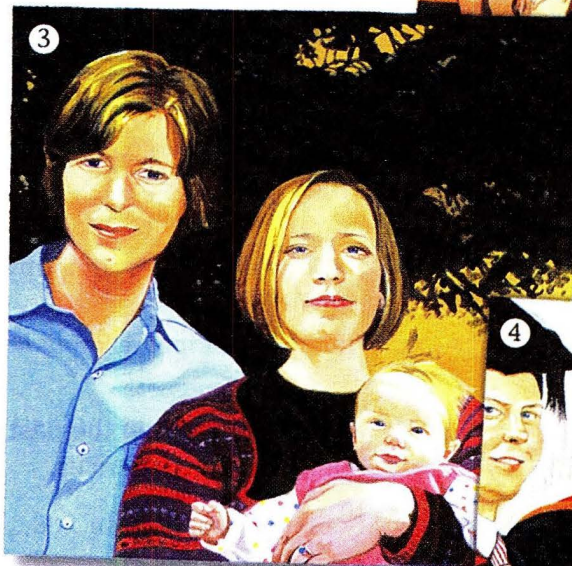
"I graduated in (1999)."

"I got a job with (a large company)."

"I went to live/work in (Paris)."

"I got married in (1985)."

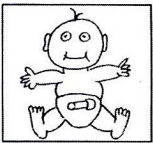
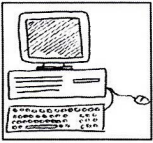
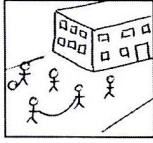



"In (1988) I started work as (a doctor)."





Task

1 Draw six simple pictures for different times in your life. Think about what to say for each picture.


2 Talk to a partner about your pictures.

► **Useful language.**

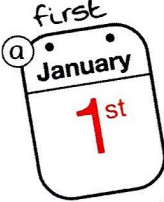



3 Choose three interesting things to tell the class about your partner.

Real life

Ordinal numbers, dates, and years

1  [7.8] Match the dates a–g with the ordinal numbers in the box. Listen and practice saying the dates.

third twelfth ~~first~~ thirtieth second twentieth fifth

a 	b 	c 	d 
e 	f 	g 	

► **Language summary D page 145.**

2  [7.9] **Circle** the numbers you hear.

- | | | | | | |
|--------|------------|--------|------|--------|------|
| a 1 | <u>1st</u> | e 13 | 30th | i 1798 | 1789 |
| b 2 | 2nd | f 11 | 11th | j 1918 | 1980 |
| c 24 | 24th | g 23 | 23rd | k 1990 | 1999 |
| d 20th | 21st | h 1500 | 1600 | | |

3 Practice saying other dates and numbers that you **didn't** hear.

4 a) What do you know about George Washington and Christopher Columbus?

b) Work in pairs to find information about Washington and Columbus. **Student A** looks at page 136. **Student B** looks at page 139. Complete the missing information.



George Washington



Christopher Columbus

Do you remember?

1 Complete the gaps with *was*, *wasn't*, *were*, or *weren't*.

In Module 1,

- a) there ~~were~~... two Japanese people.
- b) there a student card. It James Burden's.
- c) there some pictures of sportsmen and women.

In Module 2,

- d) there some water.
- e) there any dogs.

In Module 3,

- f) there some Coke.
- g) there a postcard of a shopping center.
- h) the time in London three o'clock.

In Module 4,

- i) there any Spanish food.
- j) there a spider.

In Module 5,

- k) there four different ways to go to Heathrow airport.
- l) there some pictures of women.

In Module 6,

- m) there any pasta.
- n) there some jokes.

2 Write the missing letters to make the present and past forms of the verbs.

PRESENT

c o m e

m a _ e

w r _ t e

b e c _ m e

k n _ w

g _ t

m _ _ t

t _ k _

PAST

c a m e

m a _ e

w r _ t e

b e c _ m e

k n _ w

g _ t

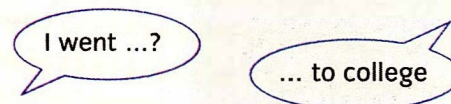
m _ t

t _ _ k

3 a) Match the two parts of the sentences.

- | | |
|------------------------|--------------------|
| 1) I went | a) with a law firm |
| 2) I left | b) computers |
| 3) I worked with | c) three children |
| 4) I became interested | d) school |
| 5) I got | e) in languages |
| 6) I got a job | f) married |
| 7) I had | g) to college |

b) Now test your partner.



4 Put a word from the box in the correct place in the sentences.

from in ago ~~when~~ in was ago in

- a) I went to Turkey ^{when} I was seventeen.
- b) The artist Leonardo da Vinci lived the fifteenth century.
- c) The lesson finished half an hour.
- d) My uncle started riding a motorcycle when he thirteen.
- e) *The Simpsons* was a popular TV show the 1990s.
- f) Chris first met Sally about two months.
- g) Angela worked as an engineer 1992 to 1998.
- h) Vladimir Putin became president of Russia 2000.


module 8

Fact or fiction?

- ▶ Past Simple: negative
 - ▶ Past Simple: questions
 - ▶ Vocabulary: common verbs in the Past Simple
- Task: invent a do-it-yourself story

Vocabulary


Common verbs in the Past Simple

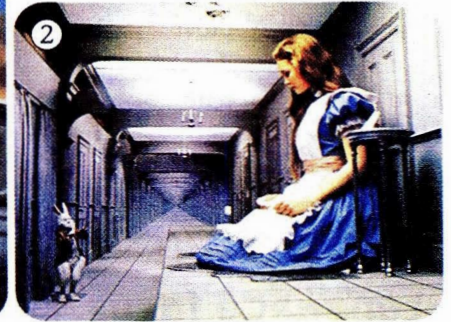
1  Check the meaning of verbs a–m and write the past tense.

- a buy ..bought.....
- b drink
- c drive
- d eat
- e fall
- f find
- g give
- h read
- i see
- j sleep
- k wake up
- l wear
- m write

2 a) Match sentences a–f with pictures 1–6.

Complete the blanks with a verb from Exercise 1 in the Past Simple.


- a A man and two children  slept in a tree and when they they some dinosaurs.



- b Two young women a car for \$100 and across the United States from east to west.
- c A little girl a bottle with the words "DRINK ME": she it and suddenly she was three meters tall!
- d An old woman an apple to a young woman: she it and asleep for a long time.
- e After her husband died, the Queen always black.
- f A girl a diary that people after she died.

b) Do you know which movies the pictures come from?

Pronunciation

1  [8.1] Look at the past forms of the verbs, and listen to the pronunciation. Is the sound underlined the same (S) or different (D)?

- a wore bought D
- b woke up drove
- c gave drunk
- d fell read
- e slept ate


2 Listen again and practice saying the verbs.

Language focus 1

Past Simple: negative

1 a) Look at the pictures. What do you know about the famous fictional characters?

b)  Read the information about the three characters in the pictures. Underline the information that **isn't** true.

2 a)  [8.2] Listen to the correct answers.

b)  [8.3] Listen and complete the gaps.

- 1 Robin Hood ~~didn't~~ gave his money to Maid Marian. He it to poor people.
- 2 Dracula in a castle in Brazil. He in Transylvania.

Grammar

Past Simple: negative

We make the negative form with:

didn't + verb

*He **didn't** live in Brazil.*

(didn't = did not)

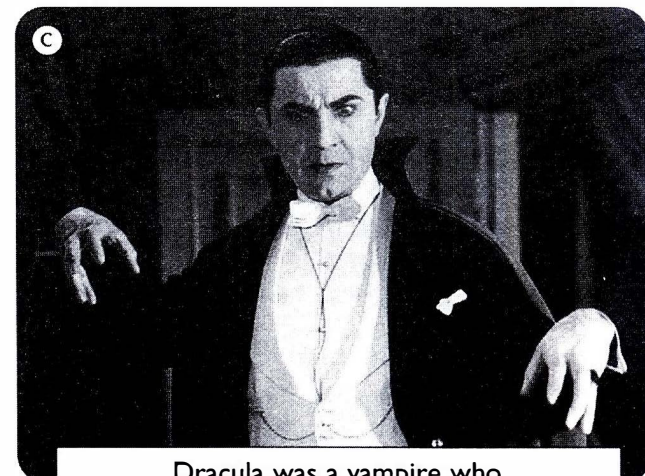
► **Language summary A page 145.**



Tarzan lived in the African jungle. He rode a motorcycle. One day he met Jane, a beautiful girl, and they fell in love.



Robin Hood lived in a forest in England. He and his friends always wore green clothes. He took money from rich people, and gave it to his girlfriend, Maid Marian.



Dracula was a vampire who lived in a castle in Brazil. He always slept during the day, but at night he became a bat and drank human blood.

Practice

1 a) **MD** The picture is a scene from the story of *Romeo and Juliet*, which takes place in Italy about 500 years ago. There are **eight** mistakes in the picture. Can you find them?

b) Make sentences using these verbs.

wear ride use have eat read

People didn't wear roller blades 500 years ago.

irLanguage.com



2 a) Put the verb in the correct form to make the sentence true for you. Compare your answers with a partner.

- a I (*go*) shopping last weekend.
I went shopping last weekend.
I didn't go shopping last weekend.
- b I (*have*) a cup of coffee before this lesson.
- c I (*come*) to school by bus today.
- d I (*read*) in bed last night.
- e I (*have*) breakfast this morning.
- f I (*go*) out last Saturday night.
- g I (*have*) fish for dinner last night.
- h I (*sleep*) well last night.

b) Compare your answers with a partner.

I didn't have a cup of coffee before the lesson.

I had a cup of coffee, and some chocolate!

I came to school by bus today.

Me, too!

Language focus 2

Past Simple: questions

- 1 a) Find these things in the four pictures:
a *dragon*, a *prince*, and a *cave*.
- b) [8.4] Maggie is a tour guide. She's describing a legend to some tourists. Listen to her story and put the pictures in order 1–4.
- 2 Listen again. Write down the little boy's questions next to Maggie's answers.
- a ? No, he didn't. He lived in a cave.
- b ? No, he didn't. Only girls.
- c ? Er ... I don't know.
- d ? Yes, he did.

Grammar

Past Simple: questions

[8.5] Complete the blanks.

..... the dragon in this house?

No, he in a cave.

..... the dragon boys?

We make the question form with:

did + subject + verb

Notice the short answers:

Yes, he *did*.

No, he *didn't*.

► Language summaries B and C pages 145–146.



Practice

1 **a)** Remember when you were ten years old. Put a check (✓) next to the things you **did** and a cross (✗) next to the things you **didn't do**.

- a play soccer
- b go abroad for your vacations
- c wear jeans
- d go out every Saturday night
- e watch TV in your room
- f ride a bicycle
- g play computer games
- h have a cellphone
- i read the newspaper
- j drink coffee

b) Ask your partner about these things.

When you were ten years old ... did you play soccer?

Yes, I did.

I don't remember.

c) Tell the class about you and your partner.

Both of us rode a bicycle.

2 Anna is asking Helena about her weekend. Complete questions 1–7 and match them with answers a–g.

- 1 Where did you go?
- 2 Who/go with?
- 3 How/get there?
- 4 Why/go there?
- 5 What/think of it?
- 6 What/do there?
- 7 When/come back?

- a We went to the old town and went to a club in the evening.
- b By plane.
- c We went to Prague.
- d Early this morning!
- e It was fantastic!
- f Because someone told us about it.
- g With my friend.

3 Ask your partner questions 1–7 about where he/she went:

- a last weekend.
- b last month.
- c last year.
- d when he/she was young.

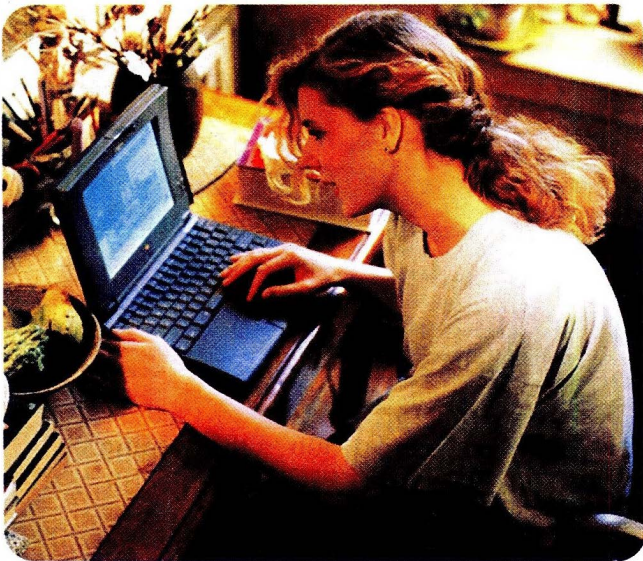
4 Now write sentences about your partner.

Alain went to Madrid last month for a vacation.
He went with his family.
He went there by car.
They went because they like cities.
They visited the old town and went to a concert.
They came back three weeks ago.
They loved Madrid!



Listening

Interview with a writer of a very short story



1 [8.6] Tina Ross won a competition to write a sixty-word story for *Bellissima* magazine. Listen to an interview with Tina and write her answers to questions a–f.

- a What's the title of your very short story?
- b How long did it take you to write it?
- c Who are your favorite writers?
- d Where did you get the idea for the story?
- e What's the story about?
- f Did you expect to win the competition?

2 a) Here is Tina's short story. Put the sentences in the right order.

- On the last day, Charlie died.
- The next day he won ten million pounds.
- The government took all his money, but everyone in the street always remembered the incredible street party.
- Charlie bought a lottery ticket with a one-pound coin: his last.
- Charlie gave a party for his neighbors – it lasted two weeks.
- But they couldn't remember who gave it.

b) [8.7] Listen and check the order. Do you like the story?

Invent a do-it-yourself story

Preparation for task

Match a word or phrase from the box to one of the pictures on the right. (There is more than one possible answer.)

"I've got a problem."	a beautiful day
"Hello?"	looked out of the window
telephone rang	got in his car and drove to ...
Suddenly, René saw	looked at his watch
had breakfast	woke up

Task

1 Use the pictures to invent a story. Complete the blanks!

René woke up as usual at (a) (When?) He looked out of the window. It was another beautiful day in (b) (Where?) He went downstairs and had his usual breakfast: (c) and (What?) Before he finished his meal, the phone rang. He answered it. "Hello?" Silence. Then ... "René?" A woman's voice: he knew it immediately. It was (d) (Who?) "Yes," he answered. "Thank goodness it's you, René. I have a problem, and I need your help. Meet me in one hour." René left the apartment, got in his car, and drove to (e) (Where?) He arrived at (f) (What time?). She wasn't there. René looked at his watch. Suddenly René saw (g) (Who?) There was one important question in René's mind: (h) ".....?" he asked. (i) ".....," he/she answered. (What did René do next?) (j) (How did the story end?) (k)

2 a) Work in pairs. Ask questions to find out about your partner's story.

► **Useful language a) and b)**

b) How many differences are there between the two stories? Make a list.

In my story, René lived in New York, but in Joan's story he lived in Paris.

3 [8.8] Listen to the original story.

①



②



③



④



⑤



⑥



Useful language

a Asking questions

"When did she arrive?"

"Where did he go?"

"What did he do?"

"Why was he late?"

"What time did he arrive?"

"Who did he see?"

"How did the story end?"

b Talking about differences

"In my story, René didn't ..."

"In my partner's story, ..."

⑦



⑧



Real life: writing

Keep a diary in English

Martina is learning English. To practice, she writes a diary in English every day.



- 1 What do you think Martina writes in her English diary? Read and check.

Monday 23rd June

This morning I had an Economics exam - it wasn't very difficult. After the exam I met Alex in the park. We had coffee in the Metro Bar. I came home and studied for my exam tomorrow - French!!!

Tuesday 24th June

The French exam was horrible! I didn't finish and I felt very unhappy. I met Alex again and he walked home with me. We talked about our exams. He's really nice! He asked me to go to the movies with him tomorrow night. Yes!!!

Wednesday 25th June

Alex and I went to see the new Brad Pitt film. I thought it was OK, but not fantastic - Alex thought it was lousy! After the film we went to a club and had a fantastic time dancing... etc!!! Alex brought me home at about 1:30, but it was awful because Mom and Dad were...

- 2 Check these words then answer the questions.

an exam horri be awful lousy

- How old is Martina, do you think?
- What's her job?
- Were Monday, Tuesday, and Wednesday good or bad days for her? Why?
- What was the end of the last sentence, do you think?

- 3 Write a diary in English for a week. If you can, buy a special notebook. After a week tell the other students about it.

Do you remember?

- 1 Match a verb with a word or phrase.

1 go	a late
2 wear	b a competition
3 give a present	c a horse
4 wake up	d to a friend
5 fall	e abroad
6 win	f a diary
7 ride	g glasses
8 read	h asleep

- 2 Find the past form of the verb and then write the base form.

swa	sw	see	left	.....	.....
vedro	.....	.....	grobuth	.....	.....
stelp	.....	.....	pu weko	.....	.....
tens	.....	.....	erow	.....	.....
woter	.....	.....	tae	.....	.....
nufod	.....	.....	aveg	.....	.....

- 3 Check (✓) the three correct sentences and correct the mistakes in the other four.

- How much sugar did you buy? ✓
- Did you find your money?
- She didn't lived in Ireland.
- Did they went to Russia?
- Steve didn't like the movie.
- Did you slept well?
- I didn't had breakfast this morning.

- 4 Write questions about the underlined information.

..... I went to (a) New Zealand last month (b) with Jeff. We went there (c) because we wanted to visit my sister - she lives in Christchurch. We went (d) by plane from Sydney to Wellington and then we drove down to Christchurch. We had a really fantastic time! (e) We visited the mountains, we went horseback-riding, and did lots of shopping! It was my first visit to New Zealand and (f) I loved it! We came back to Australia (g) two days ago ...

- Where did you go?
- Who

module 9

Buying and selling

- ▶ Comparative adjectives
- ▶ Superlative adjectives
- ▶ Vocabulary: stores and shopping

Task: choose souvenirs from your country

Language focus 1

Comparative adjectives

1 **MD** a) What do you know about cars? Think of:

- a **fast** car a Ferrari
- an **expensive** car
- a **small** car
- a very **comfortable** car
- a very **ugly** car
- an **old** car
- an **easy** car to park

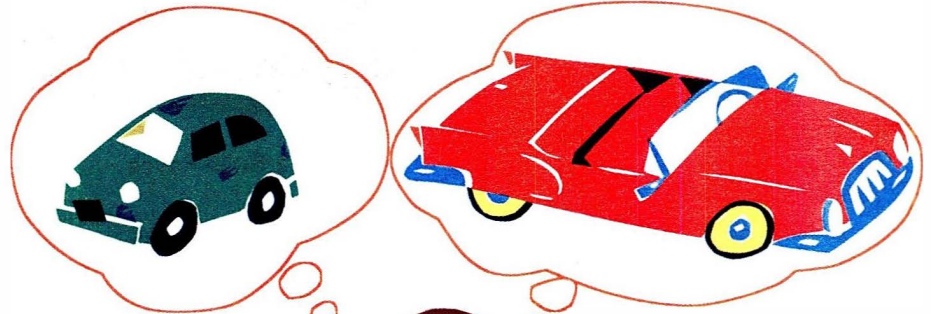
b) Look at the adjectives in **bold**. Match them with their opposites in the box.

fast - slow

cheap uncomfortable
difficult new slow
attractive big

2 Read about Juliana.

- a) What does Juliana want to buy? Why?
- b) How much does she want to spend?



FOR SALE
Green 1989 Magellen Micro
£325
Phone 543 8799

FOR SALE
1985 Victa Deluxe - red,
very good condition
£650
Phone 566 4635
evenings only

Juliana is a student. She wants to buy an old car to drive to college with her four friends. She wants to spend about £500, but she doesn't know much about cars. She sees these two advertisements.

3 a) Look at the advertisements and the pictures. Which of the two cars is: older? bigger? more expensive?

b) Look at the pictures. Which of these sentences do you think are true? Correct the sentences you think are wrong.

- 1 The Deluxe is faster than the Micro.
- 2 The Micro is more comfortable than the Deluxe.
- 3 The Deluxe is easier to park than the Micro.
- 4 The Micro is more expensive to run than the Deluxe.
- 5 The Micro is better for Juliana than the Deluxe.

I think the Deluxe is slower than the Micro.

Grammar

1 Complete the comparative sentences:

- a *The Micro is smaller* *the Deluxe.*
 b *The Deluxe is* *expensive* *the Micro.*

2 Look at these three types of comparative adjectives.

- a One syllable: *old* → *older*
 b Two syllables ending in -y: *easy* → *easier*
 c Three (+) syllables: *expensive* → *more expensive*

Put the adjectives from Exercise 1 on page 73 in groups: a, b, or c.

3 Irregular comparatives: *good* → *better*, *bad* → *worse*

► **Language summary A** page 146.

2 a) Look at these popular products and check the meaning of the adjectives.

①



a Rolls-Royce



a Ferrari

fast expensive nice

②



a Vespa



a Harley-Davidson

slow easy to drive beautiful

③



a Swatch



a Rolex

cheap attractive good for children

④



Coke



mineral water

sweet healthy delicious

Practice

1 Compare the cars on page 73.

- a The Micro is (*slow*) the Deluxe.
The Micro is slower than the Deluxe.
 b The Micro is (*cheap*) the Deluxe.
 c The Deluxe is (*difficult to park*) the Micro.
 d The Deluxe is (*big*) the Micro.
 e The Deluxe is (*in good condition*) the Micro.
 f The Micro is (*in bad condition*) the Deluxe.

b) Work in pairs. Use the adjectives to compare the products.

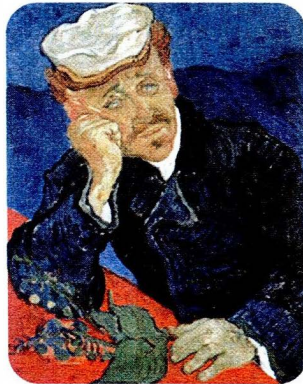
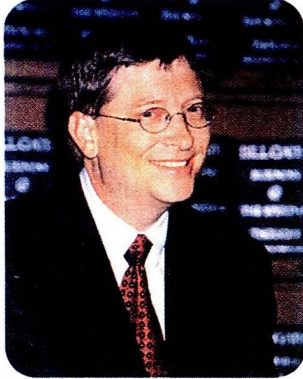
A Rolls-Royce is faster than a Ferrari.

No, it isn't!

Language focus 2

Superlative adjectives

a) Why are these people famous?



b) Now read about the people and check your ideas.

Bill Gates – head of Microsoft – is the world's richest man: he is richer than the Sultan of Brunei and the Queen of England!

The King of Thailand owns the biggest diamond in the world. It is called *The Golden Jubilee* and weighs 2.6 kg.

This picture – *The Portrait of Dr. Gachet* by Vincent van Gogh – is the most expensive painting in the world: a Japanese buyer bought it for \$75,000,000 in 1990.

The most popular song of the twentieth century was perhaps "*Candle in the Wind*" by the British singer Elton John – it sold more than thirty-five million copies.

Grammar

1 Complete the superlative sentences:

- a *Bill Gates is richest man in the world.*
 b *This is expensive painting in the world.*

2 Use the text to complete the table.

adjective	comparative	superlative
rich	richer	the
big	bigger	the
easy	easier	the easiest
popular	more popular	the
good	better	the best

► *Language summary A page 146.*

Practice

a) Complete the sentences with a superlative adjective. Then choose the correct answer.

QUIZ

- Where is (*busy*) department store in the world?
 a Harrods, in London b Macy's in New York
 c El Corte Inglés, in Madrid
- Where is (*expensive*) city in the world to buy a house or apartment?
 a Tokyo, in Japan b Los Angeles, in the US
 c Vienna, in Austria
- Where is (*tall*) hotel in the world?
 a Sydney, in Australia b Seoul, in Korea
 c Bangkok, in Thailand
- What was (*successful*) movie of the 1990s?
 a *Star Wars: The Phantom Menace*
 b *Jurassic Park* c *Titanic*
- Where is the (*old*) university in the world?
 a Bologna b Karueein, in Morocco c Oxford
- What is (*common*) word in the English language?
 a *to* b *a* c *the*

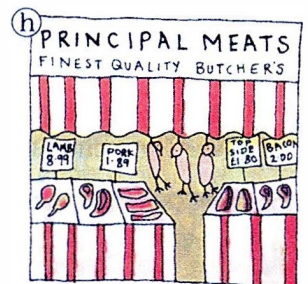
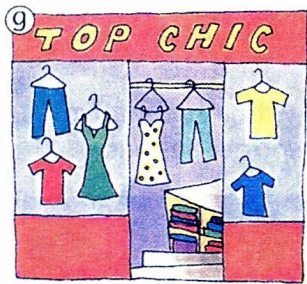
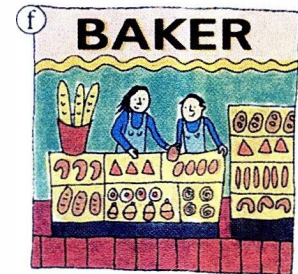
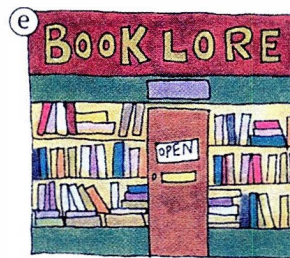
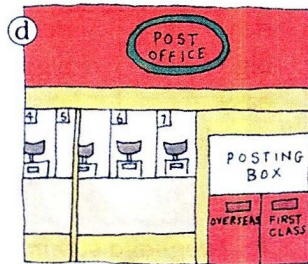
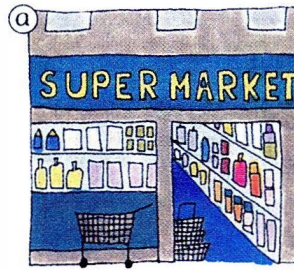
b) [9.1] Now listen and check your answers.

Vocabulary

Stores and shopping

1 Match the pictures to one of the stores in the box.

- | | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| a clothes store | a supermarket | a newsdealer's |
| a street market | a drugstore | a butcher's |
| a bookstore | a grocery store | a baker's |
| | a post office | |



2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer questions about stores a-j.

b) Make a list of two other things you can buy in each store.

Where is the nearest bookstore?

It's on King Street.

3 a) Where do people normally buy these things in your country?

- | | | | |
|-------------|----------|-----------------|---------|
| a newspaper | potatoes | a dictionary | fruit |
| toothpaste | bread | a pair of jeans | aspirin |
| cigarettes | cakes | flowers | stamps |

You can buy a newspaper from a newsdealer's, and sometimes from a bookstore.

Reading and writing

1 a) MD Check the meaning of the words in the box.

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------------|--------|---------|
| jewelry | a carpet | a bird | an herb |
| tropical fruit | natural medicine | | |

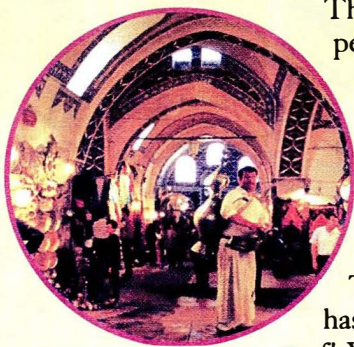
b) Look at the pictures of different markets opposite. Which of them do you think is:

- the most exciting?
- the most lively?
- the most similar to markets in your country?
- the most colorful?
- the oldest?
- the most unusual?

Street Markets around the World

Do you want to buy a new pair of sunglasses? The latest CD? Or something for your dinner this evening? Nowadays, you can shop by telephone, by post, or through your home computer: but for many people, the most exciting way to shop is also the most traditional – at a street market. You can find markets anywhere in the world – here are five of them ...

Every weekend, thousands of young people from all over London travel to Camden Market in an attractive area in the north of the city – it's the place to go for street fashion, jewelry, CDs, and tapes ... but many people just go for the lively atmosphere!

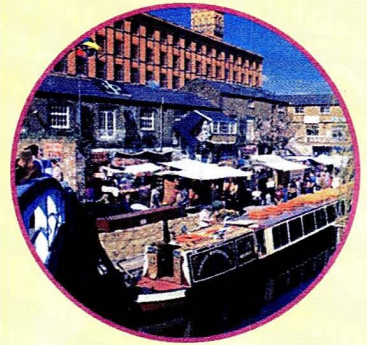


There are many "floating markets" in Asia; perhaps the most famous is in Thailand, at a place called Damnoen Saduak, 100km from the capital city, Bangkok. From six in the morning to midday, every day, people sell fresh tropical fruit and vegetables from their boats.

The Grand Bazaar in Istanbul, Turkey, is more than 500 years old and it has more than four thousand shops under one roof! You can buy almost anything, but the most popular items for tourists are the beautiful rugs and carpets. It's open all day every day!

Many Belgians say that La Grande Place – in the center of the capital city, Brussels – is the most beautiful square in the world. It is the home of a colorful flower market – open every day except Monday. On Monday, instead of flowers, there's a wonderful bird market!

One of the world's most unusual markets is in Mexico City: at the Sonora Market. As well as toys and birds, you can buy herbs and natural medicines which (they say) can help with anything – from problems at work to problems with your marriage! It's open every day from early in the morning till late at night.



2 Read the text about five different markets around the world.

- What are the names of the five markets?
- Where are the markets?
- What can you buy at each different market?
- When is each market open?

3 Write a short paragraph about a market you know.

The market is called ... It's in ...
It's open from ...
It sells a lot of ... and ...
I often go there
I like it because ...



Useful language

a Giving your ideas

"I think (a doll) is a good souvenir.
What do you think?"

"We can buy (a CD/some pasta).
I agree."

b Discussing

"I think a (CD) is better.
I don't think so."

"I think the best thing to buy is a book.
Yes, but ..."

c Saying what you decided

"For (Helen), we recommend (a CD)."

"The best souvenir for (Tom) is a (doll)."

"The best (pasta) comes from (Italy), so we decided to give (Jane) some (pasta)."

"My country is famous for (pasta)."

Choose souvenirs from your country

Preparation for task

1 a) Match the words in the box with the pictures.

tartan scarf CD pasta doll wine book

b) Which country do you think these souvenirs come from?

2 [9.2] Listen to some people talking about one of the souvenirs in the picture. Complete the sentences below.

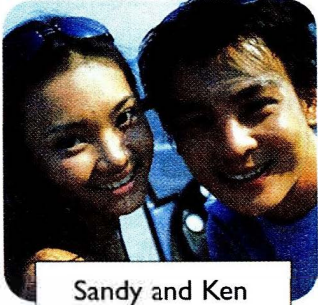
CARLA: The (a) food in the world comes from Italy – so it's a good idea to buy some (b)

HELENA: My country is very (c) for music – especially samba music. I think a CD of typical samba music from Brazil is a very good (d)

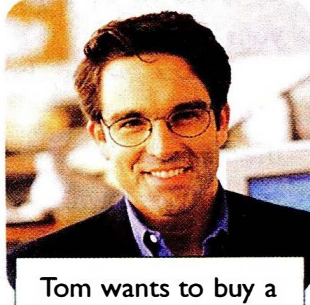
GREG: If you like (e), you can buy a book by a Polish writer, her name is Wisława Szymborska.

GUY: A good thing (f) is a bottle of wine, French wine (g) all around the world ... and the best wine comes from Bordeaux, in southwest France ...

3 Read the details about the people below.



Sandy and Ken want to buy some typical souvenirs from your country to take back home.



Tom wants to buy a souvenir for his two children (a boy aged five and a girl aged eight) and something for his wife – she likes clothes.



Jane is very interested in food and drink. She wants to buy some typical food and drink to take home with her.



Helen loves music and reading ... she especially likes folk music and literature.

Task

1 Work individually. Write down a souvenir from your town or country for three of the people.

- Mark and Ellen
- Tom
- Jane
- Helen

2 Work in groups of three or four. Decide the best souvenir for each of the people in the pictures.

► See Useful language a) and b)

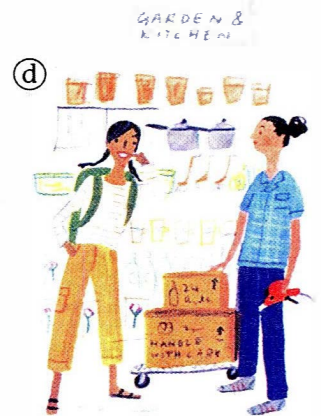
3 Tell the rest of the group what you decided. How many people chose the same things as souvenirs?

► See Useful language c)

Real life

Asking in stores

1 a) Look at pictures a–f. What kind of stores are they?



b) [9.3] Listen to six short conversations. Which conversation goes with each picture?

Recording 1 = picture d

2 a) Match questions 1–6 with answers a–f.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 Do you sell toothpaste? | a This one? |
| 2 Do you accept credit cards? | b It's \$25. |
| 3 Do you have this in a smaller size? | c At eight o'clock. |
| 4 How much is this? | d Let me check for you. |
| 5 What time do you close? | e Yes, Visa or Mastercard. |
| 6 Can I have one of those, please? | f No, we don't. Try the drugstore. |

b) [9.3] Listen again and check your answers.

3 a) Peter is on vacation. Look at his shopping list.

postcards for home ✓
baseball cap
stamps
fruit
batteries for camera
bread and cake
sunglasses
toothpaste

b) [9.4] Listen to Peter's conversations in different stores. Check (✓) the things he bought.

c) Look at the tapescripts on page 156 and practice the conversations.

4 Practice two conversations between a customer and sales clerk in a general store.

Student A: Look at page 136.

Student B: Look at page 137.

Do you remember?

1 a) Write three adjectives to describe:

- a your teacher.
tall, nice, easy to understand
- b your classroom.
- c the school.
- d your city or town.
- e your favorite sport.

b) Read out your adjectives and guess the subject.

2 a) Complete the gaps with the comparative or superlative form.

- 1 Who's ~~taller~~... (tall), you or your teacher?
- 2 What's (expensive) thing you have in your house?
- 3 Which is (good) – watching a video at home or going to the movies?
- 4 What is/was (difficult) subject at school for you?
- 5 Which is..... (easy) for you – speaking or understanding English?
- 6 What's (comfortable) – traveling by car, by train, or by plane?
- 7 Which is (nice) – a day in the city or a day in the country?

b) Work with a partner and ask and answer questions 1–7.

3 Write three adjectives under each stress pattern.

• • • • • • • •
difficult friendly expensive

popular modern fantastic common
interesting successful attractive

module 10

Street life

► **Vocabulary:** describing people;
clothes

► **Present Continuous**

► **Present Simple and Present
Continuous**

Task: describe and draw a picture

Vocabulary 1

Describing people

1 a) Work in pairs. Look
at the pictures of four
people in the street. Who:

- 1 has a mustache?
Paolo and Mike
- 2 has a beard?
- 3 is black?
- 4 has a ponytail?
- 5 is in her thirties?
- 6 is very tall and slim?
- 7 has blue eyes?
- 8 has short hair?
- 9 has long hair?
- 10 is very good-looking?
- 11 wears glasses?
- 12 wears an earring?
- 13 has a shaved head?
- 14 has medium-length hair?
- 15 has blonde hair?
- 16 has dark hair?

b) Use the sentences above to
describe the people in the
pictures.



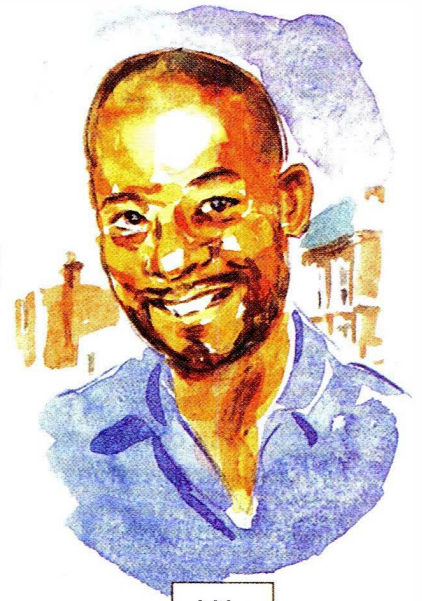
Kamilla



Paolo



Sheena



Mike

2 a) Choose someone in your class. Write **five** sentences about
him or her, like this:

She has long hair.

She's in her twenties.

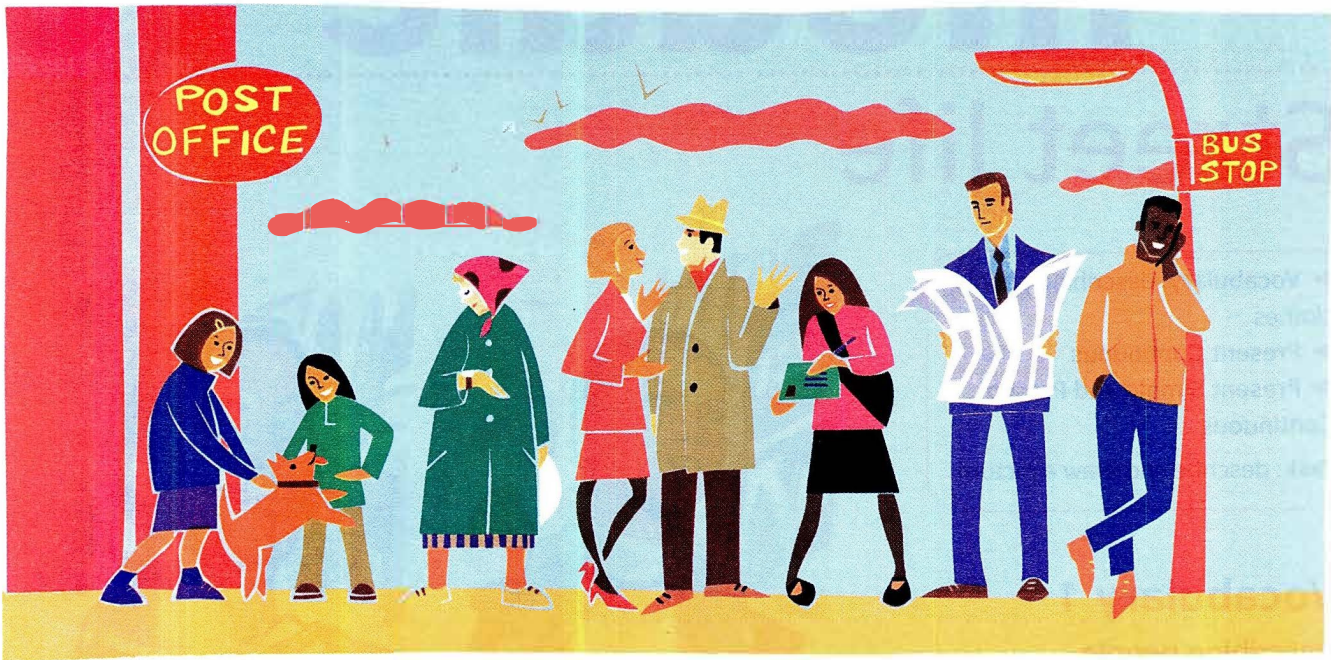
She's tall.

She has blue eyes.

She doesn't wear glasses.

WHO IS SHE?

b) Give your sentences to another pair. Can they guess who it is?



Language focus 1

Present Continuous

1 a) Jane phones Dan. Put their conversation in the correct order.

- DAN: I'm waiting for a bus. How are you?
- JANE: Hello Dan, where are you?
- JANE: I'm fine.
- DAN: I'm on King Street – just outside the Post Office.
- JANE: What are you doing?
- DAN: Hello.

b) [10.1] Listen and check your answers.

2 What are the other people in the picture doing? Make questions and answers.

- a What's the man doing?
He's reading a newspaper.
- b What are the young couple?
They're
- c What'.... the young girl?
She's an envelope.
- d What's the?
.....'s at her watch.
- e the children.....?
..... with their dog.

Grammar

1 We use the Present Continuous for actions happening **now** or **around now**.

I'm waiting for a bus. What are you doing?

2 Complete the gaps.

I'm
he/she/it' | waiting for a bus.
you/we/they'

I'm **not**
he/she/it **isn't** | waiting for a bus.
you/we/they **aren't**

What | am I | doing?
| he/she/it |
| you/we/they |

► Language summary A, B, and C pages 146 and 147.

Practice

1 Use your *Minidictionary* to find the *...ing* forms of these verbs.

- a eat eating d drink g study
b live living e give h come
c stop stopping f swim i run



Popp is a mime artist

2 What is Popp doing in each of the pictures below? Work with a partner. Choose your answers from the ideas in the box.

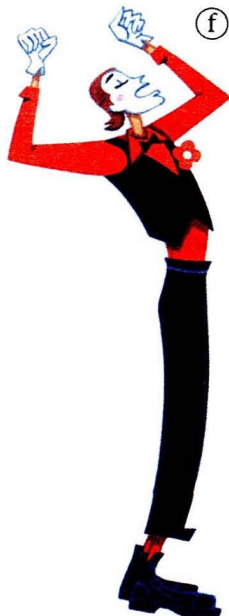
- | | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|-------|--------|-----------|------|
| eat | read | run | get up | go to bed | sing |
| ride a bike | drink tea | dance | swim | | |

In picture g) I think he's reading a book.

3 Work in groups. Imagine you are a mime artist. Mime an action to your group. The other students guess what you are doing.



Are you waiting for a bus?

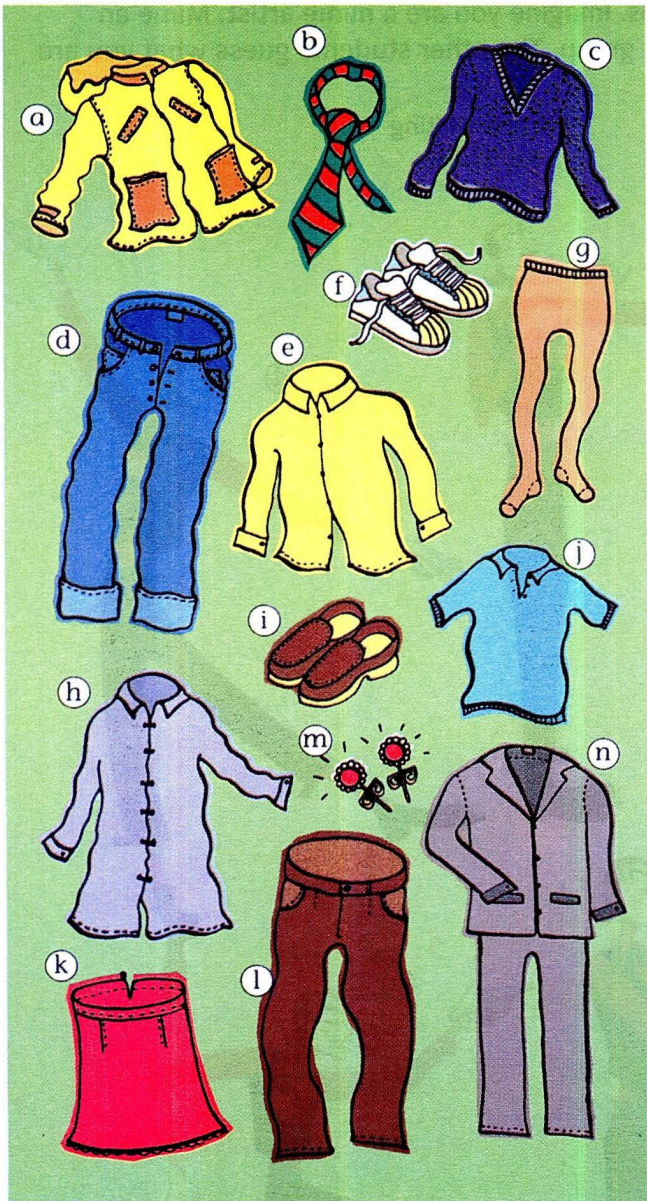


Vocabulary 2

Clothes

1 Match the words in the box with pictures a-n.

- | | | | | |
|-------|----------|-----------|----------|-------|
| shoes | shirt | pantyhose | pullover | |
| top | sneakers | jeans | earrings | tie |
| suit | skirt | jacket | coat | pants |



2 Who usually wears these clothes – men, women, or both?

pantyhose - women

3 a) Work with a partner. Complete the questions about people in your class.

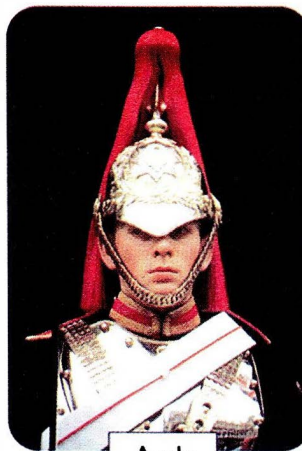
- 1 Who is wearing black jeans?
- 2 Who is wearing
- 3 How many people are wearing
- 4 What color are’s shoes?
- 5 What color is’s
- 6 Is wearing earrings?
- 7 Is wearing

b) Work with a new partner. Ask and answer the questions. Don't look!

Who is wearing black jeans?

Irena!

Listening



1 The people in the pictures wear a uniform in their jobs. What are their jobs?

2 [10.2] Listen to Andy and Michelle talking about their uniforms and answer the questions.

- a Which clothes do they talk about?
- b What adjectives do they use to describe their uniforms?
- c Do they like their uniforms?

3 Do you wear a uniform at school or at work? Which uniforms in your country do you like?

Language focus 2

Present Simple and Present Continuous



مرجع زبان ایرانیان

It's Friday night and Michelle is getting ready to go out. At work, Michelle wears dark colors and very little makeup, so when she goes out she wears bright colors. This evening she's wearing a new pink top, a blue skirt, and quite a lot of makeup!

a) In what ways does Michelle look different from the photo on page 84?

b)  Read about Michelle and answer the questions.

- What's Michelle doing at the moment?
- What's she wearing?
- What kind of colors does she wear at work?
- What colors does she wear to go out?
- Does she wear a lot of makeup at work?
- Is she wearing makeup tonight?

Grammar

1 Circle the correct answers.

Present Simple:

She wears dark colors at work.

This is usually true/happening now.

Present Continuous:

She's wearing a pink dress tonight

This is usually true/happening now.

2a Words we use with the Present Simple:
usually always often normally every day

b Words we use with the Present Continuous:

now today at the moment

► **Language summary C page 146.**

Practice

Choose the best verb form, Present Simple or Present Continuous.



“Right now I
(a) (go) for a jog in the park, that's why I (b) (wear) shorts. I (c) (not wear) shorts usually.... I (d) (hate) shorts, and most of all... I (e) (hate) my legs!”

“It's fantastic! It's only March and it's really, really hot – the sun (f) (shine) and people (g) (wear) T-shirts! I (h) (have) coffee outside, it's incredible! Normally in this city it (i) (rain) all the time in March – and sometimes it (j) (snow), but today's beautiful!”






Describe and draw a picture

Preparation for task

1 Look at Picture A and answer the questions.

- a Is it morning or evening?
- b What's the weather like?
- c What's the newsstand vendor doing?

- d What's the dog doing? What color is it?
- e What's the girl wearing? What's she doing? What does she have in her right hand?
- f What's the young man wearing?
- g Describe the two people in the bar.

2  [10.3] Listen to someone describing Picture A and find four mistakes.



Task

1 a) Look at page 137. You will see the same street in the evening.

b) MD Complete the picture on page 137: add **ten** new things to the picture. Do not look at your partner's picture!

2 a) Work in pairs, A and B. Ask questions about your partner's picture. Use the information to complete Picture B on page 86.

► Useful language

b) Were your pictures similar or different?

Useful language

Finding out about your partner's picture

"Tell me about the weather in your picture."

"What's the woman on the right doing?"

"What's the man wearing/holding?"

"Is he smiling?"

"What are they eating?"

"Does he have long hair?"

Describing the picture

"The sun's shining."

"It's raining."

"She's sitting down."

"He has long hair."

Real life

Street talk

1 Check (✓) the correct thing to say in each situation, A, B, or C. You're in the street and ...

a You don't know the time. How do you ask?

- A Excuse me, do you have the time, please? ✓
- B Please, what time is it, sir?
- c Tell me the time, please.

1 ANSWER:
Yes, it's ten o'clock.

b You're looking for an extra seat in a coffee shop. What do you say?

- A I'd like to sit here, please.
- B Is this seat free?
- c Can you move, please?

2 ANSWER:

c You want to catch a bus downtown, but does this bus go there?

- A Would you like to go downtown?
- B How much is it to go downtown?
- c Is this bus going downtown?

3 ANSWER:

d You want a cigarette, but you're not sure if it's a nonsmoking area. How do you ask?

- A Is it OK to smoke here?
- B Do you want a cigarette?
- c Do you smoke here?

4 ANSWER:

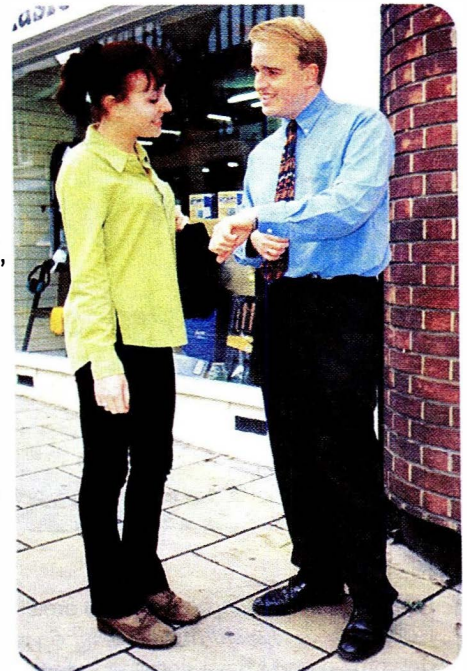
e Someone stops you in a town you don't know and asks for directions. How do you answer?

- A Can you ask someone else?
- B Sorry, I don't live here.
- c Who knows?

5 QUESTION:

2 a) [10.4] Listen and check. Then write in the missing parts of conversations 1–5.

b) Practice the conversations with a partner.



Consolidation

modules 6–10

A Grammar: Present Simple, Present Continuous, Past Simple

Circle the correct form of the verb.

Hi, Jeff,
I (1) write / m writing / wrote this email from sunny Rome where I (2) sit / m sitting / sat on a balcony downtown and I have some wonderful news! Last Saturday I (3) get / m getting / got married! My wife's name is Laura and she (4) comes / s coming / came from Sicily. She's a photographer and she (5) works / s working / worked for "Amica," a famous Italian magazine. We (6) meet / re meeting / met at a party in Milan about a month ago and one week later we (7) decide / re deciding / decided to get married! We (8) don't have / aren't having / didn't have a big wedding – only her parents and a few Italian friends.
We (9) come back / re coming back / came back to Rome two days ago and at the moment we (10) stay / re staying / stayed in Laura's apartment because it's bigger than mine and nearer to Laura's workplace.
Come and visit us! I'm sure you'll like Laura and she (11) wants / s wanting / wanted to meet all my friends.

B Reading and speaking: snacks around the world

1 Read about snacks in Germany, Brazil, and Japan. Complete the gaps with *a/an, some, any, or no*.

"Well I often have (1)...~~a~~... a snack at about eleven in the morning. I usually go to a kiosk near here and buy (2)..... sausage, and then I eat it, standing up at a small table near the kiosk. Then at about four o'clock we usually stop work and have (3)..... cup of coffee and (4)..... cakes."

Suzanne, Germany

"I don't usually have (5)..... food in the middle of the morning, but in the afternoon, at about five o'clock, I sometimes have a coffee. Yesterday, for example, I had (6)..... bread roll and (7)..... cheese. I get very hungry in the afternoons! Oh, yes, and I had (8)..... iced tea. You can buy it at the beach or on the streets – it's very popular in Brazil."

Renato, Brazil

"In Japan we eat food from all over the world, and young people like European snacks. Older people like more traditional food. For example, every afternoon my grandfather has (9)..... Japanese sweets with traditional green tea. At work, on weekdays, we usually have a 'three o'clock snack.' Today I had (10)..... cookies and tea, but (11)..... milk! I find it very strange that English people have milk in their tea!"

Mariko, Japan

2 Work with a partner. Ask and answer these questions:

- Do you have snacks between meals?
- What did you have yesterday?

C Speaking: real life

1 What do you say in the following situations?

- You are in a restaurant and you want to pay. What do you say to the waiter?
- You are in a street market. You want to buy a T-shirt. Ask about the price.
- You are phoning a pizza service. You want two large pizzas. What do you say?
- You are buying a ticket at a railroad station. The clerk says the price of the ticket but you don't understand him. What do you say?
- You are in a store. You want to buy some shampoo but you can't see any. What do you ask the sales clerk?
- You are in a store and you want to buy a T-shirt, but it's too small for you. What do you ask the sales clerk?
- You are in a store. A clerk asks you "Can I help you?" but you don't want to buy anything at the moment. What do you say?

2 [1] Listen and check. Are your questions the same?

3 Practice the situations in pairs.

D Reading and speaking: comparatives and superlatives

1 Read this about four vacations. Which country is each vacation in? Where can you:

- a see a lot of animals? b go to the beach?
c go skiing? d visit a historic town?

Come to Courchevel!

Courchevel, in the French Alps, has the largest ski area in the world with 250 lifts and over 600 km of perfect snow. The night life is very active, there are bars and clubs open till late, and fantastic restaurants for all tastes. The Hotel D'Armor is a modern building with more than 350 rooms, a swimming pool, and sauna, and it's only five minutes from the nearest ski lift. Prices from £699.00 a week, including ski pass and ski hire.

www.D'Armor.uk.com

Ölideniz

Situated in beautiful Ölideniz, we are only five minutes from the sea. Our very modern Turkish apartment sleeps five and has its own small yard. The town of Fethiye, with its old streets and buildings, is only fifteen km away. If you want a quiet, peaceful break near the sea, then this is perfect for you!

£650 a week

hotels.wec-net.com

Pelion Peninsula

One- and two-bedroom traditional apartments near the small but cosmopolitan town of Agios Ioannis on the Pelion peninsula. Enjoy the sun and the wonderful Greek food!

The apartments are self-catering and are only thirty minutes' walk from the beautiful Papa Nero beach. Only **£450 a week** for a two-bedroom apartment.

www.heliotravel.co.uk

African Adventure!

Kenya – Tanzania – Namibia – Botswana – South Africa – Uganda – Zambia and Malawi.

We are simply the best for safaris. Small groups, friendly guides. Come canoeing, riding, and camping! See elephants, lions, and other animals in the wild!

Tours are three, five, or six weeks.

Prices from £1,350 for three weeks.

Tel 020 7482 142

www.africanadven.co.uk

2 Which is the best vacation for these people?

expensive	cheap	quiet	busy	exciting
good	long	old	near	easy

- a Adriana (22) and Sueli (23) are from Mexico. They like exciting vacations and want to meet other young people. They like dancing and sport. They want to go on vacation for two or three weeks, but they don't want to spend a lot of money.
- b Tanya and Rod Kilroy are from Canada. They have two children, Jayne, aged 6, and Tom, aged 8, and they are looking for a quiet family vacation near the sea. They like old places. They don't have a lot of money.

E Listening: song *Return to Sender*

[2] Listen to the song and complete the sentences, then compare your answer with a partner. Student A Turn to page 140. Student B Turn to page 133.

F Vocabulary

Find three words for each topic.

O	R	A	N	G	E	J	U	I	C	E	D
N	A	P	U	R	G	E	P	B	E	N	K
I	C	H	E	A	S	A	T	A	R	P	I
B	U	S	Y	D	W	N	O	K	E	O	O
O	P	U	N	U	T	S	Y	E	A	T	S
U	B	I	W	A	I	L	O	R	L	G	K
G	A	T	I	T	R	O	U	S	E	R	S
H	W	I	N	E	X	S	N	E	W	A	T
T	R	O	F	E	L	L	G	Z	I	P	Y
U	O	Y	A	R	D	E	C	I	D	E	O
N	T	A	B	U	T	C	H	E	R	S	U
B	E	L	I	E	V	E	W	B	E	E	R

a food grapes

b drinks

c clothes

d regular verbs

e past verbs

f adjectives

g stores

module 11

The world around us

- ▶ *Can* and *can't* for ability
- ▶ Question words

Task: take a general knowledge quiz

Language focus 1

Can and *can't* for ability

Read the facts below. Which did you already know?

Did you know?

A **cheetah** can run at up to a hundred kilometers per hour.

A **dog** can't see colors.

A **new baby** can see shapes clearly from the moment he is born.



Practice

1 **MD** Make sentences using words from the three columns.

A parrot can fly, but it can't paint pictures.

a parrot		fly
a chimpanzee		talk
a seven-year-old child	can	swim
a dolphin	can't	walk
a one-month-old baby		paint pictures
a one-month-old kitten		read and write
		communicate
		feed itself

2 If you are not sure, ask other students.

Can a chimpanzee swim?

I'm not sure.

I think so.

Grammar

Complete the blanks with *can* or *can't*.

- ⊕ A dog see black and white only.
- ⊖ It see yellow, red, or blue.
- ⊙ a cheetah see colors?

▶ **Language summary A** page 147.

Reading

1 Discuss the following questions in small groups.

- Which of the animals in the pictures do you know? Where do they come from?
- Which animals attack or kill humans?

2 Read the text below. One of the statements is false, the others are all true. Which do you think is false?
(Check your answer on page 136.)

3 Work with a partner. Which do you think is the most amazing fact?

Amazing animal facts!

The **tuna** is the world's fastest fish. It can swim at up to seventy-five kilometers per hour.

Camels can live up to twelve days without water.

Chimpanzees can't talk but they can learn sign language. Some chimps learn up to 240 signs.

The **puffer fish**, a small fish which lives in the Pacific Ocean, contains poison that can kill a human in just twenty minutes.

Guide dogs are colorblind, so they cannot see the difference between a green and a red light. They watch the traffic to see when it is safe to cross the road.

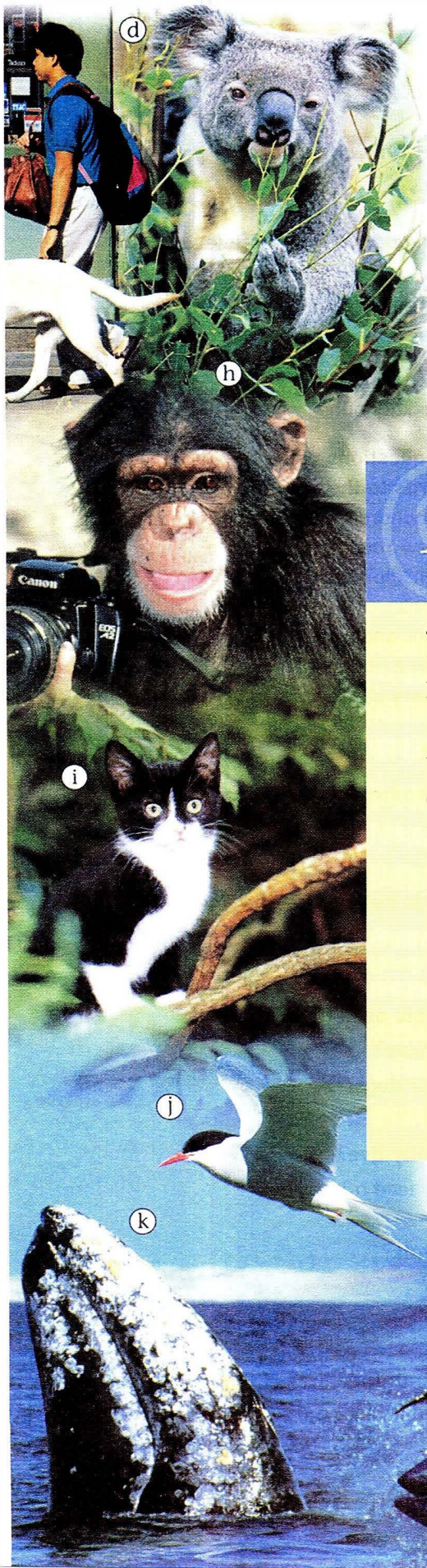
Koalas only eat one thing – the leaves of the eucalyptus tree. They don't even drink water!

Wolves attack and kill more than twenty people every year.

The **Arctic tern**, a bird that lives in North America and the Arctic, flies to the Antarctic and back every year – a journey of about forty thousand kilometers.

The **blue whale** is the world's largest animal – it weighs about a hundred and fifty tons.

There are at least ten thousand billion **ants** in the world, and only about six billion humans – that's 1,166 ants for every human!



Language focus 2

Question words

1 a) Work in pairs. Look at the quiz. How many questions can you answer **without** looking at page 91.

b) Look back and check your answers.

Animal Quiz

- a **How fast** can a cheetah run?
- b What kind of fish can kill you?
- c How long can a camel live without water?
- d Which colors can dogs see?
- e How do guide dogs know when it is safe to cross the road?
- f What do koalas eat?
- g How far do Arctic terns fly every year?
- h How much does a blue whale weigh?
- i How many ants are there in the world?

2 **Circle** the question words or phrases.

Grammar

1 **Circle** the correct answer.

a We use **what** when there are **many/only a few** possible answers:

What does a koala drink?

b We use **which** when there are **many/only a few** possible answers:

Which of these animals kill humans: *wolves, spiders, or whales?*

2 Do you remember? Complete the rule.

We use *how many* with nouns.

We use *how much* with nouns.

3 There are many other two-word questions with **how**, **what**, and **which**. Match the question words to the answers.

- | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------|
| a How long ...? | • a hundred kilometers per hour |
| b How often ...? | • New York |
| c How far ...? | • ten kilometers |
| d How fast ...? | • lions |
| e Which city ...? | • rock and pop |
| f Which animals ...? | • three hours |
| g What kind of music ...? | • every day |

► **Language summary B page 147.**

Practice

1 **Circle** the correct question words below. Use the answer to help you, where necessary.

- a **Which/What** do whales eat?
- b **How much/How many** water do people need to drink?
- c **How much/How many** pets do you have?
- d **What/Which** do you like best, cats or dogs?
- e **What/Which** is your dog's name?
- f **How long/How much** do sharks usually live?
- g **How long/How often** do you need to feed a baby?
(Every three or four hours, at least.)
- h **How fast/How far** do most people walk?
(About five to six kilometers an hour.)
- i **How fast/How far** can you swim?
(About five hundred meters.)
- j **How much/How often** do you go swimming?
(Two or three times a week.)

2 a) We use these different question words with different verb forms:

When did you start learning English?

Which other languages do you speak?

How far can you swim?

Make at least six questions using boxes A, B, and C.

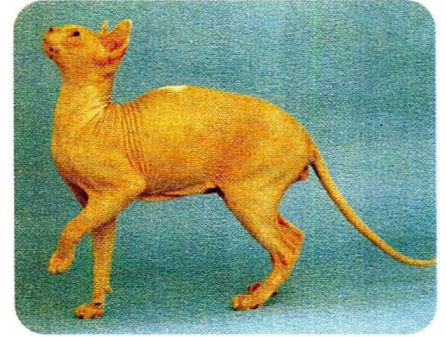
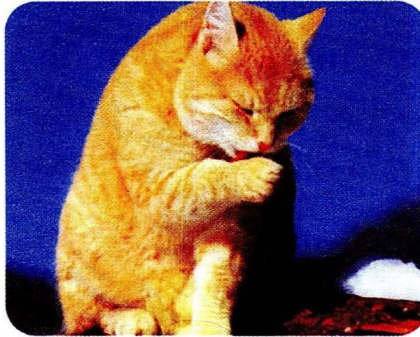
- A**
- When
 - What
 - What kind of music
 - Where
 - Which other languages
 - How
 - How often
 - How far
 - How fast
 - How many cousins
 - Which
 - How much money

- B**
- can you
 - do you
 - is
 - did you (last)
 - have you
 - were you

- C**
- get to school?
 - have?
 - like most?
 - your home from here?
 - born?
 - go to the movies?
 - have for breakfast?
 - prefer, coffee or tea?
 - swim?
 - speak?
 - start learning English?

b) Spend a few minutes learning your questions. Ask three other students.

c) Tell the class something you learned about each person.



Listening

Man's best friend?

1 Ask and answer these questions with a partner.

- a Do you have a pet dog or cat?
- b Would you like to have one? Why/Why not?
- c Do you have any other pets?

2 Look at activities a–g and check any new words. Which do you associate with dogs (D) and which do you associate with cats (C)?

- | | | | |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| a having kittens | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | e finding drugs for customs officers | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b racing | <input type="checkbox"/> | f hunting for mice and birds | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c helping the blind | <input type="checkbox"/> | g being very clean | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d being very lazy | <input type="checkbox"/> | | |

3 a) Questions 1–7 are all about cats. How many can you answer?

- 1 How many cats are there in the world today?
- 2 What do they eat?
- 3 How many hours a day do they sleep?
- 4 How long are female cats pregnant?
- 5 How many kittens do they have at one time?
- 6 How many kinds ("breeds") of cat are there?
- 7 What is special about sphynx cats?

b) [11.1] Now listen to the first part of a radio program on cats and check your answers. Are any of them surprising?

4 [11.2] The second part of the program is about dogs. Read the text below, then listen and complete the blanks.

People say that (1) a dog is a man's best friend. People and dogs first started living together about ten thousand years ago. Now there are (2)..... dogs just in the US – Americans spend over (3)..... on dog food every year – four times what they spend on baby food!

Altogether there are about (4)..... breeds of dog. Many dogs work for humans, doing jobs such as helping the blind, helping the police and customs officers to find drugs, and even racing!

Greyhound racing is popular (5)..... The fastest greyhounds can run as fast as (6)..... kilometers per hour.

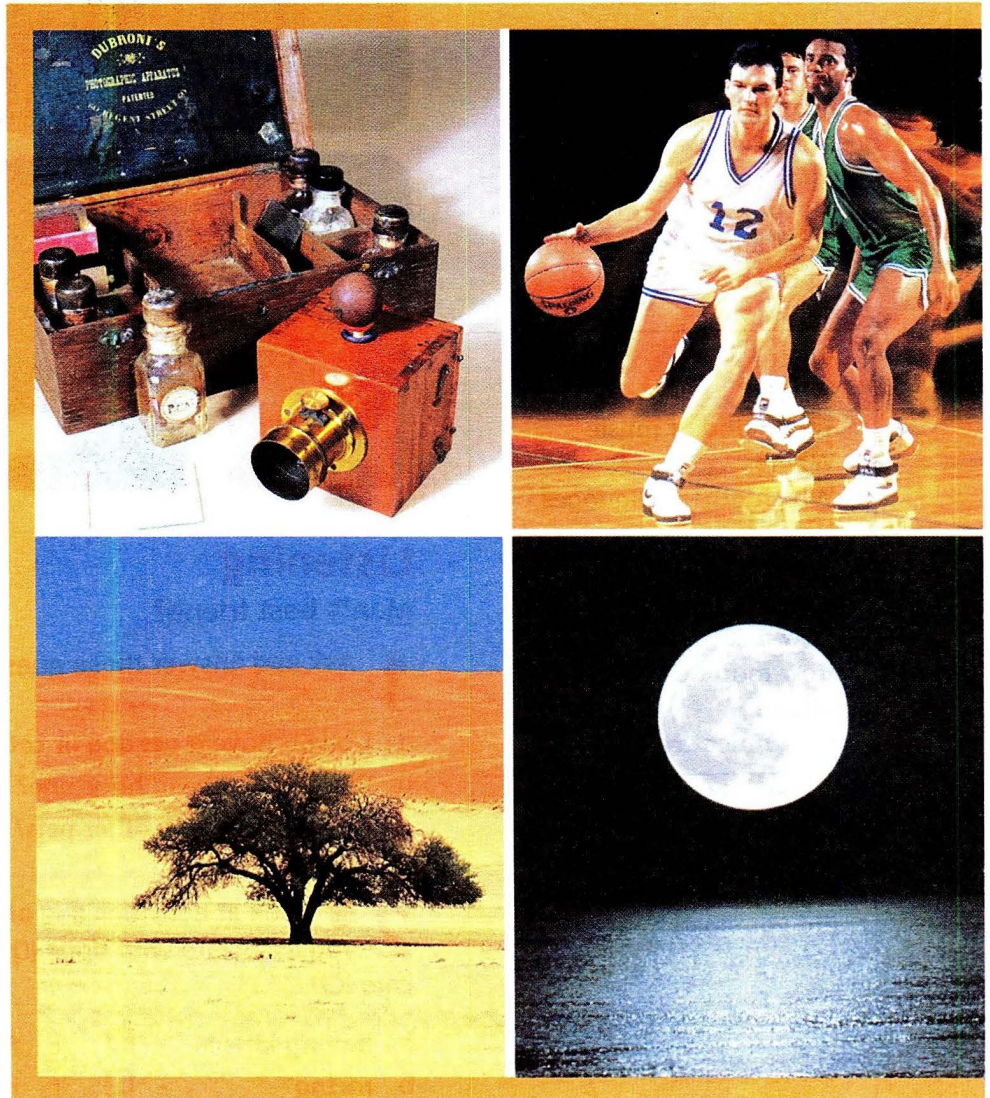
Perhaps the most famous working dog was Rin Tin Tin who died in (7)..... He earned his money by (8)..... – he made (9)..... movies and earned about \$44,000 for each one!

5 Make questions about blanks 1–9. Then ask a partner.

When ... What ... Where ...
How ... How much ...
How many ... (x3) How fast ...

1 What do people say about dogs?

Take a general knowledge quiz



Preparation for task

- 1 a) [MD] Read the general knowledge quiz and complete the sentences. Check any new words in your *Minidictionary*.
- b) [11.3] Listen to the questions and check your answers.
- 2 Now answer the questions in groups.
- 3 [11.4] Listen and check your answers. How many of the questions did you answer correctly?

Useful language

- 1 language or languages do people speak in Canada?
A English B French C English and French
- 2 was the Hollywood actor Arnold Schwarzenegger born?
A Austria B Germany C the United States
- 3 players are there on a basketball team?
A five B eight C eleven
- 4 does it take to boil an egg?
A about 30 to 40 seconds B about 3 to 4 minutes
C about 30 to 40 minutes
- 5 did Bill Clinton become president of the United States?
A 1990 B 1992 C 1996
- 6 is the biggest desert in the world?
A The Arabian Desert B The Gobi Desert C The Sahara Desert
- 7 did Joseph Niépce invent the first camera?
A 1726 B 1826 C 1926
- 8 is it from the Earth to the Moon?
A 38,000 km B 380,000 km C 3.8 million km
- 9 did France win the World Cup in soccer?
A in 1966 only B in 1966 and 1998 C in 1998 only
- 10 Sushi is a popular type of food. does it come from?
A China B India C Japan

irLanguage.com

a Asking questions:

"When did (*Bill Clinton*) become (*president*)?"

"Where was (*Marilyn Monroe*) born?"

"What language do people speak in (*Switzerland*)?"

"What's the capital of (*Canada*)?"

"How far is it from (*Paris*) to (*Rome*)?"

"How many (*meters*) are there in a (*kilometer*)?"

"Where does (*sushi*) come from?"

"Who invented (*the telephone*)?"

"Who won (*the World Cup in 1998*)?"

"What's the biggest (*diamond*) in the world?"

b Answering questions

"I think ..."

"I'm not sure, but I think ..."

"I've no idea!"

Task

1 Work in teams of four or five. You are going to make up your own general knowledge quiz, using these categories:

- history • geography • science and technology
- famous people • sport • food and drink • other

► Useful language a)

2 In your teams, write at least six questions. Ask your teacher for any words or phrases you need.

3 Play your quiz game in teams. Each team gets two points for every question it answers correctly.

► Useful language b)

Optional writing

For homework, write some more questions to test your teacher's general knowledge. How many can he or she answer correctly?

Real life

Different ways of saying numbers

1 Match the numbers a–j with how you say them 1–10.

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------------------|
| a 50 km/h | 1 five thousand |
| b 500 | 2 five billion |
| c 505 | 3 five million |
| d 5,000 | 4 fifteen fifty-five |
| e 5.5 | 5 fifty kilometers per hour |
| f 50,000 | 6 five point five |
| g 500,000 | 7 five hundred thousand |
| h 5,000,000 | 8 fifty thousand |
| i 5,000,000,000 | 9 five hundred and five |
| j 1555 (year) | 10 five hundred |

2 [11.5] Practice saying the numbers in the box. Then listen and check.

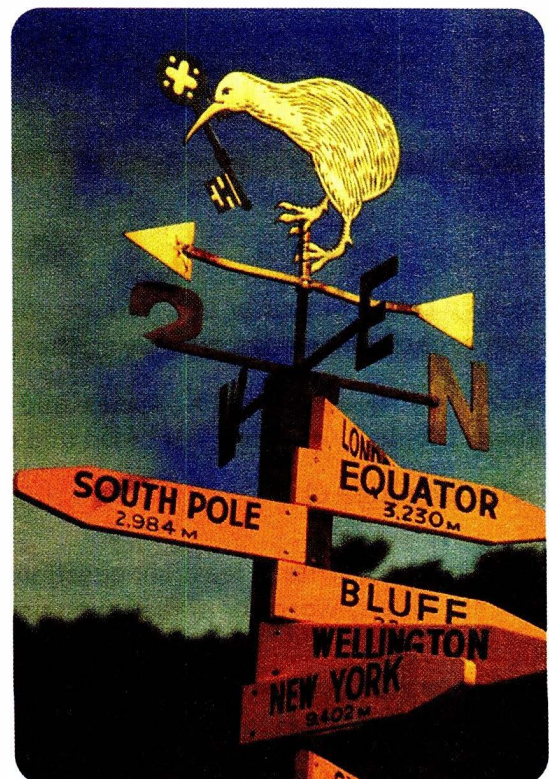
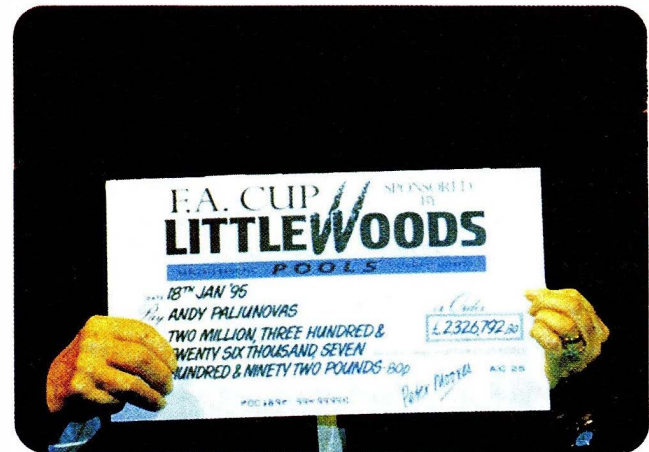
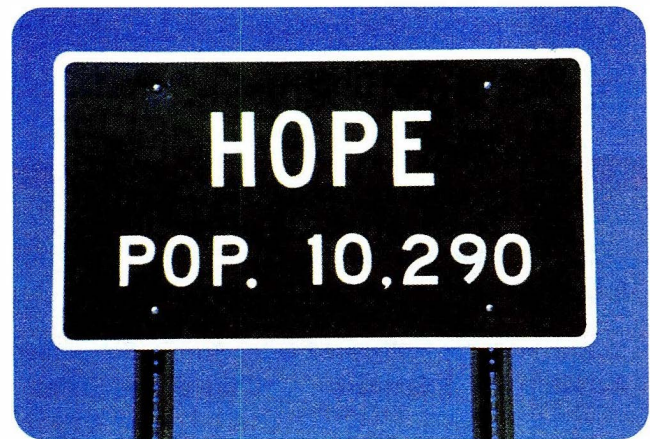
70	400	820	9,000	4.8	20,000
300,000	12,000,000	6,000,000,000	1,988		

3 Write down:

- the approximate population of your town/city.
- the approximate price of a new car in your country.
- the approximate population of your country.
- the maximum prize in the national lottery.
- the year you were born.
- the approximate number of words on this page.
- the maximum speed limit in your country.
- how old your town/city is.
- the number of people in your school.
- the distance from your town/city to the coast.

(Don't worry if your numbers aren't exact.)

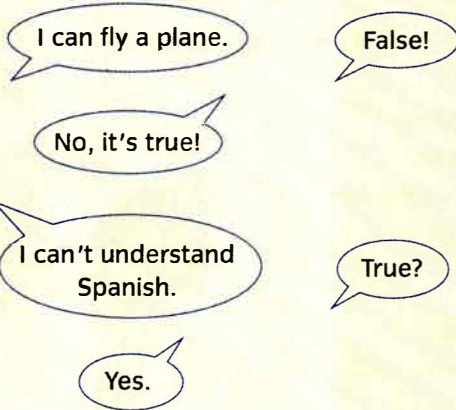
4 Compare your numbers in groups. Practice saying the different numbers.



Do you remember?

1 a) Write down three things you can do (two true and one false). Write down three things you can't do (two true and one false).

b) Read them to your partner. Can you guess the false ones?



2 a) Complete the questions with a question word or phrase.

- 1 How often do you watch television?
- 2 of television program do you like most?
- 3 is your favorite television actor or actress?
- 4 channel (CNN, BBC World, MTV, etc.) do you like best?
- 5 movies have you got on video?

b) Now ask your partner questions 1–5.

3 Put these questions in the correct order.

- a) fast/type/you/How/can?
How fast can you type?
- b) Tokyo/long/Paul/How/did/in/live?
- c) team/soccer/you/support/Which/do?
- d) this/How/cost/much/does/book?
- e) stores/the/far/are/How?
- f) the/fast/to/How/you/can/get/airport?
- g) dessert/would/What/you/like/for?

4 Write the answers in words, not numbers!

- ⊕ = plus ⊖ = minus
 × = multiplied by ÷ = divided by

- a) What is thirty thousand minus two thousand and seventy-two?
Twenty-seven thousand, nine hundred and twenty-eight
- b) What is one thousand, two hundred and eighty-four divided by twelve?
- c) What is the year after the year two thousand?
- d) What's six hundred and twenty-two thousand, three hundred and twenty-five plus fifty-nine thousand, two hundred and seventy-nine?
- e) What's the speed limit on city roads in your country, or the country where you are studying?
- f) What is sixty-six point six percent of a hundred and twenty?

5 How do you pronounce these international words in English? Mark the stress.

kilometer	meter	a billion
restaurant	television	soccer

module 12

A day out

► **Vocabulary:** going out and staying home

► **Future intentions:** *going to*, *would like to*, and *want to*

► **Suggestions and offers**

Task: plan a day out

Vocabulary

Going out and staying home

1 Work in small groups. Tell the other students about last weekend.

a What did you do?

b Was it:

- busy or quiet?
- boring or good fun?
- tiring or relaxing?

2 **MD a)** Work individually. Answer quiz questions a–e. 1 = never, 2 = not very often, 3 = sometimes, and 4 = usually.

b) Compare your answers in small groups.

I often study on weekends.
How about you?

I never study on weekends!

How do you spend weekends?

A Weekends

Number the boxes 1–4.

How often do you:

- work or study on weekends?
- go away for the weekend?
- look after children on weekends?
- stay in bed all weekend?

B Sport and exercise

On weekends do you ever:

- play a team sport like basketball or soccer?
- go to the gym?
- go swimming?
- watch sport on television?

C Culture

How often do you:

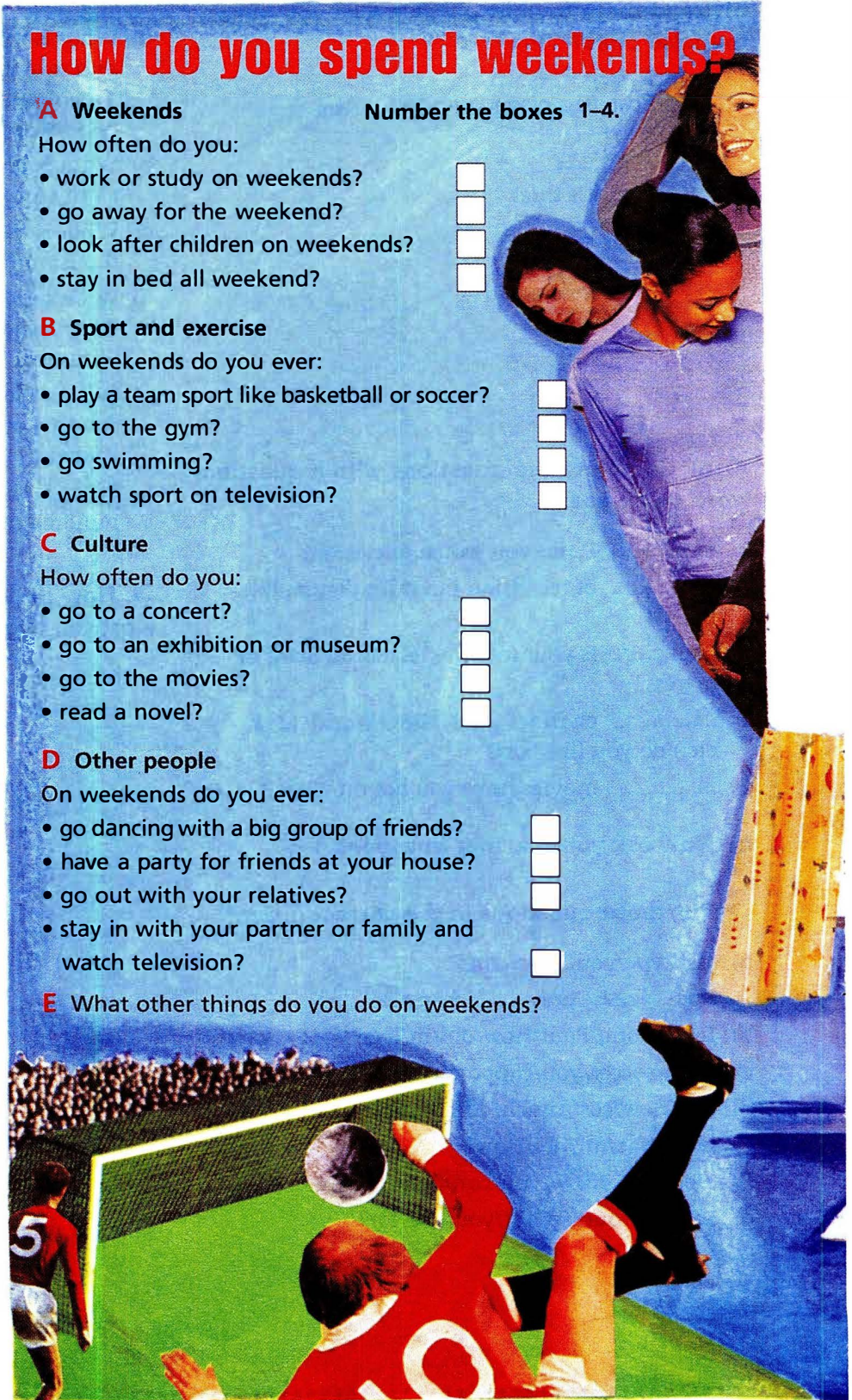
- go to a concert?
- go to an exhibition or museum?
- go to the movies?
- read a novel?

D Other people

On weekends do you ever:

- go dancing with a big group of friends?
- have a party for friends at your house?
- go out with your relatives?
- stay in with your partner or family and watch television?

E What other things do you do on weekends?



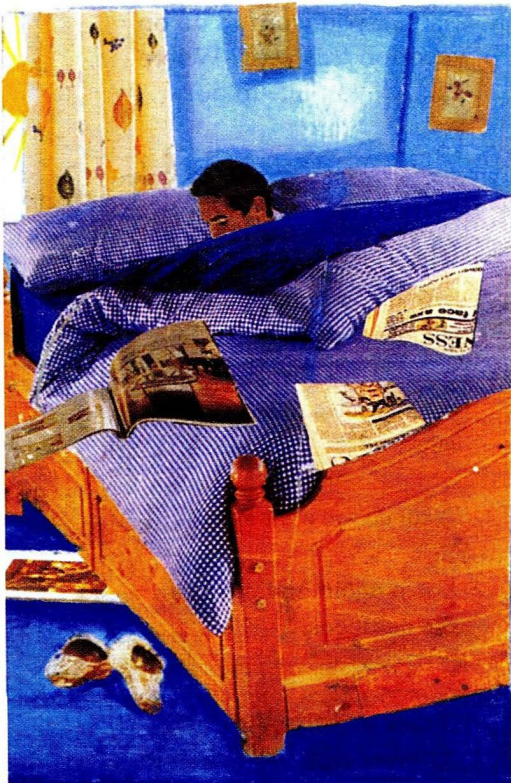
3 a) Match the words that go together. Use the quiz to check your answers.

- | | |
|--------------|-------------------|
| 1 go to | a a novel |
| 2 stay | b for the weekend |
| 3 go | c home |
| 4 have a | d in bed |
| 5 look after | e dancing |
| 6 go | f an exhibition |
| 7 stay | g out |
| 8 go to | h children |
| 9 read | i a concert |
| 10 go away | j party |

b) Spend a few minutes remembering the words that go together. Then test your partner like this:


go to

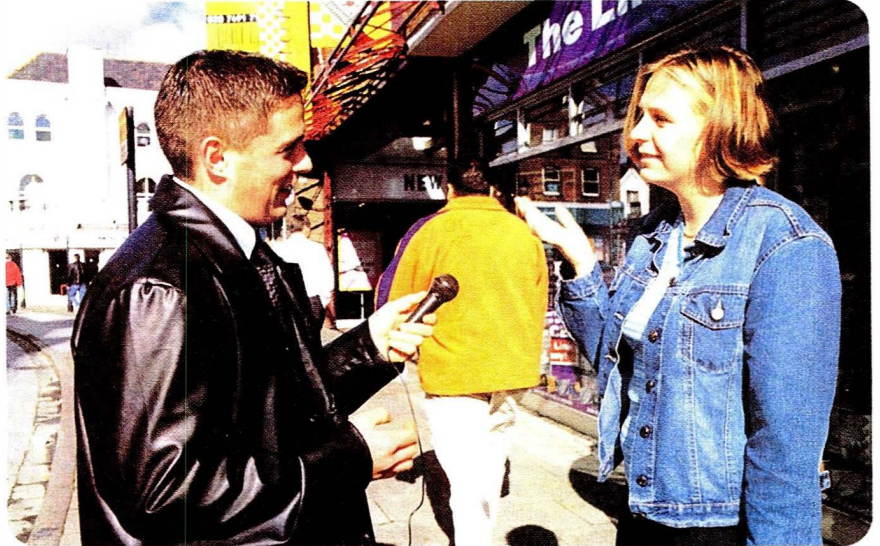
an exhibition



Language focus 1

Future intentions: *going to*, *would like to*, and *want to*

 [12.1] We asked some people in the street about their plans for next weekend. Listen and complete the table.



name	plans for Saturday?	Sunday?
a Tania (18)	Saturday night - club for friend's birthday	
b Amir (25)		
c Phil (33)		
d Aphra (28)		
e Zoe (20)		
f Val (46)		

Grammar

Look at the examples of future plans and intentions.

1 To talk about future intentions we often use **be + going to + verb**.

- ➕ *I'm going to cook a meal for my friend.*
- ➖ *I'm not going to do much this weekend.*
- ➔ *Are you going to watch television tonight?*

2 We can use other verbs to talk about future intentions, too.

a **want to + verb**.

I want to finish my book.

b **would like to + verb**.

I'd like to go on vacation.

► **Language summaries A and B page 147.**

Practice

1 Write six sentences about the people in Language focus 1, Exercise 1 using *going to*.

On Saturday Val's going to pack for her vacation.

2 Look at pictures a-f carefully to see what the people are going to do.

- go swimming
- catch a plane
- meet his girlfriend
- have a cigarette outside
- take the dog for a walk
- go shopping



3 [12.2] Complete questions a-h with *are*, *do*, or *would*. Then listen and check your answers.

- a Are you going straight home after this lesson? If not, where ~~are~~ you going?
- b you going to do any homework tonight? What you going to do?
- c you want to watch television this evening? you want to watch anything special?
- d you going to have a busy weekend? What you like to do?
- e you going out anywhere this week? If so, where you going?
- f Are there any movies that you like to see? Which ones?
- g you want to buy anything special in the next few weeks? What?
- h you want to go on vacation this year? Where you like to go?

Pronunciation

1 [12.3] Notice that *to* has a weak pronunciation in the middle of a sentence:

/tə/

Are you going to have a busy weekend?

/tə/


What do you want to do?

2 Listen again and practice the questions.

4 Work in pairs. Ask and answer questions a-h in Exercise 3.

Language focus 2

Suggestions and offers

 [12.4] What is the situation in the pictures? Put the two conversations in the correct order. Then listen and check. Practice with a partner.

- It's OK, I'll make it.
- No, I'll make it – you sit down.
- Good idea – should I make some coffee?
- OK – thanks.
- Let's stop for a break – this is really tiring!



- Should I find out when it's on and what time it starts?
- How about that new one with Julia Roberts? I can't remember the name of it.
- OK, what do you want to do?
- OK – but which movie?
- I'm really bored, should we go out somewhere tonight?
- Yes, good idea.
- We could go and see a movie.
- OK, if you want.

(B)



Grammar

1 a We make suggestions like this:

Let's have a break.

Should we go out tonight?

We could go to the movies.

b How can the other person answer?

2 a We make offers like this:


Should I make some coffee?

I'll make it.

b How can the other person answer?

► **Language summaries C and D page 148.**

Practice

 Work with a partner. Make as many conversations as you can, using sentences from A, B, and C.

A

I'm really hungry/thirsty/tired/bored.
It's really hot/cold/dark in here, isn't it?
It's nearly midnight – I must go home!

B

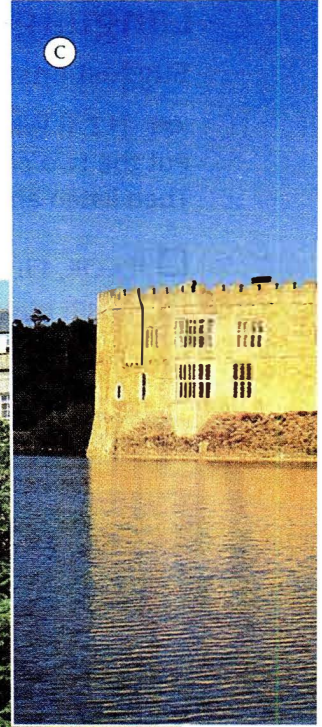
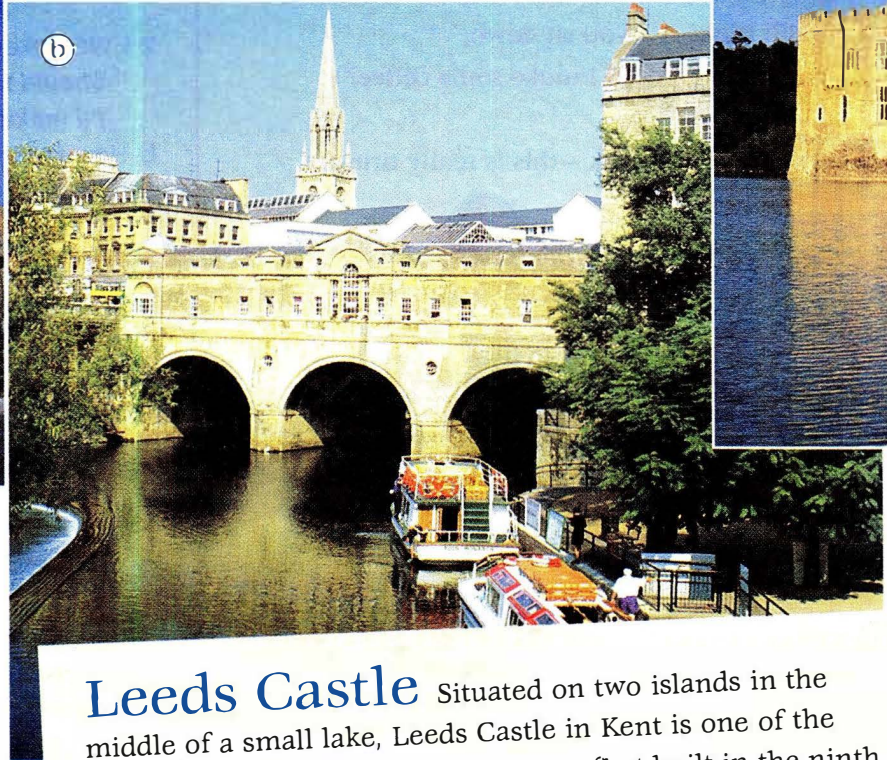
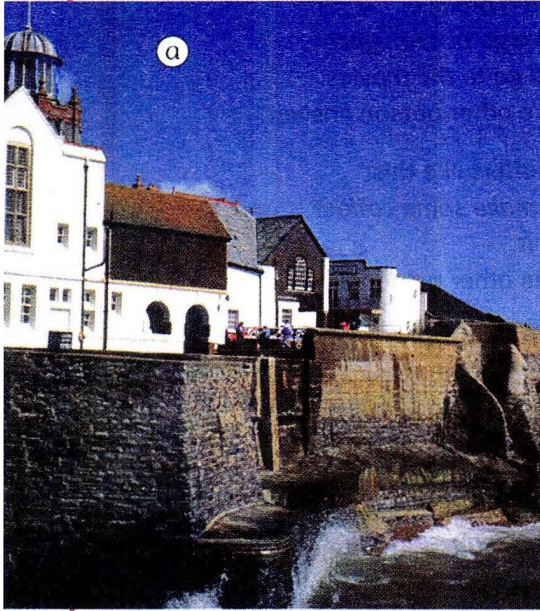
Should I make you a sandwich?
Should I take you home?
Let's have a break.
I'll turn on the heating/the light.
Let's go and have lunch/a drink.
We could go for a walk.
Should we call a taxi?
I'll open/close the window.
Should I make some coffee?

C

Good idea!
OK.
Yes, please, if that's OK.
It's OK, I'll do it.

Plan a day out

Preparation for task



1 ^{MD} The three extracts below come from *The Best Britain Guide*. Match the places (Bath, Lyme Regis, and Leeds Castle) with the photographs.

Useful language

Where to go

"I'd really like to go there."

"It takes about three hours to get there."

"It's not too far."

How to travel

"I'll drive us there."

"What time should I pick you up?"

"Let's leave at (*about ten*) o'clock."

Food and drink

"Let's take a picnic."

"What should we have? – (*sandwiches? fruit?*)"

"I'll get (*some drinks*)."

"Is that OK for everyone?"

Leeds Castle Situated on two islands in the middle of a small lake, Leeds Castle in Kent is one of the loveliest castles in the country. It was first built in the ninth century, and later became the home of King Henry VIII. Today it is a favorite with visitors, with beautiful parks to walk in, as well as gardens, a golf course, a vineyard, a museum, and in summer, outdoor concerts. There is a coffee shop and restaurant, and a good bar nearby. Entrance to the castle is £8.00 for adults, or £5.50 for park and gardens only.

2 In which of the three places can you find:

a beautiful gardens and parks?

Leeds Castle and Lyme Regis

b beaches and views of the sea?

h street markets?

c a golf course?

i a lake with two islands?

d interesting architecture?

j good restaurants?

e good stores?

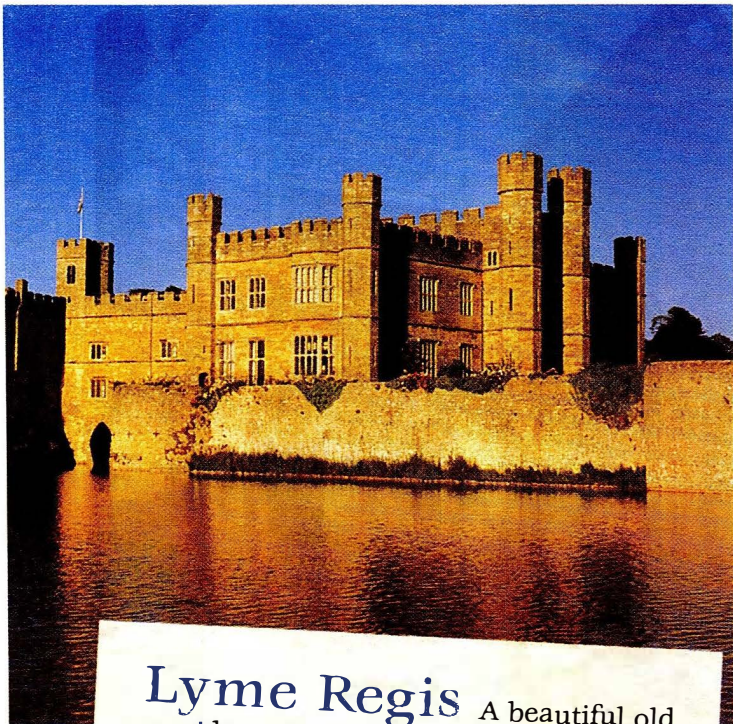
k a harbor?

f nice places to walk?

l things to interest children?



g museums?

m a vineyard?




Lyme Regis A beautiful old seaside town, with a lively little harbor, beaches, and lovely walks, either by the sea, or in the country nearby. For children there is the Marine Aquarium, and Dinosaurland, and in summer you can escape from the crowds and relax in the Jane Austen Gardens, with beautiful views over the sea. There are many interesting old streets, with coffee shops and restaurants. The best restaurant is the Pilot Boat, down by the beach, which has very good food and excellent wine.

Bath With its famous Roman baths, its eighteenth-century architecture, and its many museums, Bath is one of the most beautiful cities in the country. It also has a large number of interesting stores and street markets, excellent hotels, coffee shops, and many good restaurants. In the summer there are lots of places to eat outside. You can enjoy walking around the small streets, or you can see the city from the water, with a boat cruise on the River Avon. But don't take your car downtown - parking is impossible in summer.

3   [12.5] Three friends, Ruth, Craig, and Betsy, are planning a day out. Listen and **circle** the correct information.

- 1 They decide to go to: (a) *Bath* (b) *Leeds Castle* (c) *Lyme Regis*
- 2 because: (a) *it's not too far* (b) *it's not too expensive* (c) *it's easy to get to by train*
- 3 They are going to travel: (a) *by car* (b) *by bus* (c) *by train*
- 4 They are going to eat: (a) *in a restaurant* (b) *in a hotel* (c) *a picnic*
- 5 They are going to take: (a) *sandwiches and potato chips* (b) *Coke and lemonade* (c) *coffee and cookies*
- 6 They are going to leave at: (a) *about 9:00* (b) *about 10:00* (c) *about 11:00*
- 7 They want to get home at: (a) *about 5:30* (b) *about 6:30* (c) *about 7:30*

4  [12.6] Now read the *Useful language* box and listen to some of the phrases Ruth, Craig, and Betsy used. Practice saying them.

Task

1 You are going to plan a day out with other students. Make a list of possible places to visit.

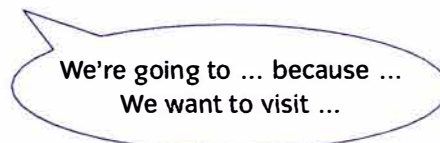
2 a) Work in groups and decide what to do. Think about:

- how to travel.
- what to eat.
- when to leave.
- when to get home.

b) Plan what you will say to the other students. Ask your teacher for any words you need.

► Useful language

3 a) Now work in new groups. Tell your group about the day out you have planned.



b) Which day out sounds the most interesting?

Real life

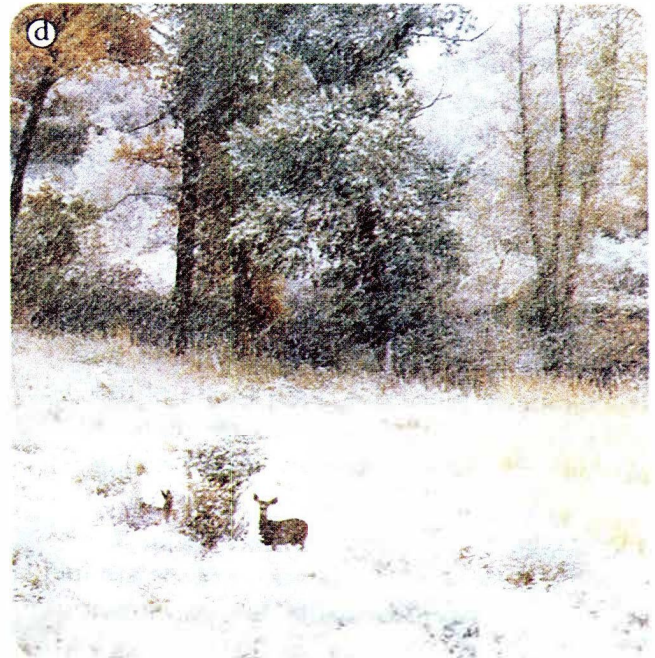
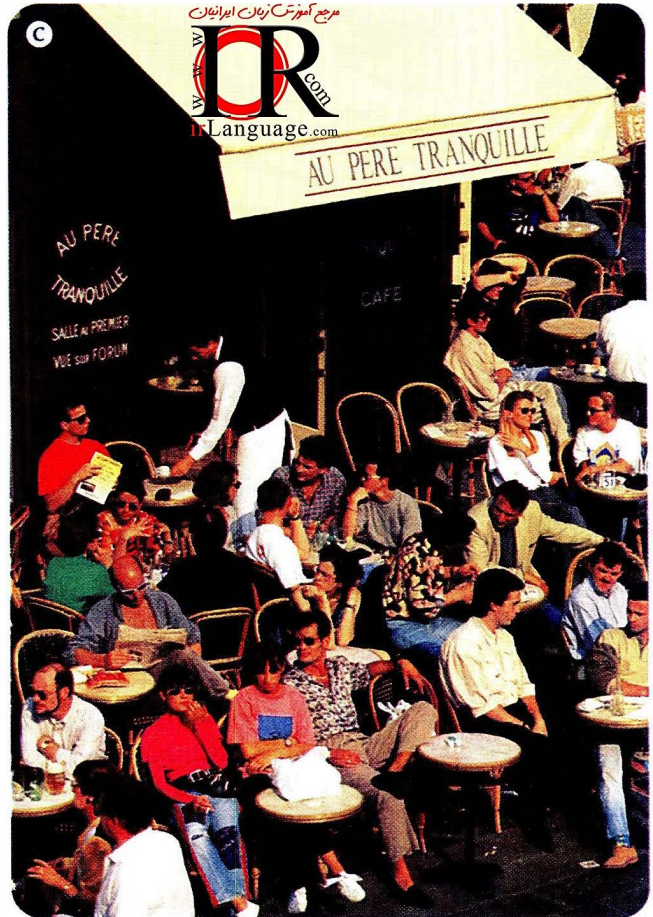
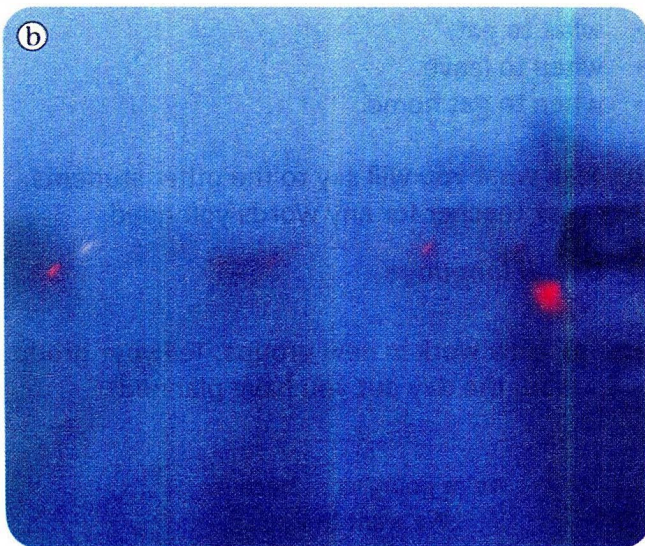
Talk about the weather

1 How many seasons are there in your country? Which season are these months in?

January October April July

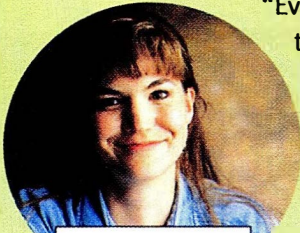
2 What's the weather like in pictures a-d? Choose from the phrases in the box.

It's cloudy It's sunny It's windy
It's snowing It's raining It's cold
It's foggy It's hot It's wet It's warm



3 [12.7] Listen to Cathy talking about the weather in different parts of her country. Complete the blanks.

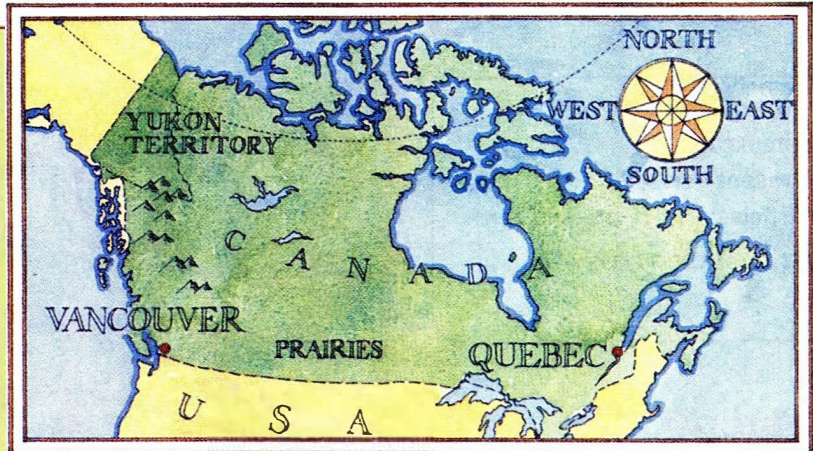
4 Make a simple map of your country. Talk about the weather in different regions, and in different seasons.



Cathy is from Canada.

“Everybody thinks that in Canada it’s always (1), and in the north, in the Yukon Territory, it’s

true; there’s (2) maybe eight months of the year. But I come from Vancouver, on the west coast, and there the (3) aren’t too bad. Most days it’s (4), and it can be quite (5) sometimes, but it’s not really cold. The (6) are nice: it’s quite (7) and (8) – I guess the average is about (9) degrees.



In the Prairies – that’s the central part of the country – it gets very (10) in summer. In the winter it’s very (11) because of a wind we call the ‘chinook.’ It can be a problem for the farmers, as it doesn’t (12) very much. In the eastern part of the country ...”

Do you remember?

1 Cross out the verb which is not possible.

(a) go
visit
hate

dancing

(b) play
watch
make

sport

(c) watch
go to
visit

an exhibition

(d) do
go to
watch

a soccer game

2 Complete the sentences with *going to* or *would like to* or *want to* and with the words in the box.

lose weight get a better job visit his mother
be rich

- a Why is Laura studying English?
Because she wants to get a better job.
- b Why is George eating a salad?
- c Why is John carrying flowers?
- d Why does Judith work fifteen hours a day, every day?

3 Write the missing word in each sentence.

- a “I ~~make~~ make some coffee for us.” “Good idea!”
- b “I telephone Pete?” “Yes, please, if that’s OK.”
- c “Let have a break.” “OK.”
- d “We could to that new exhibition.” “Sure.”
- e “We stay home tonight?” “Mm, I’d like to go out.”
- f “I pay.” “That’s very kind of you.”

module 13

Keeping in touch

- **Vocabulary:** ways of communicating
- **Present Perfect**
- **Articles:** *the, a, an,* and zero

Task: complete a class web page

Reading

1 a) Look at pictures a–c and read the information. When were these events in the news?

b) How did people hear about them? How long did the news take?

2 **a)** Put these inventions in order, from the oldest (1) to the newest (5).

- email
- pen
- telephone
- typewriter
- walkie-talkie

b) Now read the text on page 107 and check your answers. (Some sentences from the text are missing.)

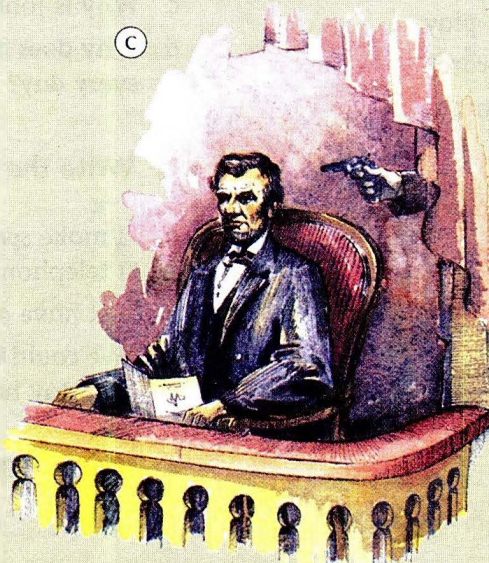
Getting in touch ...



500 years ago ... it took five months for news of Christopher Columbus's arrival in South America to reach Queen Isabel in Spain.



In 1969, when Neil Armstrong first walked on the moon, it took 1.3 seconds for his words to reach the Earth.



150 years ago, it took two weeks for the news of president Abraham Lincoln's assassination to get to Europe.

www.irLanguage.com

through the ages

These are just some of the ways communication has changed in the last five hundred years ...

1 a) But we know that 4,000 years ago in Ancient Egypt, people carried letters by hand over hundreds of kilometers. In those days you didn't need a stamp to send a letter: the first stamp didn't appear until 1840 – it cost one penny ... nowadays one of these original stamps costs £225!
b)

2 a) An American company – Remington and Sons – made the first typewriter in 1871. All the letters in the word “typewriter” were on the top line of the keyboard, so the salesman could demonstrate the machine easily.
b)

3 a) The inventor of the first telephone was a Scottish-American teacher called Alexander Graham Bell. In 1876 he showed his new invention at an exhibition in Philadelphia. b)

4 a) A walkie-talkie is a small two-way radio. The United States army first used them in the 1930s, but they weighed 13.6 kilos so talking was easier than walking! After World War II, they became popular with policemen. b)

5 a) Nowadays, you can send messages, pictures, and text around the world in a few seconds via a computer using email (or *electronic* mail). Millions of people send and receive emails every day.
b)

3 Here are the missing sentences. Put them in the best place: at the beginning or at the end of the right paragraph. (1–5)

- A Before that policemen had to use whistles to call for help!
- B Nobody knows who wrote the first letter, or when.
- C The letters are still in the same place on a modern computer keyboard!
- D But in the early 1990s, very few people had email, and only one person in fifty knew what it was!
- E Unfortunately, the public weren't very interested.

4 The words in **bold** are all pronouns. What do they refer to? Look back at the text to help you.

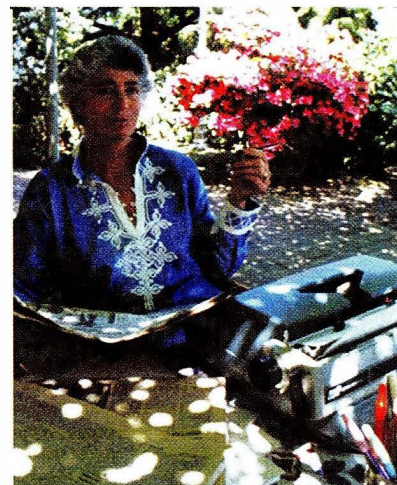
- a it cost one penny (paragraph 1)
the first stamp.
- b **he** showed his new invention (paragraph 3)
.....
- c the United States army first used **them** in the 1930s (paragraph 4)
.....
- d **but they** weighed 13.6 kilos (paragraph 4)
.....



Language focus 1

Present Perfect

MD Read about Caitlin Lewis. What's her job? What is surprising about her?



Caitlin Lewis, author of best-selling detective novels such as *Black Night* and *Death of a Stranger*, lives alone on the island of Tresco off the south coast of England. She's written sixteen novels and she's writing her seventeenth at the moment, but she doesn't have a computer and she's never sent a fax or an email in her life!

"I've always used the same old typewriter which belonged to my mother. I think all this new technology is unnecessary. It's the ideas that are important."

Vocabulary

Ways of communicating

1 **MD** Look at the objects in the pictures. Match the activities in the box with the objects.

receive or send emails	leave a message	write a letter
send a fax	surf the Internet	send cards
buy (something) online	make calls	write a note

2 Use a phrase from the box to complete sentences a–i.

- a In many countries, it's normal to at New Year, or on birthdays.
- b If the person you want to speak to isn't at home when you phone, you can on the answering machine.
- c In the UK, books and CDs are quite expensive; many people use computers and them
- d You can still find public telephones but many people nowadays prefer to use a cellphone to
- e If you want to send a document quickly, and don't have a computer, the best way is to
- f If you have a computer with a telephone connection, you can to keep in touch without paying a lot of money.
- g Brigitte wasn't there when I went to see her, so I decided to and leave it on her door.
- h Every night I like to for about an hour – you never know what interesting information you'll find on the web!
- i If you don't have a computer, you can always : it takes more time, but it's more personal.

Grammar

1 Look at these sentences in the Present Perfect.

- a *She's written sixteen novels.*
- b *She's never sent an email.*

We use the Present Perfect for actions in the past which are still true (or important) in the present. We don't say **when** the actions happened.

2 We form the Present Perfect with: **have** or **has** + **past participle**.

Notice how we form past participles:

Regular (= verb + **-ed**)
used

Irregular
written, sent

3 Complete the blanks with a sentence in the *I* form.

- + *She's sent an email.* I've sent an email.....
- *She hasn't sent an email.* I.....
- ? *Has she sent an email?*

► **Language summary A page 148.**

Practice

1 **MD** Use your *Minidictionary* to find the past participles of these irregular verbs:

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| be | have |
| buy | lose |
| see | meet |
| make | break |

2 a) Write sentences about yourself. Use the list of verbs on page 150 to check irregular past participles.

- a Write a letter in English
I've never written a letter in English.
I've written a few letters in English.
- b Send an email abroad
- c Receive a fax
- d Write a story
- e Send a card at New Year
- f Make an emergency call
- g Lose an important letter
- h Buy a book online
- i Visit a cybercafé

b) Speak to your partner. Are your answers the same or different?

3 **MD** a) Use the words to write at least six questions.

- | | |
|--------------|---|
| <i>go to</i> | the US/Paris/a rock concert |
| | <i>Have you ever been to Paris?</i> |
| <i>see</i> | a real tiger/an opera/
the film <i>Casablanca</i> |
| <i>write</i> | a poem/a love letter/a very angry letter |
| <i>lose</i> | a lot of money/your identity card/
your English homework |
| <i>meet</i> | a person from Britain/a famous
person/your teacher's husband or wife |
| <i>break</i> | your arm/your leg/a promise |

b) Work in groups of three. Use your questions to find **two** things that you have done that your partners have not.





Language focus 2

Articles: *the*, *a*, *an*, and zero

Which sentence is best with each picture?

- 1 I love getting letters!
- 2 There's a letter for you!
- 3 Did you read the letter I sent you?

Grammar

We use the **zero article** (Ø) to talk about things in general.

I love getting letters.

We use **a** to talk about things for the first time, or when we don't know which thing.

There's a letter for you.

We use **the** to talk about specific things, or when we know which thing.

Did you read the letter I sent you?

► **Language summary B page 149.**

Practice

MD a) Complete the blanks with *a*, *an*, *the*, or zero (Ø).

One day, Marty went out to buy (a) newspaper. He saw (b) competition in (c) newspaper and decided to enter. Marty loved (d) competitions. There was (e) simple question to answer: Where do (f) koalas live? First, he told (g) man next door about (h) competition, and asked if he knew (i) answer: but (j) man didn't know, so Marty looked in (k) book. (l) few days later, (m) letter came through (n) door. Marty opened (o) letter excitedly – inside there was (p) piece of paper. (q) check for £1,000!! Then he looked at (r) name on (s) envelope. He saw that (t) letter wasn't for him: it was for (u) man next door.

b) [13.1] Listen and check your answers.

Real life

Telephoning

1 [13.2] Jane wants to make four telephone calls. Number the calls in the order you hear them.



Phone:

- Julia Thomson (Thomson Travel) about plane tickets.
- Paul about tomorrow night.
- Dad (about Mom's birthday present)
- Tania to tell her about tickets.

2 [13.2] Listen to Jane's four calls again and complete the sentences.

Conversation 1

- a Hello, can I speak to Paul, please?
- b Sorry, he's not here.

Conversation 2

Hello, this is Jane Hancock,..... the flight tickets ...

Conversation 3

Hi, it's Jane, back?

Conversation 4

Hello, Mom, it's me.?

Pronunciation

1 [13.3] Listen to some of the questions again and copy the speaker's polite intonation.

- Hello, can I speak to Paul, please?
- Is this Julia Thomson?
- Can you ask him to call me?

2 [13.4] Listen to some of the answers.

- Speaking.
- Sorry, he's not here.
- Yes, of course.

3 a) Complete two more telephone calls. You phone your friend, Joe. His sister answers.

JOE'S SISTER: Hello?

YOU: (1).....

JOE'S SISTER: I'm not sure if he's in ... just a minute. Joe!! Joe!!! Sorry, he's not here ... he's probably still at college. He's usually here after about two o'clock.

YOU: (2).....

JOE'S SISTER: OK ... what's your number?

YOU: (3).....

JOE'S SISTER: OK. I'll tell him.

YOU: (4).....

JOE'S SISTER: Bye.

b) You phone your friend Sergio, but you hear a recorded message.

SERGIO: Hello, this is Sergio speaking ... I'm afraid I'm not here at the moment, but if you'd like to leave a message, please speak after the tone. (BEEP!)

YOU:

4 Practice both the telephone conversations in pairs.

Complete a class web page

Preparation for task

1 How much do you use the Internet? Do you ever read web pages in English?

2 English classes around the world are entering a competition for an English-language web page. Here are extracts from three different countries. Which do you think has:

- the most interesting information?
- the best design?

Useful language

a Discussing what to include

"Let's have (some jokes)."

"We could have some music."

b Language for the web page

"Hi!/Hello. Welcome to our class page!"

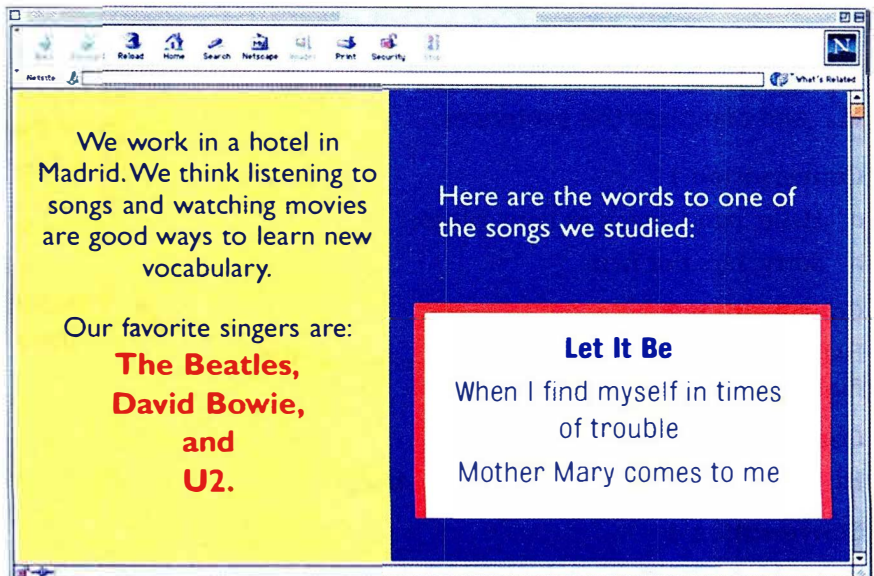
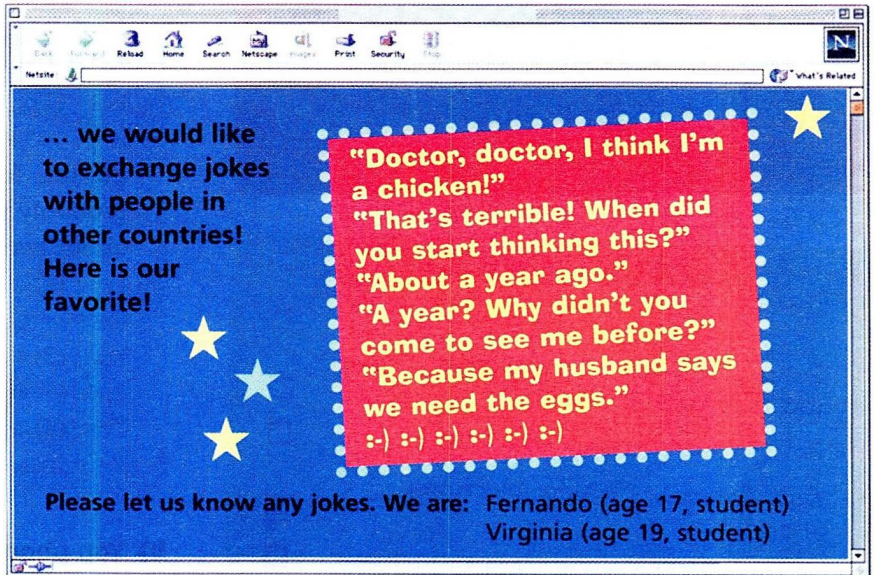
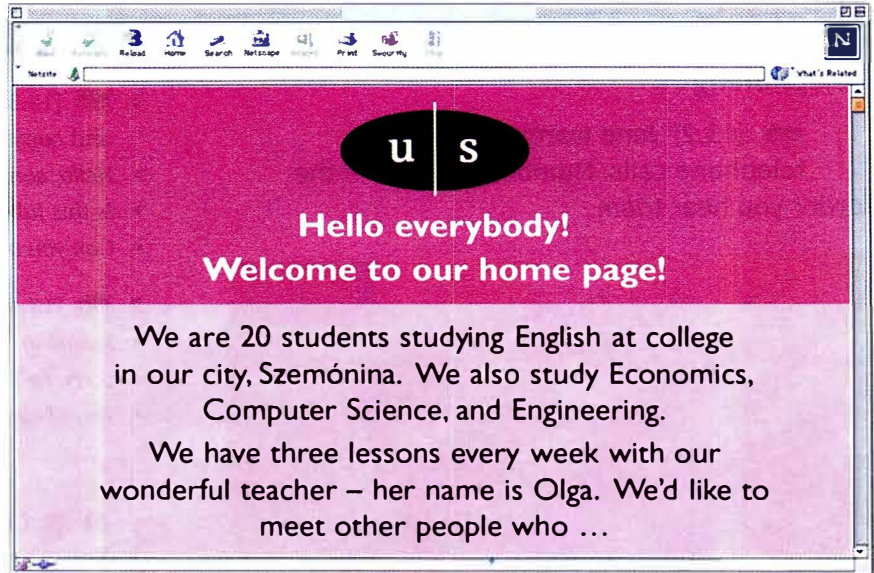
"We are ... and we study English at ..."

"Our teacher's name is ... (S)he's ..."

"We all really like (listening to music/dancing)."

"We would like to exchange (songs/jokes/information) about ... with people in other countries."

"Here is our favorite song ..."





Do you remember?

Task

1 a) Work in a group. You are going to make a similar page for your group. Decide what information to include:

- 1 Who you are, where you study, and your teacher's name.
- 2 What you enjoy doing outside your English class.
- 3 Why you want to get in touch with other people around the world.
- 4 Other interesting information.

► **Useful language a)**

b) Write your group's web page.

► **Useful language b)**

2 Look at the other groups' pages. Whose is the most attractive? Whose is the most interesting?

1 a) Complete the blanks with a verb. Use a different verb for each one.

How often do you:

- | | |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| a) receive cards? | d) a cellphone? |
| b) emails? | e) the Internet? |
| c) letters? | f) books or CDs online? |

b) Work in pairs. Ask and answer the questions above. You can use these phrases to answer.

never	once or twice a month	most days
every day	two or three times a year	

2 Write the irregular past participles.

- | | | |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| a) ogne gone | e) nese nese | i) tme tme |
| b) tetriwn tetriwn | f) nevig nevig | j) own own |
| c) ogtbhu ogtbhu | g) nolfw nolfw | k) naket naket |
| d) node node | h) dame dame | |

3 Complete the blanks using one of the words in the box.

has	've	have	ever	's never
-----	-----	-----------------	------	----------

- a) ~~Have~~... we met?
- b) Emma seen *Tarzan*?
- c) Steve flown before. It's his first time.
- d) They never tried Vietnamese food before.
- e) Have you lived in another country?

4 Put *a*, *an*, *the*, or \emptyset in the blanks

SUE: Did you have (1) ...~~a~~..... good vacation?

TONY: Yeah. We stayed in (2)..... fantastic hotel near the downtown area.

SUE: And what did you do?

TONY: Well, (3)..... hotel had (4)..... swimming pool and (5)..... children played there most of the time, so Meg and I just relaxed and watched them!

PAT: Jackie! There's (6)..... spider in (7)..... bath!

JACKIE: I can't help you. I hate (8)..... spiders!

ANITA: All (9)..... boys like (10)..... soccer!

DARRYL: No, we don't. I prefer (11)..... tennis.

module 14

Places to go

- ▶ Vocabulary: town facilities
- ▶ have to, don't have to, can, and can't
- ▶ Prepositions of movement

Task: advertise a local tourist attraction

Vocabulary

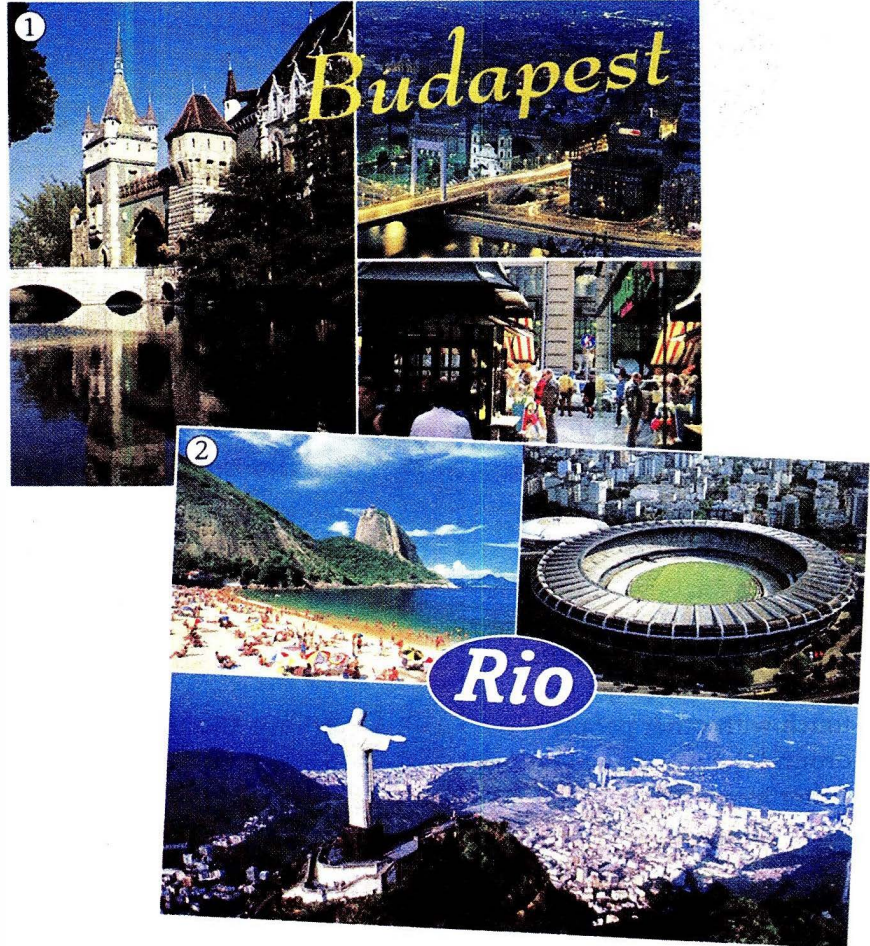
Town facilities

1 Look at the postcards from famous places. Can you see these things in the postcards?

- a bridge ✓
- a park
- a statue
- a castle
- a sports stadium
- a pedestrian street
- a shopping center
- a museum/art gallery
- a hill
- fashionable stores
- an interesting building
- a square
- a beach
- a river

2 [14.1] Listen and write down what the names refer to.

- a **Budapest**
- Elizabeth = the name of the bridge
 - Danube =
 - Váci =
 - Heroes' =
- b **Rio de Janeiro**
- Maracaná =
 - Copacabana =
 - Corcovado =



3 [14.2] Complete the blanks with **one** or **two** words from the recording. Then listen and check your answers.

- a are all pictures of my city, which is Budapest, in Hungary.
- b And in the picture a bridge.
- c It's the most famous bridges over the River Danube.
- d There's of the Maracaná Stadium.
- e You can also the famous beach at Copacabana.

4 Work in pairs. Look at the postcards on page 138. Describe what you can see in each picture.

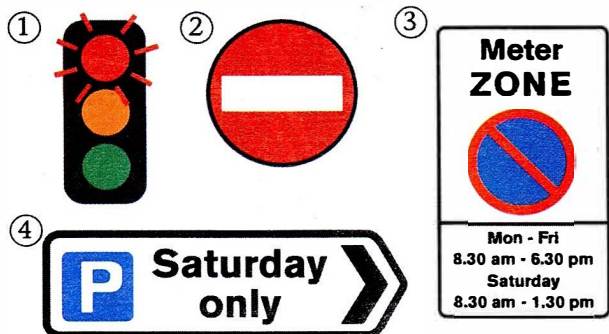
This is a picture of ...
In the picture you can see ...

Language focus 1

have to, don't have to, can, and can't

Here are four signs you see in towns. Which sign means:

- you **can't** drive in this direction?
- you **have to** stop?
- you **don't have to** pay on a Sunday?
- you **can** park here on a Saturday?



Grammar

Look at the verbs in bold in a–d. Which verb means:

- it is **necessary** to do something? **have to**.
- it is **not necessary** to do something (but you can do it if you want)?
- it is **OK** (or it is **permitted**) to do something?
- it is **not OK** (or it is **prohibited**) to do something?

► *Language summary A page 149.*

Pronunciation

- Look at the pronunciation of *have to* and *don't have to*.

have to go *don't have to go*
/hæftə/ /hæftə/

- [14.3] Listen and copy the pronunciation.
 - You **have to** stop.
 - You **have to** buy a ticket.
 - You **don't have to** pay.
 - You **don't have to** drink it.
 - You **have to** go early.

Practice

Look at the regulations below. Use the pictures to complete the sentences with *have to, don't have to, can, or can't*.



- You **don't have to** buy your ticket the day before.
- You go to reception.
- You take photographs.
- You pay for children under eight.
- You go in before six o'clock.
- You pay if you're twelve years old.
- You use your cellphone.
- You bring your dog.
- You smoke here.

Language focus 2

Prepositions of movement

Read about Richard. Choose a word from the box to complete sentences a-j.

- | | | | | |
|---------|----------|-------------------|-------|-------|
| bridge | building | road | steps | taxi |
| airport | statue | stairs | park | river |

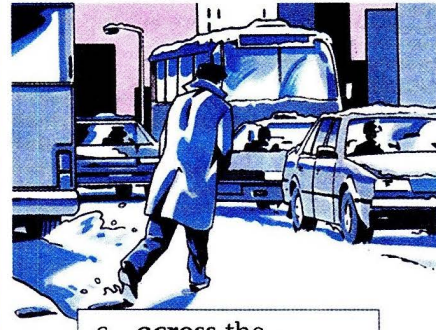
One day, Richard had a problem at work, so he went for a walk ... a very long walk. He walked ...



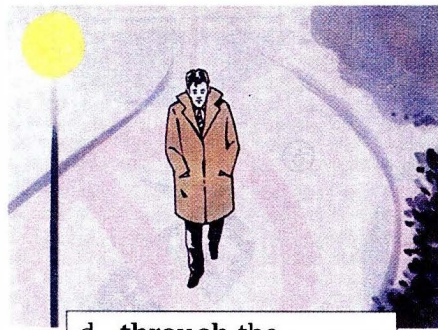
a down the ~~stairs~~



b out of the



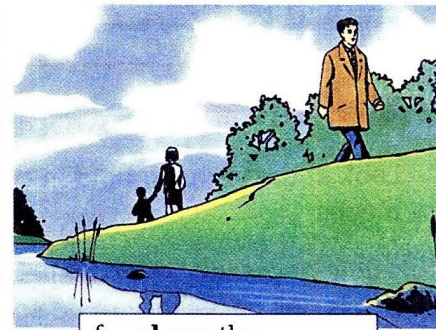
c across the



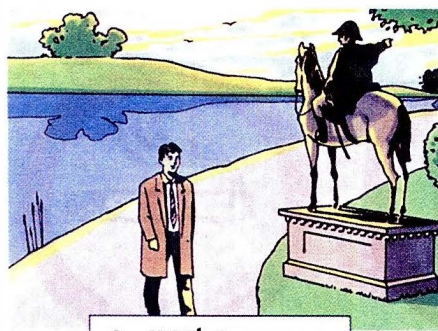
d through the



e over the



f along the



g past a



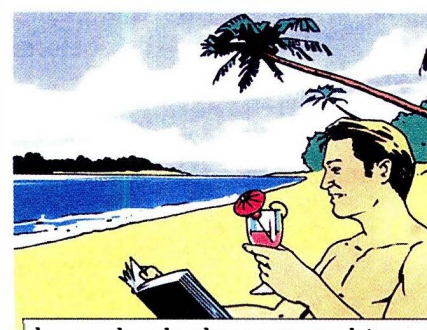
h up some



i then he got into a



j which drove him from the river to the



k and nobody ever saw him again!!

Grammar

Prepositions of movement

through



across



past



along



over



out of



into



up



down



from



to

► Language summary C page 149.

Practice

1 Test your prepositions. Close your books and try to describe Richard's walk in pairs.

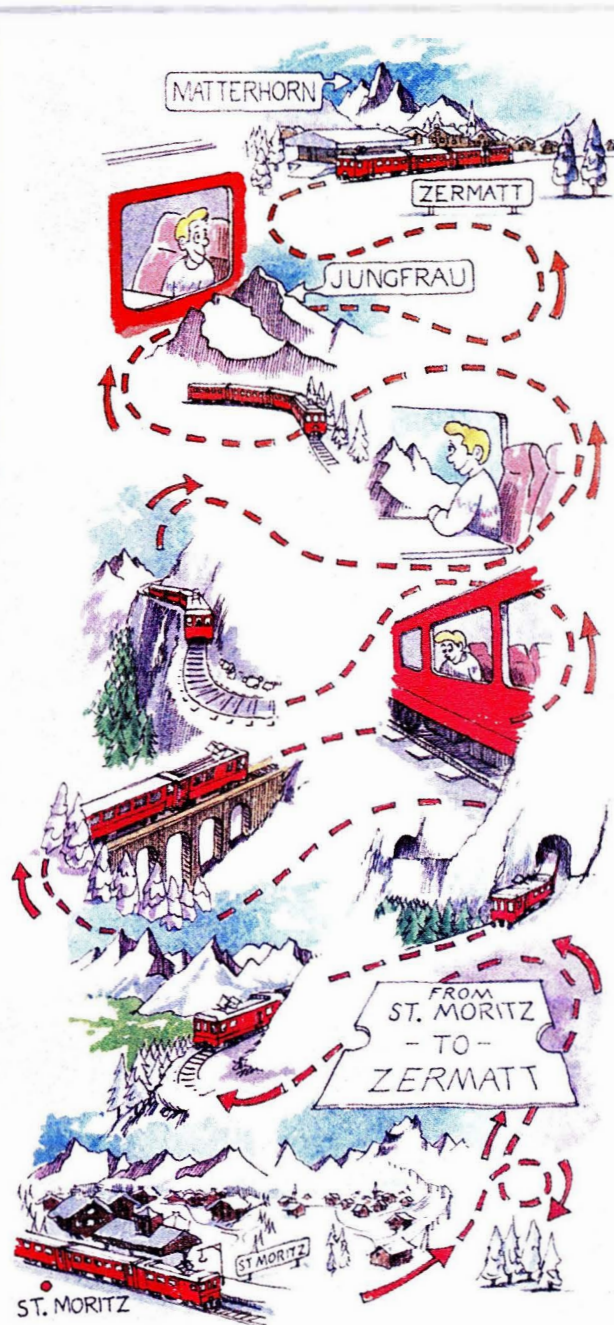
2 **MD** a) Which country does this picture show? Which things can you see?

a journey scenery track tunnel ski resort

b) **MD** [14.4] Complete the blanks in the text with a preposition. Listen and check your answers.

The Glacier Express

As your train moves (1) the little railroad station at St. Moritz, prepare yourself for a day to remember! The journey (2) the ski resort of St. Moritz (3) the attractive town of Zermatt in central Switzerland is only 290 km, but on the way it passes (4) some of the most beautiful scenery in Europe. During its journey, the train goes (5) ninety-one tunnels, and travels (6) almost 300 bridges – if you don't like heights, don't look (7) when you travel (8) the Oberalp Pass: The track is almost 2,000 m high! As you look (9) the train window, you can see some of Switzerland's most fantastic mountains – the train goes (10) mountains like the famous Jungfrau. And as your train comes (11) the station at Zermatt, if you look (12), you will see the Matterhorn – Switzerland's highest mountain.



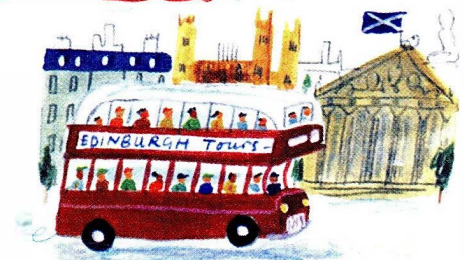


Listening

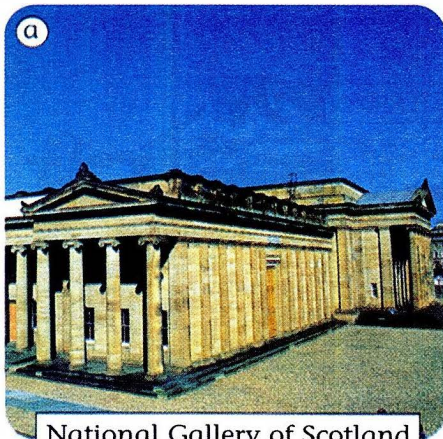
1 Where is Edinburgh? What do you know about it? Look at the pictures to help you.

2 [14.5] Read about Rosa and Rodney. Listen to the guided tour as they travel around the city by bus. Match the pictures with the extracts.

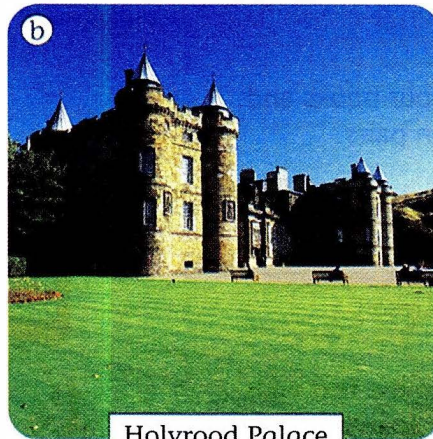
Extract 1 Extract 2 Extract 3
 Extract 4 Extract 5 and



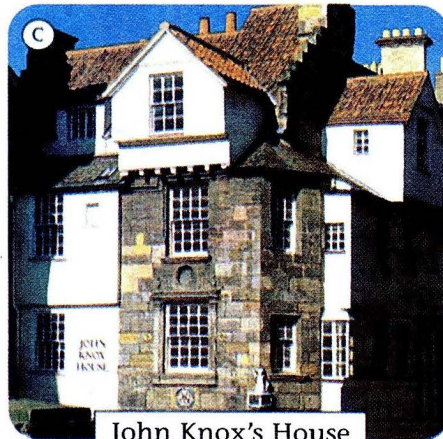
Rosa and Rodney are American. They are on vacation in Scotland. They take a bus tour of Edinburgh and listen to a guide as they travel around the city.



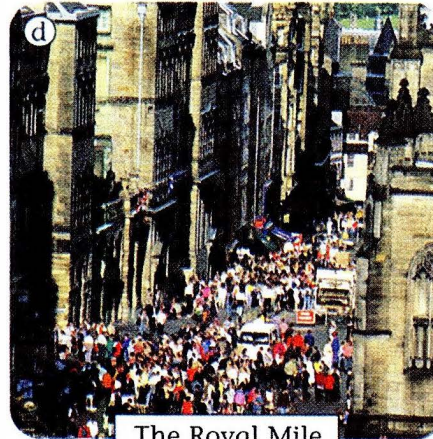
National Gallery of Scotland



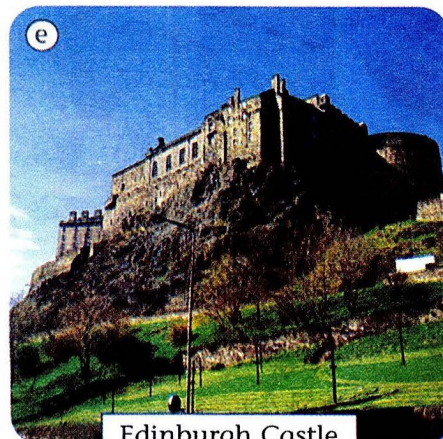
Holyrood Palace



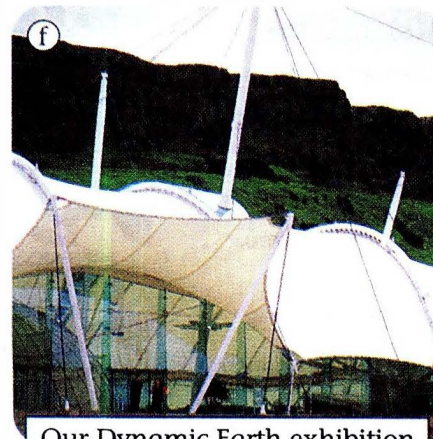
John Knox's House



The Royal Mile



Edinburgh Castle



Our Dynamic Earth exhibition

3 Listen again and complete the blanks with the correct number.

- a St. Margaret's Chapel – the oldest part of Edinburgh Castle – is years old.
- b The Royal Mile is Edinburgh's longest street. It's about kilometers long.
- c John Knox's house is about years old.
- d John Knox was a religious reformer who died in
- e There are about paintings in the National Gallery of Scotland.
- f The Gallery opens at o'clock.
- g The Our Dynamic Earth exhibition opened in
- h A family ticket for five people costs

4 Ask your partner some questions about Edinburgh, like this:

How old is St. Margaret's Chapel?

Real life

Directions

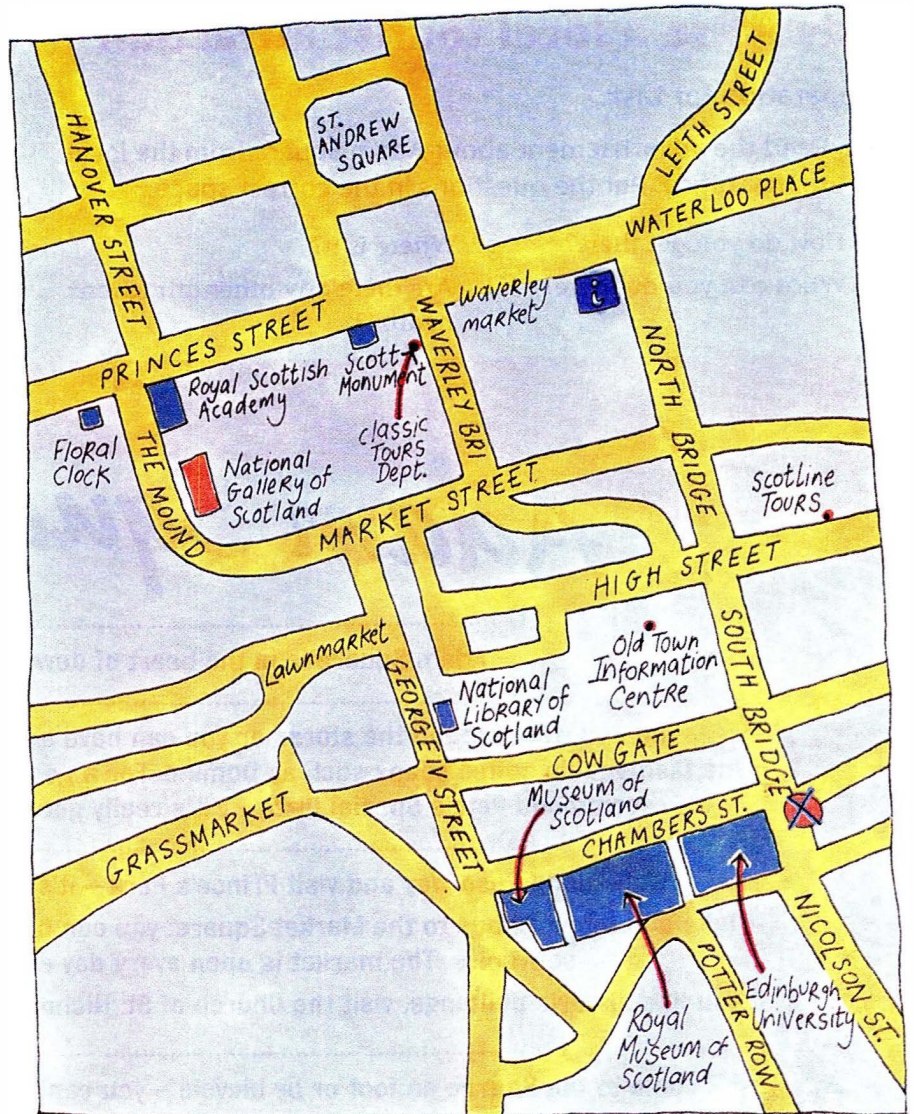


1 Rosa and Rodney decide to visit the National Gallery of Scotland, but they get lost! Rosa asks for directions.

a) Find the National Gallery of Scotland on the map. Find Rosa and Rodney.

b) Put the directions below into the correct order.

- ... go straight on for about 500 meters ... past the market and the Scott Monument on your left ...
- that street's called the Mound ... you go straight on
- ... and carry on for about 500 meters until the end of this road, North Bridge ...
- go along this road ... over South Bridge there ...
- when you come to the tourist information center on the corner ... turn left into Princes Street
- and just before the Floral Clock, turn left ...
- it's the second big building on your left ...



c) [14.6] Listen and check the order.

2 Look at phrases 1–7 and choose the best way to complete them.

- | | |
|--|------------------------|
| 1 Carry on | a the Floral Clock |
| 2 Go straight | b until the end |
| 3 The Museum is | c right |
| 4 Just before/after | d for about 500 meters |
| 5 Walk along this road | e street on your right |
| 6 It's the third | f on your left |
| 7 When you come to the movie theater, turn | g on |

3 Choose two places on the map. Give your partner directions to the second place, but do not tell him/her where it is.

Advertise a local tourist attraction

Preparation for task

1 Read the advertisement about Adam Square from the local tourist office. Put the questions in the correct space.

- a How do you get there? c Where is it?
 b What can you do there? d Are there any other attractions nearby?

2 Say four things that visitors can do on Adam Square.

They can walk around the stores.

Welcome to the town's greatest attraction!

Adam Square!



(1) ?

Adam Square is in the heart of downtown.

(2) ?

You can walk around the stores or you can have a cup of coffee. Try one of the fashionable coffee shops such as Domino. For a good meal, go to Pete's Pizzeria: we recommend Pete's Special Pizza ... it's really good and not too expensive!

(3) ?

Walk along Rose Way and visit Prince's Park – it's perfect for children.

Take a number 32 bus to the Market Square: you can buy fruit and vegetables, or souvenirs. The market is open every day except Sunday.

If you like historic buildings, visit the Church of St. Nicholas. It's nearly 500 years old.

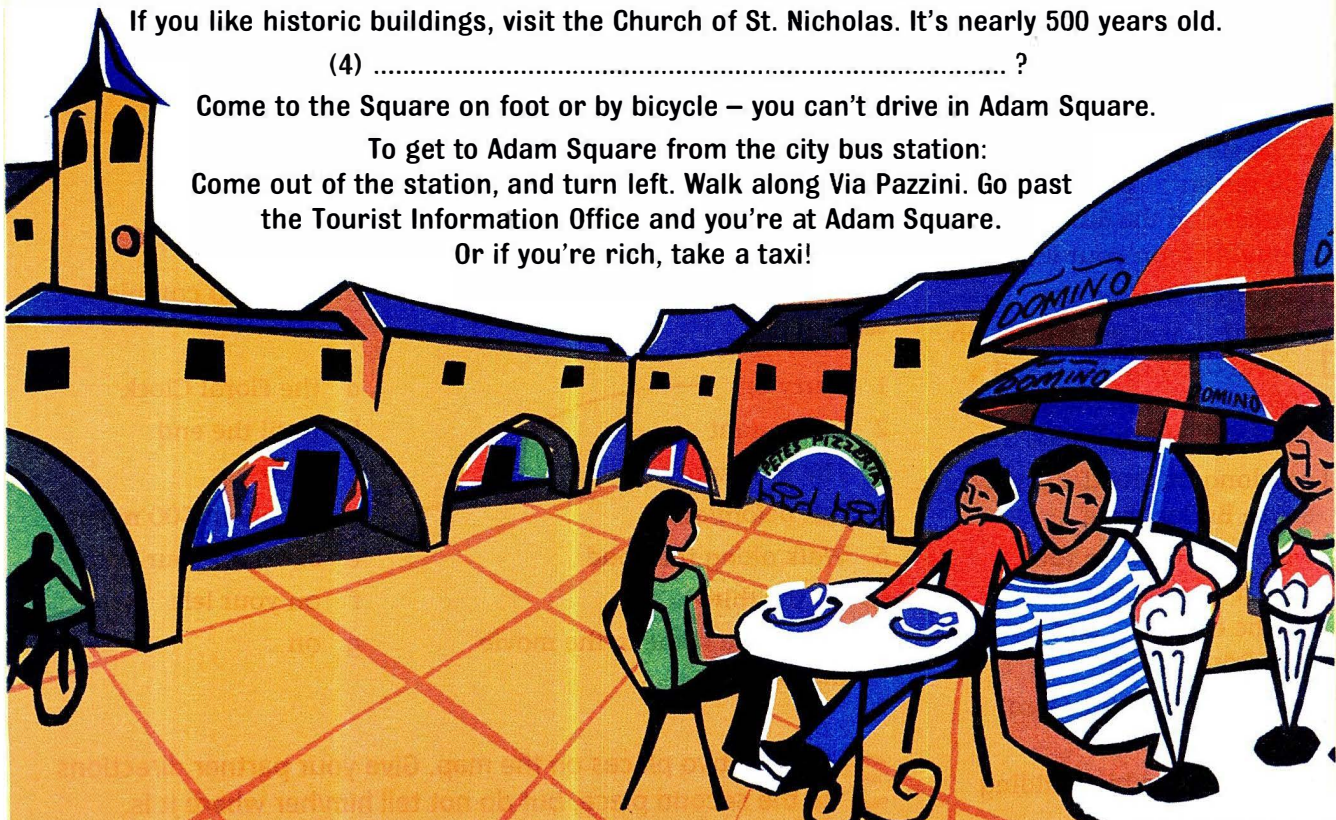
(4) ?

Come to the Square on foot or by bicycle – you can't drive in Adam Square.

To get to Adam Square from the city bus station:

Come out of the station, and turn left. Walk along Via Pazzini. Go past the Tourist Information Office and you're at Adam Square.

Or if you're rich, take a taxi!



Task

1 Work in a group. Think of a place in your town or a nearby town that is interesting for tourists. Make notes about:

- where it is.
- what you can do there.
- other interesting places to go that are nearby.
- where to have a walk.
- old buildings/monuments.
- how to get there from the bus/railroad station.

2 Make up a poster like the one on page 120 OR record your description on to cassette. You can use the same questions as the ones in the advertisement.

Useful language

Welcome to ...

You can (*visit the historic center*).

We recommend (*Joe's Bar*).

If you like (*shopping, go to ...*).

To get to (*the old town*), take a bus from the station.

It's open from (*9*) to (*5 p.m.*).

Do you remember?

1 Complete the words.

- a) It goes up! h l l l
b) It's near the sea. b _ _ _ _
c) You can look at pictures here. a _ _ g _ _ _ _ _
d) Kings and queens lived here. c _ _ _ _ _
e) There are a lot of stores together here. s _ _ _ _ _ c _ _ _ _ _
f) You can watch soccer here. s _ _ _ _ _
g) You can play soccer here! p _ _ _

2 Look at the sentences below. Check them (✓) if they are true about your city or town and change them if they are not true.

- a) In parks, you can walk on the grass.
No, in public parks you can't walk on the grass.
b) You can't eat or drink on trains.
c) You have to stop your car when people walk across the street.
d) You can smoke in restaurants.
e) You can't park your car downtown.
f) You have to ride your bicycle on the sidewalk.
g) You can't take a dog into a store.
h) You don't have to pay to go into a museum or an art gallery.

3 Write two prepositions of movement for each noun.

- a) drive *along* ./..... a river e) walk ./..... the stairs
b) walk ./..... a building f) get ./..... a car
c) drive ./..... an airport g) run ./..... a park
d) go ./..... a road

4 Is the pronunciation of the bold letters the same (S) or different (D)?

- a hill library **D**
b museum street
c **a**irport square
d statue steps
e building bridge
f stadium park

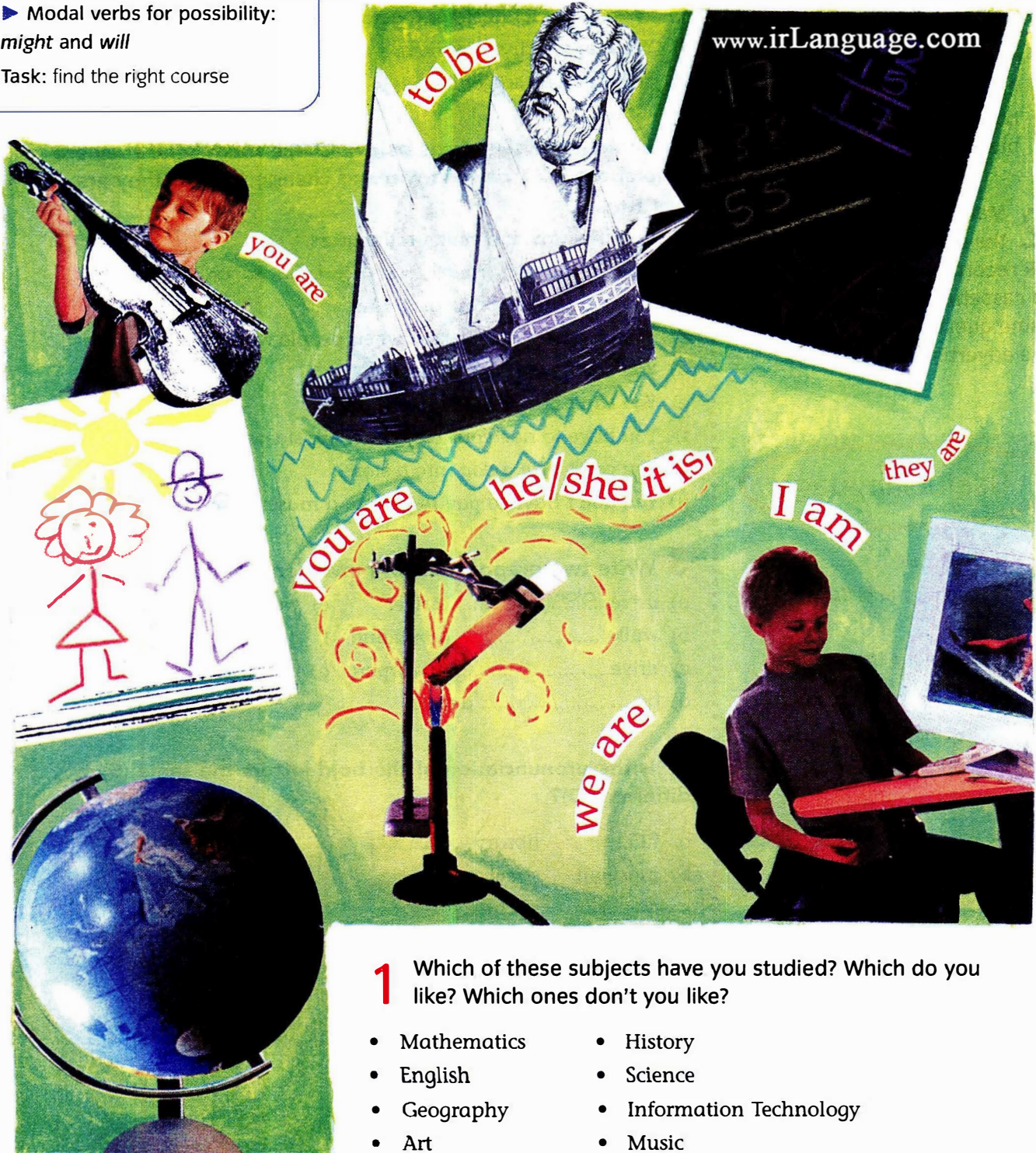
module 15

English for the future

- ▶ Vocabulary: education and learning
 - ▶ Infinitive of purpose
 - ▶ Modal verbs for possibility: *might* and *will*
- Task: find the right course

Vocabulary


Education and learning




1 Which of these subjects have you studied? Which do you like? Which ones don't you like?

- Mathematics
- English
- Geography
- Art
- History
- Science
- Information Technology
- Music

Pronunciation

 [15.1] Listen to the words. Mark the stressed syllable. Practice saying the words.


Mathematics	college
History	elementary
English	qualification
Geography	foreign languages
Information Technology	

2  Check the meaning of the words in **bold**. Then discuss the questions in groups.

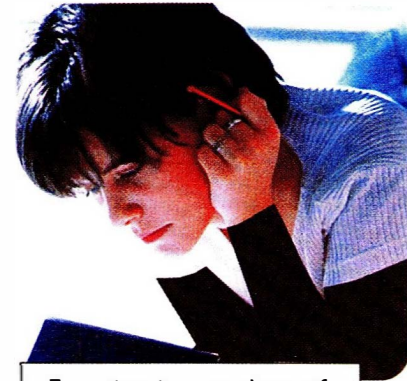
- a Which subjects are you **good at**?
- b Can you remember your first teacher? What was his/her name? What did he/she **teach** you?
- c Which did/do you like best, **elementary school** or **high school**?
Why?
- d What **qualifications** do you need to be a teacher in your country? Do you need to be a **graduate**?
- e Are you **taking** any **courses** at the moment (apart from this one)?
- f Are you going to **take** any **exams** this year? Do you think you'll pass them or **fail** them?
- g Which **foreign languages** do people study in your country?
At what age do they start?
- h Do you study any other foreign languages? Would you like to?

Language focus 1

Infinitive of purpose

 [15.2] Listen to what Francine and Bill say about their education. Answer the questions.

- a How well did they do at school?
- b What did/do they study?
- c Why is Francine going to Portugal next year?
- d Why did Bill go to college?



Francine is a student of Modern Languages at the University of Manchester.



Bill owns his own computer company.

Grammar

We often use the infinitive (*to + verb*) to say **why** we do things:

*Next year I'm going to Lisbon **to study** Portuguese.*

*I went to college **to get** some qualifications.*

► *Language summary A page 149.*

Practice

1 **a)** Match the verbs in the box with the pictures.

b) Make sentences using the ideas in the pictures and the phrases in the box.

- borrow
- look for
- pass her exams
- find a better job
- go to a good college
- go sightseeing
- improve
- study
- use

a Jo went to the library ...
 to study for her exams.

b Paolo came to London ...

c Selina needs to work hard ...

2 Why do people do these things? Tell a partner.

- a go to the mountains
- b use a dictionary
- c use a credit card
- d catch a bus
- e go to the supermarket
- f go abroad
- g use a computer

Why do people go to the mountains?

to go skiing

to go walking



Jo



Paolo



Selina

Listening

An expert talks about the English language



John Summers

1 Look at the four statements. Which ideas do you think are true?

- a English is an easy language to learn.
true/false/not sure
- b The pronunciation and spelling of English are quite easy.
true/false/not sure
- c More people study English than any other language around the world.
true/false/not sure
- d Half the people in the world speak English now.
true/false/not sure

2 [15.3] Listen to John Summers. Are your ideas the same?

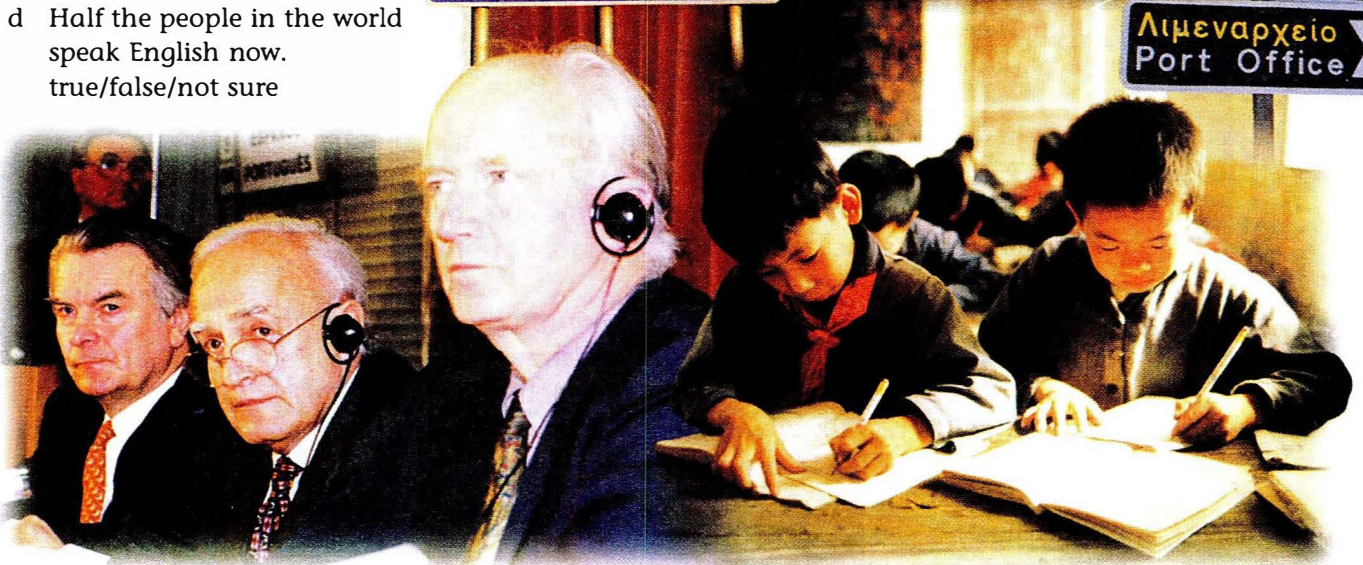
3 Listen again and answer questions a–g.

PART A

- a How many forms of the verb are there in Latin?
- b How many forms of the verb are there in English?
- c What forms of the verb *go* does he give?
- d What is more difficult in English than in some other languages?

PART B

- e There are more people learning English in China than
- f About how many people are learning English all over the world now?
- g When will 50 percent of the world's population speak English, according to some experts?



Reading

1 In what ways is your language easier or more difficult than English? Why?

Think about these areas:

- vocabulary.
- spelling.
- pronunciation.
- grammar.

2 Read the text “Easy English?” Which paragraph:

- a is about a man who invented a new English with a smaller vocabulary?
- b is about a man who tried to change the spelling of English?
- c introduces the topic?
- d is about how email is changing English?
- e is about a form of English that people use at sea?

Easy English?

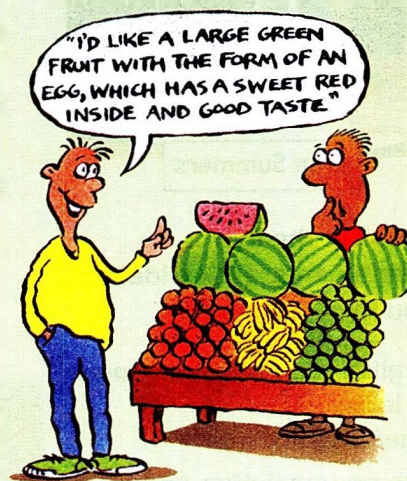
1 English is an important global language – but that doesn't mean it's easy to learn. Many experts have tried to make English easier for students to learn ... but they weren't always successful.

2 In 1930, Professor C. K. Ogden of Cambridge University invented Basic English ... it had only 850 words (and just eighteen verbs!), and Ogden said most people could learn it in just thirty hours ... The problem was that those people who learned Basic English could write and say simple messages ... but they couldn't understand the answers in “real” English! It was also impossible to explain a word that wasn't in the Basic English word list; so if you wanted a watermelon, you asked for “a large green fruit with the form of an egg, which has a sweet red inside and a good taste.”

3 R. E. Zachrisson, a college professor in Sweden, decided that the biggest problem for learners of English was spelling ... so he invented a language called Anglic. Anglic was similar to English but with much simpler spelling. “Father” became “faadher,” “new” became “nue” ... and “years” became “yeerz.” Sadly, Anglic never became popular.

4 Even easier is the language that ships' captains use: it's called “Seaspeak.” Seaspeak uses a few simple phrases for every possible situation. In “Seaspeak,” for example, you don't say “I'm sorry, what did you say?” or “I didn't understand, can you repeat that?” ... it's just “Say again.” No more grammar!

5 In the age of computers and international communication through the Internet, who knows? ... a new form of English might appear. A large number of the world's email messages are in English and include examples of NetLingo like OIC (Oh, I see!) and TTYL (Talk to you later). In another fifty years English as we know it might not exist ... we will probably all speak fluent Internetish!!



3 Ask and answer these questions with a partner.

- a When did Professor Ogden invent Basic English? How many words did it have?
- b Why did Professor Zachrisson invent Anglic? What happened to it?
- c Why is Seaspeak easier than ordinary English?
- d What is "Internetish," do you think?
- e Is it a good idea to learn Anglic or Seaspeak instead of English?
- f How would you like to change English to make it easier?

Language focus 2

Modal verbs for possibility: *might* and *will*

a) Check (✓) the statements if you agree and write a cross (X) if you don't agree.

- a Soon, nearly everyone will speak English.
- b People won't learn Latin any more.
- c English might not be the global language in a hundred years – it might be Chinese or Japanese instead.
- d Some "smaller" languages will disappear.

b) Compare your answers with the class.

Grammar

might and *will*

a Number the sentences 1–4 .

(1 = most possible)

- English might not be the global language.
- English won't be the global language.
- English will be the global language.
- English might be the global language.

b Underline the verbs of possibility.

c Notice these short forms:

They'll (= *will*) disappear.

They won't (= *will not*) disappear.

► Language summary B page 149.

Practice

1 Complete each sentence. Use *might*, *might not*, and *'ll (will)*.

- a If you work hard, you (*pass your exams*).
- b In the future, people (*go to college*): they (*study at home*) using their computer.
- c Tom isn't sure what he wants to do when he leaves high school: he (*go to college*) or he (*go abroad*) for a year.
- d Why not do a course in Japanese? You never know – you (*need*) to speak it one day!
- e Deniz doesn't like her teacher: she thinks she (*change*) her class soon.
- f Some teachers are worried that one day computers (*take*) their jobs.

2 Complete these sentences so that they are true for you. You can write about:

- where you live.
- getting married or not.
- being rich.
- speaking English.
- other ideas.

- a Next winter I might go to Austria.
- b Next summer I might
- c Next year I'll
- d In ten years' time I might
- e I might not ever
- f I won't ever

3 Work with a partner. Talk about your answers.

Next winter I might go to Austria.

Oh, why?

Because I'd like to go skiing.

Find the right course

Preparation for task


1 These three students are choosing a course at the West Midlands College of Technology (WEMCOT). Read the notes about each student.



Clara
19 years old.
Left school last year.
Not sure what job she'd like to do – but she doesn't want to work in an office.
Hobbies: playing soccer, swimming, traveling, and meeting people.



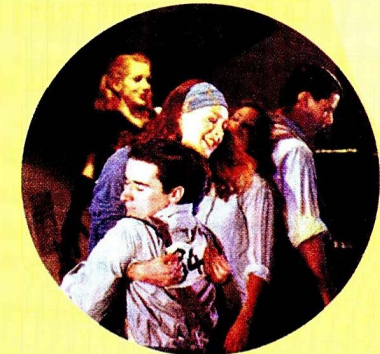
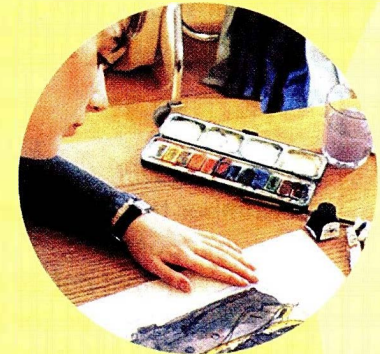
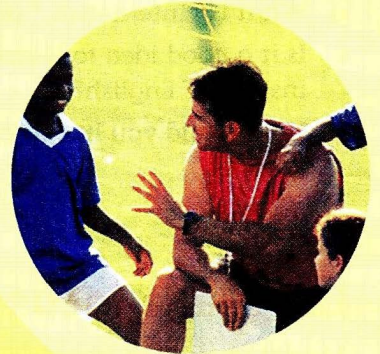
Taka
From Japan. 27 years old.
Works as a fashion designer.
Going to stay in England for one year.
Enjoys art and photography.
Wants to learn more about computers.



Ben
18 years old.
Plays in a rock band with his friends.
Enjoys drama.
Likes computers.
Wants to be rich and famous one day!

2 **MD** Read about the different courses and answer questions a–c.

- a Which course is for people who want to work in sports centers?
- b Which course teaches photography?
- c Which courses are one-year courses?



Leisure and Tourism

For people interested in a career in tourism.

- Marketing and promotion
- Customer service
- Information technology

The course is one year, full-time. You must be at least 16 years old, with ...

Sports Studies

For people who would like to work in sports/leisure centers, swimming pools, etc.

- Health and safety
- Sports coaching
- Fitness and diet

This is a two-year, full-time course open to people over 16 years of age ...

choose your COURSE

Basic Information Technology

For people who would like to work in business or industry.

- Computing for business and industry
- Using information technology
- Programming and software

This course is one year, full-time. You must be at least 16, with an interest in computers ...

Art and Design

A course to help you find work in the fashion and media industries. Subjects include:

- Clothes design
- Using computer software
- Photography

Two years, full-time.

Students must be at least 16 ...

Performing Arts

Includes music, dance, drama in the first year. In the second year, students can choose special subjects such as:

- Singing
- Directing
- Marketing

Students must be at least 16 at the time of entry. The course is two years, full-time.

Task

1 a) Which course do you think each of the students will choose?

Clara

Course:

Why?

Taka

Course:


Why?

Ben

Course:

Why?

b) Compare your answers in pairs.

2  [15.4] Listen to the three students talking about which courses they chose. Did they choose the same courses as you?

Useful language

Comparing your ideas

"I think the best course for (Clara) is (Leisure and Tourism)."

"(Ben) will/might choose (Sports Studies)."

"He might like to do a course in (Art and Design)."

"... because (s)he likes (computers)."

Do you agree?

"I think (Leisure and Tourism) is better for (Clara) because"

"I don't think he'll choose (Art and Design) because (it is a two-year course)."

Real life: writing

Completing an application form



Adriana is Italian. She wants to improve her English to get a better job.

1 a) Adriana decides to do a course in English. Match the personal details with the questions on the application form (Section A). (n/a = not applicable, or no information.)

Personal details

farinelli@bellquell.lak.it

n/a MS

no visa Farinelli

Adriana Paola

11-20-1983

Via Ezio 60, 04300
Latina, Italy

7 53 58 285

female

Same as daytime
number

02426439

Italian

APPLICATION FORM

WEMCOT
(West Midlands College of Technology)

English as a Foreign Language

Please complete this form using **BLOCK LETTERS**.

Section A Personal Details

- 1 Title: (Mr. / Mrs. / Miss / Ms. / Dr. etc.)
- 2 Surname:
- 3 First Name(s):
- 4 Date of Birth: Day Month Year
- 5 Sex: Male Female
- 6 Nationality:
- 7 Home Address:
- 8 Telephone No: a) Day: b) Evening:
- 9 Fax number:
- 10 Email address:
- 11 Passport No:
- 12 a) Have you got a student/tourist visa?
b) Date of expiry:

Section B Course Details

- 1 Start Date:
- 2 for Terms (Maximum 4)
Term 1 Term 2 Term 3 Term 4
Jan – March April – June July – Sep Oct – Dec
- 3 Why do you want to study English at WEMCOT?
.....
.....

- 4 What level do you think your English is?
Elementary Lower Intermediate Intermediate
Higher Intermediate Advanced Proficiency

You will have a test on the first day of the course.

Signed:

Date:

b) Complete Adriana's answer to Section B question 3.

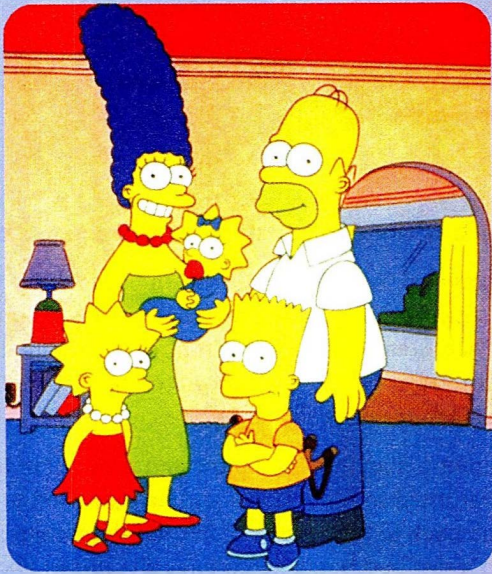
2 Now complete Section A and Section B for yourself. You can invent information.

Consolidation

modules 11–15

A Verb practice

Write the correct form of the verb in parentheses. You can use the Present Simple, the Past Simple, or the Present Perfect.



Matt Groening is the man who (1) invented (*invent*) the world's most popular cartoon. People in almost 100 countries (2) (*watch*) *The Simpsons* every week. Groening (3) (*be born*) in Portland, Oregon, in 1954. When he (4) (*be*) twenty-six he (5) (*start*) drawing cartoons for the *Los Angeles Reader*, a weekly newspaper. In 1986 Matt (6) (*invent*) the Simpson family for the popular *Tracey Ullman Show*. He (7) (*give*) them the names of his family: Matt's father's name is Homer, his mother is Margaret, and he (8) (*have*) two sisters, Lisa and Maggie.

The short *Simpsons* cartoons (9) (*be*) very popular, and in 1989 Fox studios (10) (*pay*) twenty million dollars for Groening to produce thirteen thirty-minute programs. After the first show at Christmas 1989, *The Simpsons* (11) (*make*) two billion dollars just for Simpson T-shirts, toys, and other merchandise!

Groening and his artists, musicians, and actors (12) (*make*) twelve series of programs up to now. People of all ages, from seven to seventy all (13) (*love*) it!

B Articles

Complete the blanks in the joke with *a*, *an*, *the*, or the zero article (\emptyset)

It was (1) \emptyset fine summer day in Sherwood Forest in (2) England, and the year was 1194. Early in (3) morning (4) poor man went into (5) forest to try and find some wood for his fire. Suddenly (6) man wearing (7) green shirt and (8) green pants rode up and dropped (9) bag of money into (10) poor man's hands. "Who are you?" asked (11) poor man. "I'm Robin Hood," said (12) man in green. "I take (13) money from rich people and I give it to poor people." "Hurrah! hurrah!" said (14) poor man. "I'm rich! I'm rich!" Robin Hood thought for (15) minute. Then he took out his sword. He pointed (16) sword at (17) man and said, "Rich, are you? Well, then, give me (18) money!"

C Writing and speaking

1 **Work in pairs. Choose one of the following situations and write a short conversation (7–10 lines). Use the page numbers to help you.**

- This is the end of your English course. Talk to another student about your plans or interview a famous person on television about his or her plans.
Module 12 page 99 and Module 15 page 127
- An English-speaking tourist is lost in your town and asks you for directions (first decide where you are in town). Give her/him directions.
Module 14 page 119
- Telephone a school in Britain. Ask for some information about courses for learning English. You also want to find out about accommodation.
Module 13 page 111 and Module 15 page 128
- You are sitting in a coffee shop with an Australian friend. It is in the afternoon and you want to go somewhere together in the evening. Try to decide where to go.
Module 12 page 101

2 Now practice your conversation. Where are the stressed words? Do you need to use polite intonation?

3 Act out your conversation in front of the class or a group.

D Listening: song *Trains and Boats and Planes*

Trains and Boats and Planes

Trains and boats and planes are going by

They mean a journey to Paris or Rome

To someone else but not for me.

The trains and boats and planes

Carried you away, away from me.

We are so in love, and high above

We had a ring to wish upon. Wish

And dreams come true, but not for me

The trains and boats and planes

Carried you away, away from me.

You are from another part of the country,

You had to go back a while and then

You said you soon would come back again.

I wait here like I promised to.

I wait here but where are you?

Trains and boats and planes took you away,

But every time I watch them I pray

And if my prayers can cross the land

The trains and the boats and planes

Will bring you back, back here to me.

(Burt Bacharach)

1 The words in the box are all in the song. Work in pairs. Check the meaning of any words you don't know. What do you think the story of the song is?

Paris in love waiting promised a trip
had to go back wish Rome a star

2 [1] Look at the lines printed in red in the song opposite. Find one word that is different from the song. Listen and circle the word that is different.

3 Listen to the song again and write in the correct words.

going → passing

4 Which is the correct story of the song, a or b?

- a He traveled to Paris and Rome on vacation by train and boat and plane. He met her and they fell in love and had dreams about their future, but she had to return to her country. He promised to visit her but he didn't, so she feels very unhappy.
- b She met a man in her country and they fell in love. He returned to his country and he promised to come back to her, but he didn't. Usually when she sees trains and boats and planes she thinks about vacations and feels happy, but now when she sees them she thinks of him and is unhappy.

5 Speak to your partner

- a Do you have any friends from different countries? Where and when did you meet them?
- b Have you ever met someone nice or interesting on vacation? Where and when?

Communication

activities

Module 1: Task, Exercise 1,
page 15

Student A

US DRIVER'S LICENSE



Full Name
Christina Elizabeth NAGANO

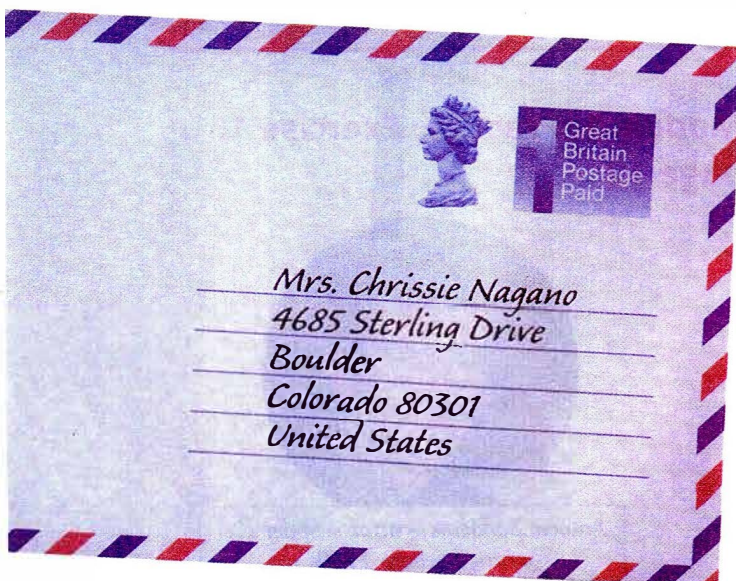
Date of Birth 10/10/76

Creations

Chrissie Nagano
Marketing Manager

Fax 324 • 471 • 0807
Cellphone 324 • 809 • 6439
Email chrissie@creations.com

Digital Creations for a Changing Planet





Consolidation 6–10: Listening, song,
Exercise E, page 89

Return to Sender

1 Listen to the song and complete the sentences.

I gave a letter to the postman,
He (1)..... it in his sack.
Bright and early next morning,
He (2) my letter back.




She wrote upon it:
"Return to sender, (3) unknown.
No such number, no such zone." ¹

We (4) a quarrel, ² a lover's spat. ²
I write "I'm sorry," but my letter keeps
coming back.

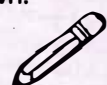
So when I (5) it in the mailbox
I sent it "special D." ³

Bright and (6) next morning
It came right back to me.



She (7) upon it:
"Return to sender, address unknown.
No such (8), no such zone."

This time I'm gonna (9) it myself
And put it right in her hand.
And if it (10) back the very next day
Then I'll understand the writing on it
Return to sender, address unknown.
No such person, no such zone.



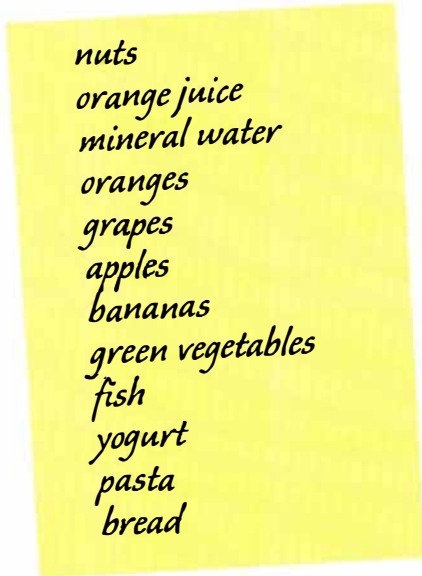
¹ a zone = a part of a city or town
² a quarrel/a spat = an angry argument (not an important one)
³ special D = special delivery

(Otis Blackwell – Winfield Scott)

2 Now check your answers with Student A.

Module 6: Practice, Exercise 1, page 51

Katie's shopping list



The Scotland Bank Account
CURRENT ACCOUNT STATEMENT

Account name J. S. Burden
Account number 89387239
Branch Edinburgh Dundas St.
 Tel 0131 663 1890

225 1 of 3 W042 UPA3 57033 006383

Mr J. S. Burden
 33b Stephen Street
 Edinburgh
 EH3 8AG

Module 1: Task, Exercise 1a), page 15

Student B

Student Card

Name
Mr. James Stuart Burden

Place of Study
University of Edinburgh

Course of Study
Art History

Contact Telephone Number 0131 228 4275

Email Address j.burden@edinb.ac.uk

This card entitles you to use the facilities of the Students' Union, including the library, the computer center, and the bar. It should be carried at all times.

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

Passport / Passeport Type / Type Code of issuing / Code de l'Etat Passport No / Passeport No 700253853

P GBR

Surname / Nom (1)
BURDEN

Given names / Prénoms(2)
JAMES STUART

Nationality / Nationalité (3)
BRITISH CITIZEN

Date of birth / Date de naissance (4)
24 AUG / AOUT 83

Sex / Sexe(6) Place of birth / Lieu de naissance(7)
M EDINBURGH

Children / Enfants(5)
0

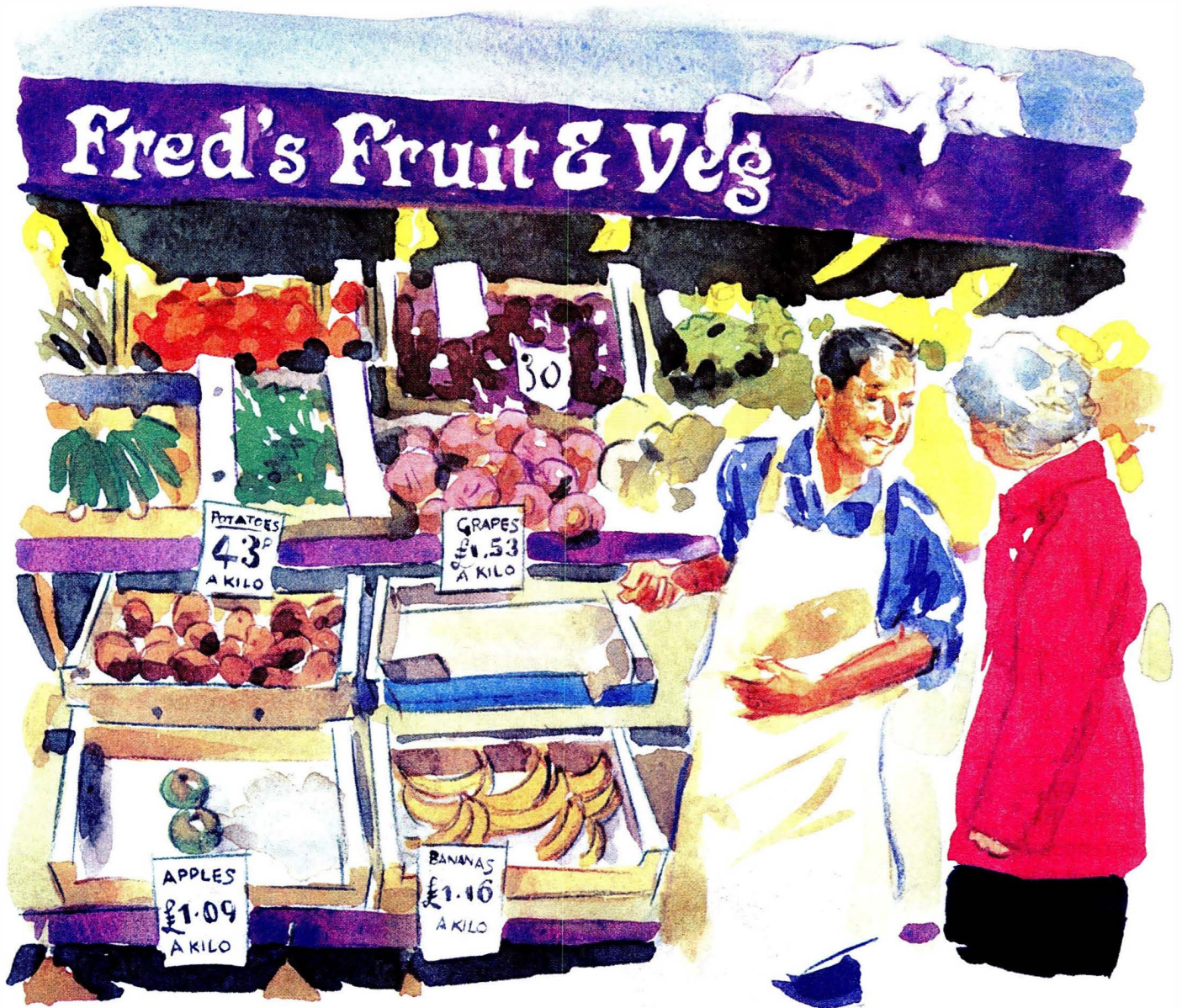
Module 1: Practice, Exercise 1, page 12

Antonio Banderas – actor – Spain – married – born 1960

Module 6: Task, Exercise 1, page 54

Student B

Find **eight** differences between this picture and Student A's picture. Describe your picture and ask questions. Mark the differences.

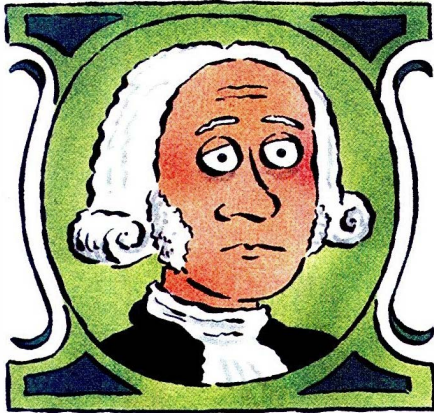


Module 7: Real life, Exercise 4, page 63

Student A

1 Read the sentences 1–5 to Student B. Student B gives you the dates or times to complete the sentences.

George Washington



- 1 George Washington was president of the USA
- 2 There is a US legal holiday on his birthday,
- 3 He was born
- 4 He signed the Declaration of Independence
- 5 He died

2 Listen to Student B's sentences. Tell Student B the dates or years to complete the sentences.



Christopher Columbus

- 1 fifteenth century.
- 2 on October 11th.
- 3 in 1451.
- 4 on August 3rd, 1492.
- 5 on May 20th, 1506.

Module 9: Real life, Exercise 4, page 80

Student A

1 Go to the general store and try to buy these things.

*shampoo
a cake
film for camera
baseball cap
postcards*

2 You are the sales clerk. Look at the information and serve the customer.

Prices

bananas £1.50 a kilo
stamps *Europe 30 pence Other 55 pence*
T-shirts *small £9.99 medium £10.99 large £11.99*
toothpaste
You don't sell batteries.

Module 1: Practice, Exercise 1, page 12



Céline Dion – singer – Canada – married – born 1968

Module 11: Reading, Exercise 2, page 91

Wolves attack and kill more than twenty people every year.

This sentence is false.

Module 10: Task, Exercise 1, page 87

1 Add **ten** of the things in the box to Picture B below. Do not show your picture to your partner!

the sun rain clouds headphones
 glasses sunglasses a baseball cap
 a ponytail a cellphone sneakers
 long hair short hair a large ice cream
 a piece of cake a cup of coffee a cigarette
 some happy faces some unhappy faces

2 When you finish your picture, turn back to page 87.



Module 9, Real life, Exercise 4, page 80

Student B

1 You are the sales clerk in a general store. Look at the information and serve the customer.

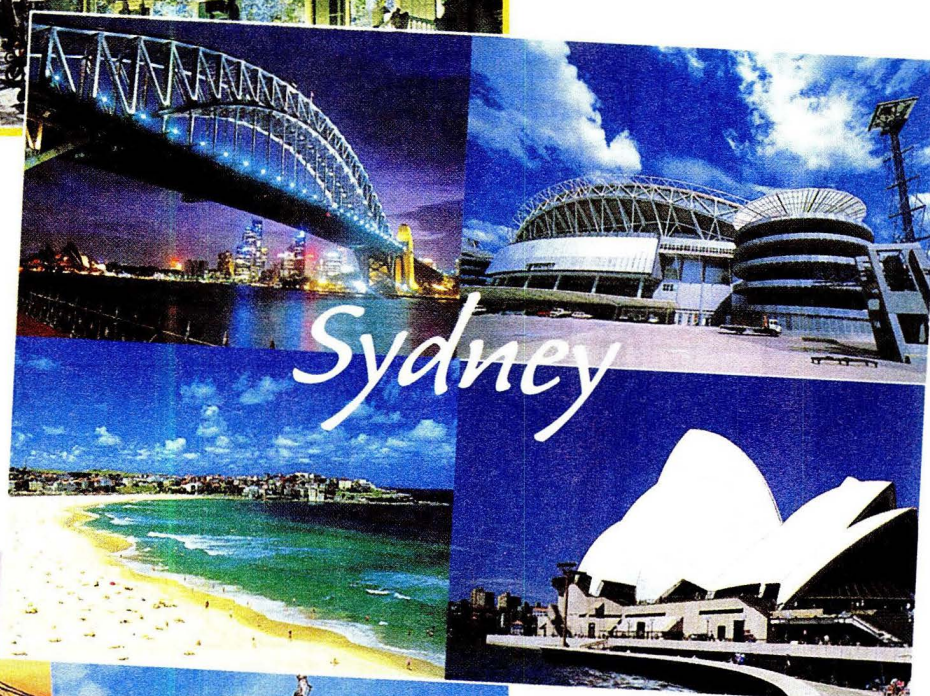
2 Go to a general store and try to buy these things.

Prices

film 24 frames £4.50 36 frames £5.00
 postcards 25 pence each
 cakes 60 pence or £5.00
 baseball caps small £3.00 medium £3.50 large £4.50
 You don't sell shampoo.

*stamps
 bananas
 batteries for a camera
 toothpaste
 a T-shirt*

Module 14: Vocabulary, Exercise 4, page 114

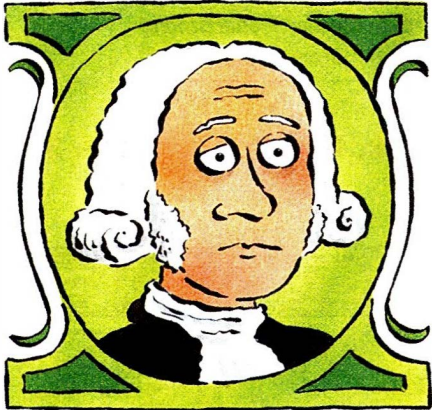


Module 7: Real life, Exercise 4, page 63

Student B

1 Listen to Student A's sentences. Tell Student A the dates or years from 1-5 to complete the sentences.

George Washington



- 1 in the 18th century.
- 2 February 22nd.
- 3 in 1732.
- 4 on July 4th, 1776.
- 5 on December 14th, 1799.

2 Read sentences 1-5 to Student A. Student A gives you the dates or times to complete the sentences.

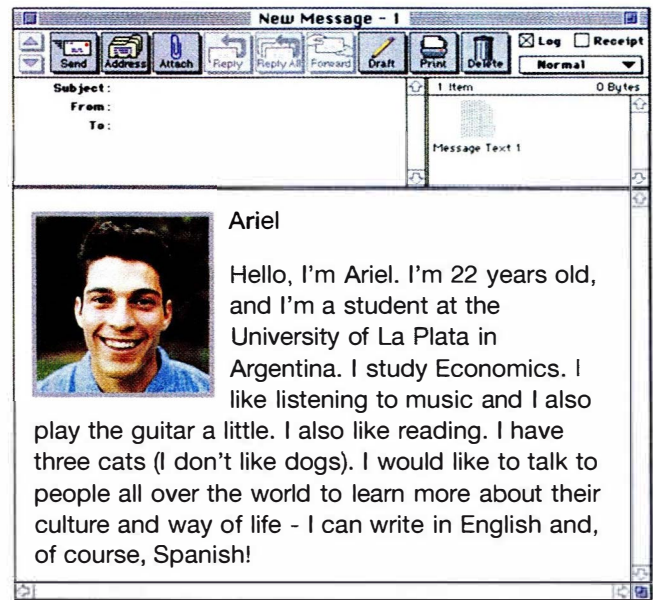
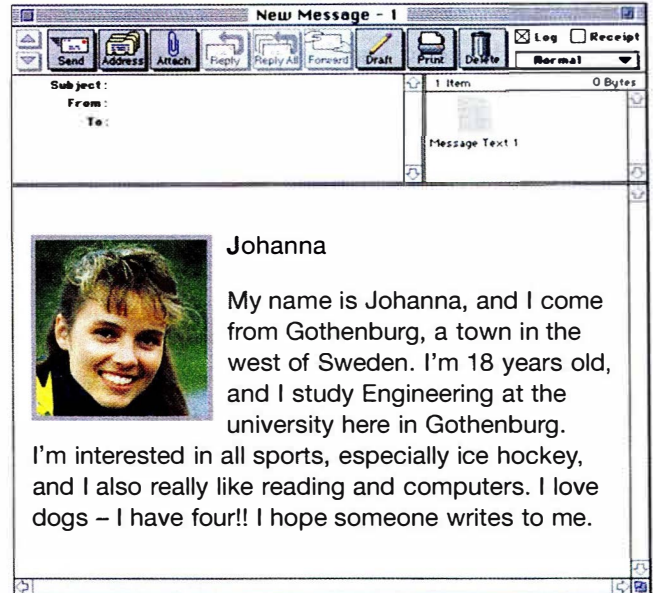


Christopher Columbus

- 1 Christopher Columbus was a famous explorer in the
- 2 People in many countries still celebrate Columbus Day
- 3 He was born -- probably in Italy
- 4 He left Spain for the New World
- 5 He died in Spain

Module 4: Task, Exercise 1, page 37

Student B



Module 1: Practice, Exercise 1, page 12



Naomi Campbell - model - Britain - not married - born 1970

Consolidation 6–10: Listening, song, Exercise E, page 89

Return to Sender

1 Listen to the song and complete the sentences.

I (1) a letter to the postman,
 He put it in his sack.
 Bright and early next (2)
 He brought my letter back.

She (3) upon it:
 "Return to sender, address unknown.
 No such (4), no such zone."¹
 We had a quarrel,² a lover's spat.²
 I write "I'm (5), " but my letter keeps
 coming back.

So when I dropped it in the mailbox
 I (6) it "special D."³
 Bright and early next morning
 It (7) right back to me.

She wrote upon it:
 "Return to sender (8) unknown.
 No such person, no such zone."

This time I'm gonna take it myself
 And (9) it right in her hand.
 And if it comes back the very next day
 Then I'll (10) the writing on it

Return to sender, address unknown.
 No such person, no such zone.

¹ a zone = a part of a city or town
² a quarrel/a spat = an angry argument (not an important one)
³ special D = special delivery

(Otis Blackwell – Winfield Scott)

2 Now check your answers with Student B.

Module 1: Practice, Exercise 1, page 12



Michael Schumacher – sportsman – Germany – married – born 1969

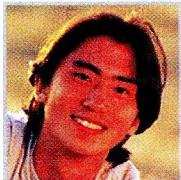
Module 4: Task, Exercise 1, page 37

Student A

New Message - 1

Send Address Attach Reply Reply All Forward Draft Print Delete Log Receipt Normal

Subject: 1 Item 0 Bytes
 From:
 To: Message Text 1


 Peter

My name's Peter, and I'm 23 years old. I come from Singapore, and I speak two languages: English and Mandarin. I have many hobbies: my interests are writing and listening to music; playing softball; going to the movies; and having fun with my friends. I also like cooking. I want to make friends all over the world.

New Message - 1

Send Address Attach Reply Reply All Forward Draft Print Delete Log Receipt Normal

Subject: 1 Item 0 Bytes
 From:
 To: Message Text 1

 Rachel

Hi! It's good to meet you! I'm Rachel, and I come from Texas, in the United States. I'm 16 years old. I love to play tennis and basketball, and I also like to read, and I really, really, really love music – I play the drums in my school band, and I also sing! My favorite singer of all time is Mariah Carey. Do you like her? Please write to me!

Language summary

Module 1

A The verb be

1 Positive, negative, and question forms

Positive form	I'm (= am) he/she/it's (= is) you/we/ they're (= are)	from England. twenty years old. Spanish.
Negative form	I'm not (= am not) he/she/it isn't (= is not) you/we/they aren't (= are not)	American. from Poland. Italian.
Question form	Am I Is he/she/it Are you/we/they	from the US? British? from Japan?
Short answers	Yes, I am, Yes, he/she/it is, Yes, you/we/ they are,	No, I'm not, No, he/she/it isn't, No, you/we/ they aren't,

REMEMBER!

We do not use the short form of the verb in short answers.

Yes, I am.	Yes, I'm.
Yes, she is.	Yes, she's.
Yes, they are.	Yes, they're.

2 Questions with question words

What	's are	your job? your names?
Where	's are	Alain from? your friends?
How old	's are	Richard? you?
Who	's are	your teacher? they?

B Personal pronouns and possessive adjectives

Personal pronoun	Possessive adjective	
I	my	<i>My name's James Taylor.</i>
you	your	<i>How old is your car?</i>
he	his	<i>His address is 6 Leyton Avenue.</i>
she	her	<i>What's her telephone number?</i>
it	its	<i>Its full name is the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC).</i>
we	our	<i>Our children are six and eight years old.</i>
they	their	<i>What's their email address?</i>

REMEMBER!

- 1 **His** is for a man. **His** name's Paul.
Her is for a woman. **Her** name's Anna.
- 2 **Your** is for singular and plural. What's **your** name? **Aldona**.
What are **your** names? **Julio and Maria**.

C a and an: indefinite articles with jobs

We use *a/an* for jobs.

Use **an** before vowels (a, e, i, o, u)

an actor, **an** architect,
an engineer

Use **a** before consonants (b, c, d, f, g, h, ...)

a politician, **a** doctor,
a manager

D Capital letters

We use capital letters for:

- names: **Lara Croft**, **Queen Elizabeth**
- countries: **China**, **the United States**
- nationalities: **Brazilian**, **Greek**
- roads: **23 Stamford Road**, **Fifth Avenue**
- towns/cities: **New York**, **Istanbul**

Module 2

A this, that, these, and those

	Here	There
singular	this (book)	that (book)
plural	these (books)	those (books)

Other examples:

Mr. Thomson, **this is** Jane Dunn.

These apples **are** good.

Are these your keys?

Yes, they are. Thanks.

Who **are those** people?

REMEMBER!

In the answer we usually use **it's** or **they're**.

What's this/that?

It's a credit card.

What are these/those?

They're videos.

B Nouns: singular and plural

Singular	Plural	Spelling
<i>a credit card</i>	<i>credit cards</i>	+ s
<i>a watch</i>	<i>watches</i>	+ es (after ch, sh, s, x, z)
<i>a family</i>	<i>families</i>	+ ies (consonant + y → ies)

C Adjectives

Adjectives:

- go **before** nouns. *a comfortable car* ~~a car comfortable~~
- do **not** change. *blue eyes* ~~eyes blue~~
- do **not** use *and*. *a fantastic new motorcycle* ~~a fantastic and new motorcycle~~

D a and an with singular nouns and adjectives

- 1 We use *a/an* + singular nouns.
a diary, a job, a tourist, a photo, an apple, an address, an email
(but *a college*)
- 2 We use *a/an* + adjectives and singular nouns.
a new car, a white cat, a French cigarette, an English teacher, an African country

E do have

1 Positive, negative, and question forms

Positive form	I/you/we/they have he/she/it has	a new telephone number. a television.
Negative form	I/you/we/they don't have (= do not have) he/she/it doesn't have (= does not have)	a cassette player. a cellphone.
Question form	Do I/you/we/they have Does he/she/it have?	an English-Portuguese dictionary? a CD player?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they do . Yes, he/she/it does .	No, I/you/we/they don't . No, he/she/it doesn't .

We use *do have* for:

- a possession
I have a new credit card. My school has twenty-five computers.
- b relationships
José has a new girlfriend. Barbara and Nicholas have three children.

REMEMBER!

We do not use the full verb in the answer.

Yes, I **do**.

No, I **don't**.

2 Question forms with question word(s)

How many	<i>brothers</i>	does Elena have?
What	<i>answer</i>	do you have for question 2?

F Possessive 's and of

- 1 We use a person + 's for possession.
Jane's brother ~~the brother of Jane~~
Patrick's computer
His friend's car
My father's name
- 2 We usually use **of** before things or places.
- a picture of a car ~~a car's picture~~
- the queen of England ~~England's queen~~
- the Tower of London ~~London's Tower~~

Module 3

A Present Simple I, you, we, and they forms

Positive form	I/you/we/they	live in a big city. drink coffee.
Negative form	I/you/we/they	don't like coffee. don't live in an apartment.
Question form	Do I/you/we/they	speak French? study at college?
Short answers	Yes, I/you/we/they No, I/you/we/they	do. don't.

We use the Present Simple for:

- a things which are generally/always true.
Judy and I live with our parents. Mel and Jo don't speak Russian.
- b habits and routines.
We go shopping on Saturday. I study English in the evening.

REMEMBER!

We do not use the full verb in the short answer.

- | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|------------------------------|
| Do you like pop music? | Yes, I do . | Yes, I like. |
| | No, I don't . | No, I don't like. |

Module 4

A Present Simple he, she, and it

Positive form	he/she/it	likes dogs. loves chocolate.
Negative form	he/she/it	doesn't like (= does not like) my brother. doesn't eat (= does not eat) fish.
Question form	Does he/she/ Does it	live with you? rain a lot in Brazil?
Short answers	Yes, he/she/it No, he/she/it	does. doesn't.

REMEMBER!

1 For negative and question forms:

Patrick ~~doesn't~~ likes meat.
Does Vanessa ~~likes~~ cooking?

2 We do not use the full verb in the answer.

Yes, she ~~does~~. Yes, she likes.
No, she ~~doesn't~~. No, she doesn't like.

b We put the adverb *after* the verb *be*.
English people are **usually** very friendly.
The winters are **sometimes** very cold.
The weather isn't **always** good.
I'm **not often** home in the evening.

B like, love, and hate + ...ing

After *like/love/hate*, we use a plural noun or verb + *...ing*.

- I hate spiders.
- She doesn't like crowds.
- Do you like dogs?
- Joe likes **playing** golf.
- We don't like **flying**.
- Do they like **playing** computer games?

C Present Simple: spelling

The spelling rules for *he, she, and it*.

Verb	Rule	
Most verbs	add s	<i>Beth comes from the US. Paul wants a new car.</i>
Ends in a consonant + y	change y to ies	<i>This airline flies to Slovenia.</i>
Ends in: <i>ch, sh, s, x, z</i>	add es	<i>Andrew watches a lot of videos. Fran finishes work at six.</i>
<i>do and go</i>	add es	<i>My manager goes home at eleven! Pat does all the housework.</i>
<i>have</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>He has breakfast at seven.</i>

D Present Simple questions: he, she, and it

What	does	he/she/it	think of Japan? like eating?
Where	does	Juan	come from? live? work?
What time	does	the class Anna	start? go to work?

E Adverbs of frequency

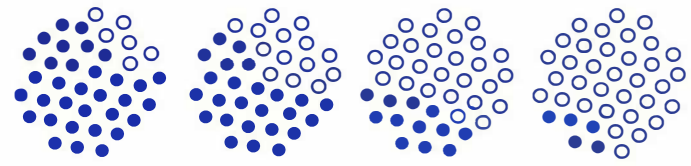
We use frequency adverbs and the Present Simple to say *how often* we do something.



- a We usually put the adverb *before* the verb.
My children **sometimes** watch a video on Sunday evening.
Nicolas **never** goes to school on Saturday.
I **don't often** visit my brother's family.
I **don't usually** like pasta.

Module 5

A most, a lot of, some, not many



Most		
A lot of	people	drive to work.
Some		
Not many		

B Definite, indefinite, and zero articles

1 Indefinite article

- We use *a* or *an*:
- a with jobs.
*I'm **an** artist.*
 - b with a singular noun to mean "one."
*We have **a** real problem.*
 - c with these phrases:
***a lot of/a** long time*

2 Definite article

- We use *the*:
- a with times of day.
*in **the** morning/afternoon
(**BUT at night**)*
 - b with these phrases:
*in **the** downtown area
on **the** right/left*

3 Zero article

We do **not** use *a, an, or the*:

- a with towns and cities.
*I'm from Boston.
Lyon is in France.*
- b with most countries.
*(**BUT the** United States, **the** United Kingdom, **the** Czech Republic)*
- c with "by" + a means of transportation.
by bus/car/train
- d with times + days.
*at one o'clock
on Monday*
- e with these phrases:
*go to work/at home
most people*

C can and can't

Positive form	I/you/he/she/it/we/they	can go by train. can take a long time.
Negative form	I/you/he/she/it/we/they	can't (= cannot) go by bus.
Question form	Can I/you/he/she/it/we/they	travel by bus?

- We use *can* to say that it is possible to do something.
You can take a train from Paddington Station to Heathrow.
- We use *can't* to say it is impossible to do something.
We can't take a taxi because we've only got £20.

REMEMBER!

a We always use the base form of the verb after can.

You can eats Chinese food downtown.

b We don't use do or does to make the question form.

Can you find taxis in the street? Do you can find taxis in the street?

Module 6

A Countable and uncountable nouns

Countable noun	Uncountable noun
egg	milk
apple	butter
book	money
CD	music

- We can use countable nouns in the singular or plural.
Do you have a cat? Do you like cats?
 - Uncountable nouns do **not** have a plural.
Do you like classical musics?
- Note: A dictionary says if a noun is countable or uncountable.

REMEMBER!

a Bread, toast, cake, milk, fruit juice, water, coffee, tea ... are all uncountable, but we can talk about:

- a piece of bread/toast/cake
- a glass of milk/fruit juice/water
- a cup of coffee/tea

b We can also talk about a coffee (= a cup of coffee) and two teas

B there is and there are

	singular	plural
Positive form	There's a cup.	There are six plates.
Negative form	There isn't a bottle of milk.	There aren't two cups.
Question form	Is there a glass of orange juice?	Are there six glasses?
Short answers	Yes, there is. No, there isn't.	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.

C some and any

	singular countable noun	plural countable noun	uncountable noun
+	There's an apple.	There are some grapes.	There's some soup.
-	There isn't a bowl.	There aren't any glasses. There are no glasses.	There isn't any water. There's no water.
?	Is there a movie theater?	Are there any stores?	Is there any money?

- We use *some* in the positive when we don't say exactly how many or how much.
Have some grapes!
There's some soup and bread for lunch.
I'd like some carrots please.
 - Some* = a small number/a small amount
some onions a lot of onions
some money a lot of money
- We usually use *any* or *no* in negatives with plural and uncountable nouns.
I don't have any money. = I have **no** money.
There aren't any emails. = There are **no** emails.
There isn't any time. = There's **no** time.
- We usually use *any* in questions with plurals and uncountables.
Do you have any brothers or sisters?
Are there any buses at night?
Is there any meat in this soup?

REMEMBER!

With plural and uncountable nouns:

a We can also use *some* in these questions:

Would you like some cheese/coffee/grapes?
Do you have some grapes/mineral water?

b We usually use *some* in this question:

Can I have some wine/cake/oranges?

D Questions with how much? and how many?

- We use *how many* with countable plural nouns.
How many brothers/children/oranges do you have?
How many cigarettes does Paul smoke every day?
- We use *how much* with uncountable nouns.
How much rice/milk/money do we have?
How much coffee does Elena drink in a week?
- How much/how many* and *there is/there are*.
We use *there are* with countable plural nouns.
We use *there is* with uncountable nouns.
How many teachers are there in your school? *There are about twenty, I think.*
How much sugar is there in this cake? *It's OK. There's not much.*

REMEMBER!

We use *how much* to ask about prices.

How much is it/this/that? How much are they/these/those?
How much does it cost? How much do they cost?

It's \$10. *They're \$50.*

Module 7

A Past Simple: was and were

Positive form	I/he/she/it you/we/they	was at home. were at home.
Negative form	I/he/she/it wasn't (= was not) you/we/they weren't (= were not)	at school. at school.
Question form	Was I/he/she/it Were you/we/they	friendly?
Short answers	Yes, I/he/she/it was. Yes, you/we/they were.	No, he/she/it wasn't. No, you/we/they weren't.

REMEMBER!
I was born in 1985. ~~I born in 1985.~~ ~~I was borned in 1985.~~

B Past Simple: regular and irregular verbs

1 Regular verbs

Usually we add *-ed* to the verb.

I/you/he/she/it/we/they worked, wanted, finished, listened, watched, played

Other spelling rules:

Verb	Rule	
Ends in <i>-e</i> (live)	+ <i>d</i>	She lived in France.
Ends in a consonant + vowel + consonant (stop)	double the final consonant	He stopped work at 5:30.
Ends in consonant + <i>y</i> (study)	Change <i>y</i> to <i>ied</i>	I studied economics.

2 Irregular verbs

Many common verbs have an irregular past form:
go – went, have – had, meet – met, know – knew.

► **Verb list on page 150.**

We use the Past Simple to talk about:

– a finished single action in the past.

My parents **met** in 1960.

The movie **started** at 7:30.

– a finished state in the past.

Kate **had** a happy childhood.

We **lived** in a small city.

– a repeated action in the past.

She always **telephoned** me on Monday.

They **went** swimming every day.

When we use the Past Simple, we often **say** the time of the action: *in 1960, at 7:30, on Monday.*

C Past time phrases

1 in

in	+ year	in 1999
	+ decade	in the 1980s
	+ century	in the twentieth century
	+ month	in July

2 ago

ago = before now

The movie began ten minutes **ago**.

She died fifteen years **ago**.

3 from ... to...

I worked for the company **from** 1994 **to** 2000.

The lesson was **from** half past six **to** eight.

4 on + day

I played tennis with Luis **on** Friday.

REMEMBER!

We do not use a preposition (in, on, from, ...) with:

last We watched television **last** night.

yesterday Manuel phoned me **yesterday**.

D Ordinal numbers

1st → first	11th → eleventh
2nd → second	12th → twelfth
3rd → third	13th → thirteenth
4th → fourth	20th → twentieth
5th → fifth	21st → twenty-first
6th → sixth	22nd → twenty-second
7th → seventh	30th → thirtieth
8th → eighth	33rd → thirty-third
9th → ninth	40th → fortieth
10th → tenth	100th → hundredth

We use ordinal numbers:

– for dates:

December 25th:

December twenty-fifth.

– for floors in a building:

The classroom is on the third floor.

– as an adjective:

She's Paolo's second wife.

My first car was a Fiat Uno.

Module 8

A Past Simple: negative

I/you/he/she/it/ we/they	didn't (= did not)	start	at 10:00.
		come	to the park.

REMEMBER!

We use *didn't* + the base form of the verb. Regular and irregular verbs are the same.

She **didn't** go shopping. She didn't ~~went~~ shopping.

B Past Simple: questions

Question form		
Did	you/he/she	walk to work today?
Did		sleep well?
Short answers		
Yes, I/we/you/he/she		did.
No, I/we/you/he/she		didn't

REMEMBER!

We do not use the full verb in short answers.

Did you like Rome? Yes, I **did**. ~~Yes, I liked.~~
 No, I **didn't**. No, I ~~didn't like.~~

C Past Simple: question words

What		you	think of South Africa?
Where		he	live in Spain?
When		Maria	work there?
What time	did	they	go home?
Who			speak to?
Why			leave early?
How			travel?

Module 9

A Comparative and superlative adjectives

1 We form the comparative and superlative of adjectives like this:

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative	Spelling rule
cheap	cheaper	the cheapest	most one-syllable adjectives: + er/est
nice	nicer	the nicest	adjectives ending in e: + r/st
big	bigger	the biggest	adjectives ending in consonant + vowel + consonant: double the final consonant + er/est
easy	easier	the easiest	adjectives ending in y: change to -ier/iest
famous	more famous more expensive	the most famous the most expensive	most two-syllable adjectives, and adjectives with three or more syllables: more/most + adjective
good bad	better worse	the best the worst	irregular adjectives

REMEMBER!

1 We use **+er/est** with some two-syllable adjectives:
quiet – quieter – the quietest, clever – cleverer – the cleverest

2 We do not double a final w: new – newer – the newest

- When we want to compare two things, we use **than**:
Sarah's older **than** Pat.
It's easier to use **than** my computer.
- We use an **object** pronoun after **than**:
My brother Joe is older than **me**.

B One and ones

We can use **one** to replace a singular noun.

This pen's better than that **one**. (that pen)

There isn't a bookstore here. The nearest **one** is in the next town. (the nearest bookstore)

Would you like this **one**? (this cake)

We can use **ones** to replace a plural noun.

These apples are more expensive than those **ones**. (apples)

Module 10

A Present Continuous

Positive form	I'm he/she/it's you/we/they're	waiting.
Negative form	I'm not he/she/it isn't you/we they aren't	playing.
Question form	Am I Is he/she/it Are you/we/they	working?
Short answers	Yes, I am . Yes, he/she/it is . Yes, you/we/they are .	No, I'm not . No, he/she/it isn't . No, you/we/they aren't .

1 We use the Present Continuous to talk about actions happening now.

I'm using the computer at the moment.

... or around now.

We're staying in Montevideo this week.

2 Look at the spelling rules for the **-ing** form.

Verb	Rule	
Most verbs	add -ing	<i>He's flying to South Africa.</i>
Verbs ending with -e	take away the -e	<i>They're living in Beijing.</i>
Verbs ending with consonant + vowel + consonant	double the final consonant	<i>She's sitting here.</i>

B Present Continuous: question words

What	am I	doing?
Where	is she/he	going?
Why	are you/we/they	waiting?
Who		talking to?

C Present Simple and Present Continuous

- We use the Present Simple to talk about something that is always true or to talk about habits or routines.
*Laura **comes** from Italy.*
*We often **watch** a video on Friday evening.*
- We use the Present Continuous to talk about something that is happening now or around now.
*Jan is **phoning** his girlfriend.*
*I'm **working** here in Thailand for a month.*

Module 11

A Can and can't for ability

- We use *can* to say we are able to do something.
*Peter **can** speak German very well.*
- We use *can't* to say we are not able to do something.
*My dog **can't** walk at the moment.*

REMEMBER!

- a We do not add an "s" with the he/she/it form.
He **can**s speak Turkish. He *can* speak Turkish.
- b We always use the base form after can.
She **can** dances salsa. She *can* dance salsa.
- c We do not use do or does to make the question form.
Can you play tennis? ~~Do you can~~ play tennis?

B Question words

1 One-word questions

- What's** your name? *Irena.*
- Where** do you come from? *Russia.*
- When** did you come to England? *Two weeks ago.*
- How** did you come here? *By plane.*
- Which** do you prefer, London or Moscow? *Moscow!*
- Why** do you like it better? *Because it's my home city!*

- We use *what* if there are many possible answers.
***What's** your favorite color? Blue.*
- We use *which* if there are only a few possible answers.
***Which** is easier, Japanese, Chinese, or English? English, I think!*

2 Compound (two-word) questions

- We can make compound questions with **what** and **which**.
What kind/sort/type of food do you like? *Italian.*
What time does the train leave? *At six thirty.*
What color is your car? *Green.*
Which one do you like best? *I really like the yellow one.*
- We can make compound questions with **how**.
How far is your home from here? *About six kilometers.*
How often do you have English classes? *Three times a week.*
How long are your lessons? *One and a half hours.*
How fast is your computer? *Very fast!*
How much bread do we have? *Not much.*
How many cigarettes do you smoke? *About 20 a day.*
How old is your daughter? *She was seven last week.*

REMEMBER!

We use **how many** for countable nouns and **how much** for uncountable nouns.

- How many people are there here? About 200.
- How much time have we got? Only five minutes.

3 Question words and verb forms

We can use different verb forms with question words.

- How was** your journey? *Very good, thank you.*
- Which** city **did** you **like** the best? *Madrid.*
- How many** names **can** you remember? *Anne, Susie, Tom, and ...*
- How far** do you **travel** every day? *About 100 kilometers.*

Module 12

A Future intentions

1 Going to + verb

		Positive form	
I'm	going to	have a party next week.	
he/she's			
you/we/they're			
		Negative form	
I'm not	going to	study tonight.	
he/she isn't			
you/we/they aren't			
		Question form	
Am I	going to	see Karen tomorrow?	
Is he/she			
Are you/we/they			
		Short answers	
Yes,	I	am.	No,
he/she		is.	I'm
you/we/they		are.	not.
			he/she
			isn't.
			you/we/they
			aren't.

- We use **going to + verb** when we are talking about our plans or intentions.
*We're **going to** get married next Summer.*
- We also use it to make predictions.
*I think it's **going to** rain.*
- We don't always say "going to go" – we often just use the Present Continuous:
I'm going ~~to go~~ out with a big group of friends.
I'm going ~~to go~~ shopping.

2 Want to + verb; would like to + verb

1 Want to + verb			
Positive form			
I/you/we/they he/she/it	want to wants to	eat.	
Question form			
Do you Does he	want to	eat?	
Yes, I do. No, I don't.	Yes, he does. No, he doesn't.		
Negative form			
I/you/we/they he/she/it	don't doesn't	want to	eat.

2 Would like to + verb			
Positive form			
I/you/he/she/it/we/they	'd like to	eat.	
Negative form			
I/you/he/she/it/we/they	wouldn't like to	eat.	
Question form			
Would	I/you/he/she/it/we/they	like to	eat.

- a We use **want** and **would like** to talk about our wishes. *Would like* is usually more polite.
I **want** to see the manager! I **'d like to** book a room, please.
- b In the negative we don't often use *wouldn't like to*. We prefer *don't want to*.
I **don't want to** go out tonight. I ~~wouldn't like to go out tonight.~~

B Future time expressions

These are some common expressions we use when we are talking about future plans and intentions:

I'm going to see Patricia

today, tonight
this ... morning/afternoon/evening/
weekend/month/year/summer
tomorrow,
tomorrow ... morning/afternoon/
evening/night
next ... week/month/year/summer

C Suggestions with let's, shall we, we could + verb

Suggestion	Positive response	Negative response
Let's (= let us) Shall we watch a video? We could go dancing.	Good idea! Yes, fine. Yes, sure. Yes, OK.	Oh no! (+ reason)



D Offers with shall I? and I'll + verb

Offer	Positive response	Negative response
Shall I order a pizza?	Good idea!	Oh no! (+ reason)
I'll make some coffee.	Yes, please, if that's OK. Fine/OK/sure/ thanks. That's very kind of you.	

Module 13

A Present Perfect

Positive form					
I/you/we/they he/she/it	've (= have) 's (= has)	met Anne before.			
Negative form					
I/you/we/they he/she/it	haven't hasn't	met Anne before.			
Question form					
Have Has	I/you/we/they he/she/it	met Anne before?			
Short answers					
Yes,	I/you/ we/they he/she/it	have. has.	No,	I/you/ we/they he/she/it	haven't. hasn't.

- 1 We form the Present Perfect with *have/has* + the past participle of the verb.
- a Regular past participles are the same as the past form and end in *-ed*: *used, finished, tried*.
- b Many verbs have irregular past participles: *seen, been, had, done*.
- **Verb list page 150.**
- 2 We use the Present Perfect to talk about something that has (or hasn't) happened in the past. We don't say any specific time but we mean "in my life up to now."
I've seen this movie (before).
She's had ten different jobs (in her life).
They haven't been to the United States (before).
He's never tried Thai food (before).

REMEMBER!

Ever = in your life up to now. We use *ever* to ask about something unusual.

~~Have you ever watched TV?~~ (Watching TV is common.)
Have you ever won a competition?

B Definite, indefinite, and zero articles

1 Zero article

We use zero article (∅) with plural nouns or with uncountable nouns.

Jane loves **children**.
Meat is good for you.

We use it to speak about things in general.

2 Indefinite article

We use *a/an* before a countable singular noun.

I'm staying in **a** hotel in Bangkok.

a/an = one, but we don't know which one, or we use *a/an* when this is the first time we are speaking about something.

3 Definite article

We use *the* before nouns when it is clear that the speaker is talking about something specific or something which we know.

The children are in bed. = the children in my family/my children

The meat is fantastic! = we know which meat (the meat that I am eating now)

I'm going back to **the hotel** soon. = we know which hotel because we spoke about it before

Module 14

A *have to* and *don't have to*

Positive form					
I/you/we/they	have to	leave.			
he/she /it	has to				
Negative form					
I/you/we/they	don't have to	leave.			
he/she/it	doesn't				
Question form					
Do	I/you/we/they	have to go?			
Does	he/she /it				
Short answers					
Yes,	I/you/ we/they	do.	Yes,	he /she/it	does.
No,		don't.	No,		doesn't.

- We use *have to* when it is necessary or obligatory to do something.
 You **have to** drive on the left in Britain.
- We use *don't have to* when it is not necessary to do something, but you can if you want.
 You **don't have to** come to the party if you don't want to.

REMEMBER!

When it is **not** OK or it is prohibited to do something we use **can't**.

You **can't** smoke in the classroom. ~~You don't have to smoke in the classroom.~~

B *can* and *can't*

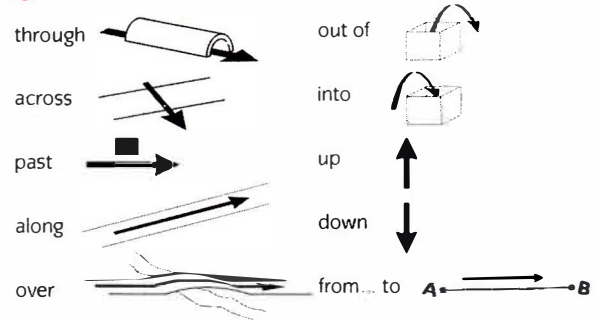
We use *can* when it is OK to do something.

You **can** pay me tomorrow.

We use *can't* when it is not OK or it is prohibited to do something.

You **can't** eat in here.

C Prepositions of movement



Module 15

A Infinitive of purpose

I'm studying English **to get** a better job. (= because I want to get a better job)

I went to the bank **to change** some money. (= because I wanted to change some money)

We use the infinitive (*to do, to get*) to say *why* we do things.

B *Might* and *will*: modal verbs for possibility

I/you/he/ she/you/they	'll (= Will)	go to college	(you think this will happen)
	might	go to college	(you think it's possible)
	might not	go to college	(you think it's less possible)
	won't (= will not)	go to college	(you think this will not happen)

We use *might (not)* and *will (won't)* to say that something is possible or probable in the future.

REMEMBER!

We don't use *to* after *might* and *will*.

It might rain. ~~It might to rain.~~

Irregular verbs

Verb	Past Simple	Past Participle
be	was/were	been
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feed	fed	fed
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flown
forget	forgot	forgotten/forgot
get	got	got/gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone/been
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
learn	learned	learned
leave	left	left

Verb	Past Simple	Past Participle
let	let	let
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read /ri:d/	read /red/	read /red/
ring	rang	rung
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

Tapescripts

Module 1

Recording 1

- A: How are you?
B: I'm fine, thanks.
C: What's your name?
D: My name's Emily Harman.
E: Where are you from?
F: I'm from England.
G: Nice to meet you.
H: And you.

Recording 3

- 1 A: What's his name?
B: His name's Jarek.
A: Where's he from?
B: He's from Poland.
2 A: What's her name?
B: Her name's Carmen.
A: Where's she from?
B: She's from Spain.
3 A: What are their names?
B: Their names are Toshi and Mariko.
A: Where are they from?
B: They're from Tokyo.

Recording 4

- A: His name's Jarek and he's nineteen years old. He's from Poland. He's a student at Warsaw University. He isn't married, he's single.
B: Her name's Carmen and she's from Spain. She's about thirty-five and she's married. She isn't on vacation, she's on business.
C: Their names are Toshi and Mariko. They're from Tokyo. They're tourists, and they're on vacation in Italy. They're about twenty-two and they aren't married, they're friends.

Recording 6

- 1 A: Are you a student?
B: Yes, I am. I go to London University.
2 C: Where are you from?
D: We're from Australia.
3 E: How old are you?
F: I'm twenty-one.
4 G: Are you married?
H: Yes, we are.
5 I: Are you on vacation?
J: Yes, I am.
6 K: What's your job?
L: I'm an architect.

Recording 7

Conversation 1

- B = Bruno M = Market researcher
M: Excuse me ...
B: Yes?
M: Can I ask you some questions ... it's for market research.
B: Yes, OK.
M: Thank you very much. So, the first question ... how old are you? Are you 15–19? 20–24? 25–29 maybe? 30 to ...

- B: No, I'm twenty-two ...
M: Twenty-two – so that's 20–24, Fine. Are you married?
B: No!
M: OK, and what's your job ... are you a student?
B: No, I'm a musician ...

Conversation 2

- T = Taxi telephone operator B = Bruno
T: A1 Taxis ...
B: Hello. I need a taxi please ...
T: OK, what's your address?
B: It's 19a Newton Road ... Leeds ...
T: 19a, OK ... And what's your telephone number?
B: It's 903 0294.
T: 903 0294. And what's your surname?
B: Sertori.
T: Sorry? How do you spell it?
B: It's S-E-R ...
T: S-E-R, yes?
B: T-O-R ...
T: T-O-R ... Mm ...
B: I. Sertori.
T: OK, Mr. Sertori. The taxi'll be about ten minutes ...
B: OK. Goodbye.
T: Bye.

Module 2

Recording 5

- A: Minnie is Mickey Mouse's girlfriend.
B: Marge is Homer's wife.
C: Bart is Homer and Marge's son.
D: Prince William is Queen Elizabeth's grandson.
E: Princess Stephanie is Princess Caroline's sister.
F: Paul McCartney is Stella McCartney's father.
G: Obélix is Astérix's friend.

Recording 8

- I = interviewer H = Hannah
H: OK ... so this is my family tree ...
I: OK ...
H: As you can see, I'm an only child ...
I: No brothers or sisters?
H: No ... only me! My father's name is John ... and he's forty ... forty-eight? I think ... yes, forty-eight.
I: Forty-eight years old.
H: Yes, I'm sure! So that's my dad, my mother is Elaine ... and she's a teacher.
I: Just like you!
H: That's right, we're both teachers ... so those are my parents ... now my mother has two sisters ... so I have two aunts, Auntie Pat and Aunt Sally ...
I: So what about Auntie Pat?
H: Well, she's very nice! She's my favorite aunt ... she's married ... her husband's name is Serge ...
I: Serge?
H: Yes, it's not an English name ... he's French, from France ...

- I: Oh ... and who's Sally?
 H: Sally is my other aunt ... she's the other sister ... and Sally isn't married ...
 I: OK, and these are your cousins, right?
 H: Marc and Lily. Yeah, they're my cousins ...
 I: How old are they?
 H: Marc is ... he's nineteen now, he's a student ... and Lily, well, she's the baby of the family ... she's not really a baby, she's thirteen, but she's a baby to me ... she's still at school ...

Module 3

Recording 4

Life in Britain

- A: Many British people live in houses, not apartments. Most houses have yards.
 B: Most office workers start work at about nine in the morning and finish at about five or six in the evening. Most people don't go home for lunch.
 People usually eat a big meal in the evening; they just have a snack at lunchtime.
 A: Children start school at about nine, and finish at about three-thirty. Most children have lunch at school. All children start school when they are four or five years old, and leave when they are sixteen or eighteen.
 B: Most stores open at about nine and close at about six. Usually, they don't close for lunch. Many supermarkets stay open twenty-four hours. Most bars and restaurants close at about eleven o'clock.

Recording 7

Conversation 1

- A: ... because, you know, I don't usually have breakfast ... I'm never hungry in the morning ...
 B: Really? I love breakfast ... I have a really big breakfast every day! I love ...

Conversation 2

- C: ... so anyway, because I'm thirty this year I want to ...
 D: Are you thirty this year? Really? Me too! It's horrible, isn't it!

Conversation 3

- E: Are you married?
 F: No ... how about you?
 E: No, me neither ...

Conversation 4

- G: What do you want to listen to ... do you like jazz?
 H: No, I don't. Do you?
 G: Sometimes ... I love Stan Getz.

Conversation 5

- I: ...yeah, and I'm really lucky, I have a beautiful apartment downtown, just near the station ... and I live with some friends ...
 J: How fantastic ... I still live with my parents ... in Kingston ... do you know where that is ...?

Conversation 6

- K: So, where are you from?
 L: I'm from South Africa ... Durban ... you're from Argentina, aren't you?
 K: Well, Chile, actually ... Santiago ...

Conversation 7

- M: ... because I don't have any brothers or sisters, you know ... I'm an only child ...
 N: Yeah, me too ... do you like ...?

Module 4

Recording 1

- A: American superstar Whitney Houston loves dogs. She has two dogs, who live in a \$75,000 doghouse in her yard!
 B: Actress Kim Basinger doesn't like crowds: she also hates open spaces!
 A: Sylvester Stallone – star of the “Rocky” movies – likes playing golf so much he sometimes stops filming for a game!
 B: Hollywood actress Cameron Diaz hates TV.
 A: Actor and movie director Harrison Ford says he really likes doing housework!
 B: Does Superman like flying? Well, actor Dean Cain – Superman in the TV series – doesn't travel by plane ... he's too nervous!

Recording 3

An American in England

- B = Bob R = Radio journalist
 R: Bob Kessler is forty-two. He's a writer, and he lives in a small village in the west of England with his wife and daughter.
 Bob, you aren't English, are you?
 B: No, I'm from West Hills, a small town in California in the United States.
 R: And what's your job?
 B: I write travel books, mainly about England and the English, but also about other countries like Italy and France. I go to Europe two or three times a year.
 R: And what do you think of England?
 B: I like it here. I don't want to go back to the United States: I like the traditions and the way of life ... it's so different from the States ... for example, I love the way everyone says “Sorry” all the time ... I don't understand why, but it's nice!
 R: So you're happy in England?
 B: Yes, very happy ... my daughter goes to school here and she has lots of English friends. And you know, now my wife and I usually drink milk with our tea!

Recording 4

N, L, and P = students T = Teacher

- a N: How do you say “futebol” in English?
 T: In American English we say “soccer” not “football.” In British English, it's “football.”
 N: OK ... I always play soccer on weekends.
 T: Good!
 N: How do you spell it?
 T: S–O–C–C–E–R.
 b T: Luisa, can you read aloud, please?
 L: Fairburn is an industrial town in the ...
 T: Yes, Angelo?
 A: What does “town” mean ...?
 T: A town is a small city. Do you understand?
 A: Yes. Thank you.
 c T: OK ... that's the end. Do you have any questions? Yes, Pierre ...
 P: Is it correct to say “time for going home?”
 T: Well, we usually say “time to go home.”
 P: So ... is it time to go home?
 T: Yes!

Module 5

Recording 1

OK, so number one is an airplane ... then it's ... a train, a train is number two ... next is ... then it's ... well, I guess number three is a motorcycle ... and then number four is a car and a taxi, they're the same really ... so that's four and five, a car and a taxi ... and a subway train is number six ... after that number seven ... is ... a streetcar ... a streetcar or a bus? I'm not sure ... OK, maybe a bus, a bus is number seven, yeah, a streetcar is number eight, and a scooter, I guess then is number nine, and a bicycle is last, that's number ten ...

Recording 2

Transportation Facts

- A: Traffic jams in Bangkok, the capital city of Thailand, are so bad that a normal journey to work takes about 3 hours.
- B: People in most countries drive on the right ... but people drive on the left in 59 countries, including Japan, India, Australia, and Great Britain.
- C: More than 100,000,000 (one hundred million) people in the world ride a bicycle!
- A: Every day, more than 1,000,000 (one million) people travel into downtown London: 35% come in by subway, 30% take the train, 25% travel by car, 7% catch the bus ... and 3% walk to work!
- B: In Tokyo, people never wait for more than 5 minutes for a subway train. The only problem is that the trains are so crowded that it's difficult to get on ... or get off!
- A: 53,000,000 (fifty-three million) people fly to and from O'Hare Airport in Chicago, USA, every year! (That's about one hundred people every minute!)

Recording 3

c = Carl Wilson

- C: I live near the downtown area and we have a real problem with cars here. Most people come to work by car, so in the morning when people drive into Boston, and in the evening, it's very busy. I have a car, but I don't drive much: I'm an artist, so I usually work at home!

Recording 5

Louise

How do I go to work? Well, it's a five-minute walk to the subway – station and then I take a train to my office. It takes about twenty-five minutes on the train and costs a dollar fifty.

Ara

If you want to go from Paris to San Sebastián, you can't fly direct, so you fly to Bilbao airport. That takes about one hour and forty minutes. Then you take a bus from Bilbao to San Sebastián. The bus takes about one and a half hours from the airport to the downtown area.

Yuka

If you want to get from Tokyo to Disneyland, you go by train from Tokyo Station. It's very fast. It takes about twenty minutes to Maihama station and it costs about 300 yen.

Recording 6

Person A

A: Well, usually I take the subway ... and then I walk from the station to my office.

Person B

B: Yes, I do! I love riding my motorcycle ... I do it every weekend.

Person C

C: No, never. I always take my car. I just don't like buses and trains ... so crowded ...

Person D

D: About ... oh, about half an hour, thirty minutes ... sometimes more ... it depends on the traffic ...

Person E

E: Well, in a normal week, I walk around ... about ten kilometers, I'd say ... I really like walking ... I walk as much as I can ...

Person F

F: Um ... yes, it's not bad ... the streetcars are very good ... the buses can be a little slow, but in general, yes, it's good.

Consolidation, Modules 1–5

Recording 1

Elsbeth is a really good friend of mine. She's about twenty-five years old and she lives in Edinburgh, in a big apartment near the downtown area. She works at the Scottish Museum and her job is very important to her. She isn't married but she has a boyfriend, Nick. They don't have a car because they don't like driving, but they ride their bicycles all around the city. Elsbeth likes going to restaurants, going to the movies, and meeting people, and she's very friendly.

Recording 2

Conversation 1

- B: Hello, Irish Rail Inquiries, Anna speaking.
- A: Hello. Can you give me information about trains from Belfast to Dublin?
- B: When are you traveling?
- A: Tomorrow. What time is the first train in the morning?
- B: The first train is at ... 6:30.
- A: And what time does it arrive in Dublin?
- B: 8:40.
- A: How much is it?
- B: One-way or round-trip?
- A: One-way.
- B: £21.
- A: Thank you.
- B: You're welcome.

Conversation 2

This is London Zoo. Our offices are closed at present and no officer is available. General information on the zoo follows. *(Pause.)* The zoo is open every day from 10:00 a.m. to 5:30 p.m. Admission for adults is £10, and for children from seven to fourteen it's £8. Children under seven are free. The nearest subway station is Camden Town, which is only ten minutes' walk away. If you come by ...

Conversation 3

- C: What time does the soccer game start?
- D: It starts at seven.
- C: And when does it finish?
- D: About nine to nine-thirty. It depends.
- C: Oh no! I want to watch a movie at nine o'clock!

Module 6

Recording 1

Matthew

Well, I always have breakfast at home ... not too early, about ten o'clock usually ... I always have tea, that's very important, two or three cups of tea ... and a piece of toast, with butter and jam ... and sometimes a bowl of cereal ... that's about all ...

Sonia

In Brazil, we have very good tropical fruit ... guava, mango, and things like that ... and we always have fruit for our breakfast – also we have coffee, of course, everybody knows in Brazil we have very good coffee ... and maybe bread and jam ...

The Weber family

Well, in our family we have breakfast together in the morning when we have time ... we have coffee, usually ... and we have many types of bread, which we have with butter and jam ... and maybe some cheese, sometimes we have cheese for breakfast, maybe ham as well ... oh and eggs, sometimes we have eggs as well ...

Recording 3

Joke 1

- A: Waitress?
 B: Yes, sir.
 A: Can I have some ice cream, please, one spoonful of vanilla, one scoop – no two scoops – of chocolate ... three scoops of strawberry ... and two scoops of banana flavor ... and I'd like some chocolate sauce with it ... and some cream ...
 B: OK, sir. So that's one scoop of vanilla, two scoops of chocolate, three scoops of strawberry, and two scoops of banana flavor.
 A: Yes, make that three scoops of banana.
 B: Three scoops of banana ... with chocolate sauce and cream ...
 A: Yes, that's right.
 B: And do you want a cherry on top?
 A: No, thanks. I'm on a diet.

Joke 2

- C: Waiter!
 D: Is there a problem, sir?
 C: Yes, there is a problem! There's a fly in my soup!
 D: Oh ... Can I see, sir? ... Oh yes, you're right ... Do you want a knife and fork, sir?

Joke 3

- E: Waiter?
 D: Yes, sir.
 E: I have a question. What's in the Chicken Surprise Pie?
 D: Chicken, sir.
 E: Chicken? ... so what's the surprise?
 D: The chicken's got feathers, sir.

Recording 4

- A: Waiter! Waiter!
 B: Yes, sir?
 A: There's a spider in my soup!
 B: Really, sir? Can I see?
 A: Look! There it is!
 B: Oh, yes. You're right, sir. The fly is on vacation.

Recording 5

Conversation 1

- A: Can I take your order, please?
 B: Yes, can I have two Super King-Size Burgers, please.

- A: Two Super King-Size, right.
 B: With large French fries ...
 A: Anything to drink with that?
 B: Yes, a Coke and a lemonade, please.
 A: Eat in or take out?
 B: Sorry?
 A: Do you want it to eat here or take out?
 B: Oh, eat here, please.
 A: OK, that's \$10, please.

Conversation 2

- A: Would you like anything else? Some more coffee?
 B: No, thanks. Can I have the bill, please?
 A: OK, so it's just one coffee ... and a piece of chocolate cake.
 B: That's right.
 A: So that's \$1.45 for the coffee and \$1.35 for the cake. That's \$2.80 altogether, please.
 B: \$2.80 ... one, two, three dollars ... there you are. Keep the change.
 A: Oh. Thank you.
 B: That's all right. Bye bye.
 A: Bye.

Conversation 3

- A: Perfect Pizza, good evening.
 B: Yes, I'd like to order a pizza ... to be delivered, please.
 A: All right ... what would you like?
 B: The one with all the different kinds of cheese ... and ham ... I don't have a menu, what's the name of it?
 A: Oh, that's the Cheese Supreme.
 B: That's it.
 A: And is that regular, large, or extra large?
 B: How much is the extra large?
 A: The regular is \$7.60, the large is \$10.60, and the extra large is \$12.60.
 B: Oh ... the large Cheese Supreme, please.
 A: Anything else?
 B: Yeah, a liter bottle of Diet Lemonade, please.
 A: OK ...
 B: How much is that altogether?
 A: That's 10.60 for the pizza, 1.25 for the drink so that's ... 11.85 altogether.
 B: OK.
 A: All right, what's the address?
 B: It's 2809 Southlands Street ...

Recording 6

There's a man in the picture ... and two women.
 Well, the man has something in his hand ... in his right hand yes, he has a paper bag in his right hand.
 I think his name's Frank, because there's a sign at the back that says "Frank's Fruit and Veg."
 I can see a cat ... it's a black cat ... on the right.
 There are lots of fruits and vegetables on the left of the picture. Let's see ... there are some potatoes ... they're 54 pence a kilo ...
 Then there are some grapes ... they're £1.53 pence a kilo ...
 The next fruit is apples, there are only four apples, as well ... and the sign says "Apples £1.09 a kilo."
 There's also a sign that says "Bananas" ... but there's a problem ... because there aren't any ... there are no bananas in the box ...

Module 7

Recording 5

I only knew my great-grandfather for a few years. His name was George, and he died when I was about ten ... but he certainly had a very interesting life! He was born in a small village in Poland, I'm not sure when, some time in the 1920s, I think – and he lived there in this village until 1939, when World War II began. And when the soldiers came, he decided to leave Poland – he wanted to join the British Army, so do you know what he did? He walked all the way from his village in Poland to Egypt ... it took him about three months, incredible! When the war ended he went to live in England ... where he met my great-grandmother, who was also Polish, and they got married. They lived in England for the next fifty years ... they always spoke Polish at home, though.

Recording 7

Extract A

I was born in 1978 ... in a place called Swansea, which is a town in the south of Wales ... my mom and dad were very happy, I think ... I was their first daughter.

Extract B

I became interested in music when I was very, very young. I always loved music ... when I was about three or four, I got a piano ... not a real one, a toy piano, for Christmas ... and I just loved it ... I played with it for hours.

Extract C

I went to school in Swansea ... I was happy at school most of the time ... music was my favorite subject ... of course!

Extract D

When I was about twelve, I started to have piano lessons. My mom and dad got a teacher for me, and I learned how to play the piano. It was difficult, but I enjoyed it.

Extract E

I went to college in Wales. I'm sure you know what I studied ... it was Music and Drama, and I graduated in 1999 ...

Extract F

Last year I became a professional singer ... I made my first CD ... I sang on a CD with someone called Hugh Morris ... it was really exciting ...

Module 8

Recording 2

- A: In the story, Tarzan lived in the African jungle: one day he met a girl named Jane and they fell in love! But Tarzan didn't ride a motorcycle!
- B: In the old story, Robin Hood lived in a forest, he always wore green clothes, and he took money from rich people: but he didn't give it to Maid Marian! He gave money to poor people.
- C: The story is that Count Dracula slept during the day, and that at night he became a bat and drank blood ... but he didn't live in a castle in Brazil; he lived in Transylvania, in central Europe.

Recording 4

M = tour guide B = little boy

- M: ... and here we are at the castle. There is a story that many, many years ago a dragon lived here in our town ...
- B: Did the dragon live in this house?

- M: No, he didn't. He lived in a cave. So, there was a terrible dragon, and the people of the town were very sad ... because, well, the dragon ate all the young girls of the town ...
- B: Did the dragon eat boys?
- M: No, no he didn't. Only girls. So, one day, a prince came to the town and ...
- B: Did the prince have a girlfriend?
- M: Er ... I don't know ... so the prince decided to do something, and one day ...
- B: Did the prince kill the dragon?
- M: Yes, he did.
- B: How?
- M: Well, it was difficult to kill the dragon, so what he did was ...

Recording 6

A = interviewer B = female writer

- A: So, Tina, what's the title of your very short story?
- B: The name of the story is "Charlie Who?" – they're not in the sixty words, though!
- A: And how long did it take you to write it?
- B: I wrote it in one afternoon ... it didn't take a long time to write ... about an hour, I think.
- A: Who are your favorite writers?
- B: That's a difficult question! I don't have a favorite really ... I read everything!!
- A: So, where did you get the idea for the story?
- B: I read something in the newspaper about a man who won the lottery ... and he had a party for everyone in his street. That gave me the idea.
- A: And what's the story about?
- B: Well, as I said, it's about a man named Charlie ... but it's also about money ... and how people think about money.
- A: Did you expect to win the competition?
- B: No, I didn't. It was a complete surprise!

Recording 7

Charlie bought a lottery ticket with a £1 coin: his last. The next day he won £10 million. Charlie gave a party for his neighbors – it lasted two weeks. On the last day, Charlie died. The government took all his money, but everyone in the street always remembered the incredible street party. But they couldn't remember who gave it.

Recording 8

René woke up as usual at nine-thirty. He looked out of the window. It was another beautiful day in Monte Carlo. He went downstairs and had his usual breakfast: espresso coffee and three oranges. Before he finished his meal, the phone rang. He answered it. "Hello?" Silence. Then ... "René?" A woman's voice: he knew it immediately. It was Sylvia, his ex-girlfriend.

"Yes," he answered. "Thank goodness it's you, René. I've got a problem, and I need your help. Meet me in one hour."

René left the apartment, got into his car, and drove to the parking lot of the Grand Casino. He arrived at a quarter of eleven. She wasn't there. René looked at his watch.

Suddenly René saw someone, but it wasn't Sylvia; it was a man – a very tall man, and he didn't look friendly.

There was one important question in René's mind: "Where's the money?" he asked.

"Sylvia's got it," the tall man answered. "Come with me."

René went with the tall man. He followed him to a car. It was a very big black car. He got into the back of the car and saw a woman. She had a big bag. It was the money ...

"Thank goodness it's you, Sylvia. Are you OK?"

"Me?" She answered slowly. "Oh yes. I'm fine. But you are not fine. You are in big trouble. This is a police car and you are going to prison."

Module 9

Recording 2

Carla

Well, the best food in the world comes from Italy – in my opinion – and I suppose the most famous food from Italy is pasta, so it's a good idea to buy some pasta ... and maybe some sauce or olive oil to go with it ... delicious ...

Helena

My country is very famous for music ... especially samba music ... I think a CD of typical samba music from Brazil is a very good souvenir.

Greg

If you like books, you can buy a book by a Polish writer, her name is Wisława Szymborska. She won the Nobel Prize for Literature ... You can buy an English translation if you don't know Polish!

Guy

A good thing to buy is a bottle of wine, French wine is famous all around the world and the best wine comes from Bordeaux, in southwest France ...

Recording 3

- 1 A: Do you sell toothpaste?
B: No, we don't. Try the drugstore.
- 2 A: Do you accept credit cards?
C: Yes, Visa or Mastercard.
- 3 A: Do you have this in a smaller size?
D: Let me check for you.
- 4 A: How much is this?
E: It's \$25.
- 5 A: What time do you close?
F: At eight o'clock.
- 6 A: Can I have one of those, please?
G: This one?

Recording 4

- 1 A: How much are these postcards?
B: Twenty-five pence each. How many do you have?
A: Eight.
B: That's two pounds.
A: And I'd like eight stamps for Canada.
B: That's four pounds altogether.
- 2 A: Do you sell batteries?
C: Yes, what size?
A: It's for this camera.
C: Let me see. OK. How many do you want?
A: Two, please.
C: That's two pounds.
- 3 A: How much is this T-shirt?
D: It's £19.99.
A: Do you have it in a smaller size?
D: Let me check for you. Yes, I've got one here.
A: OK, I'll take it. Do you accept credit cards?
D: Visa or Mastercard. Can you sign here? Thank you.
- 4 A: Can I have one of those cakes, please?
E: This one?
A: No, that one, there.
E: Anything else?

- A: Yes, some bread, please.
E: Medium or small?
A: Small, please.
E: That's £1.20.

Module 10

Recording 1

- D: Hello.
J: Hello Dan, where are you?
D: I'm on King Street – just outside the Post Office.
J: What are you doing?
D: I'm waiting for a bus ... how are you?
J: I'm fine.

Recording 2

Michelle

Generally, I really like my uniform – it's attractive. I wear a white shirt, a black jacket, black pants or skirt, a kind of back-and-white shirt, and this lovely black hat (laughing)! There's only one thing that I hate ... the shoes! Police shoes are really big and ugly ... yuk!

Andy

Our uniforms are interesting because they're very very old. Imagine ... the hats we wear are more than 300 years old. People were smaller then, so the uniforms are really uncomfortable now, and very heavy – you want to move your head all the time, but you can't of course. The pants are also old, and they are made of a special kind of leather – also very uncomfortable, so we wear women's pantyhose under them. We don't usually tell people about that, though!

Recording 3

This is a picture of a street. It's a beautiful morning and the sun is shining. On the left of the picture there is a girl walking along the street. She's wearing a white skirt and she's listening to some music on her headphones.
In the middle of the picture there's a man with a big black-and-white dog: the dog is running after a cat. The dog's owner is wearing a pair of sunglasses.
On the right of the picture, there are two women sitting at a table and drinking coffee. One of the women has short dark hair. She is tall, slim, and beautiful.

Recording 4

- a A: Excuse me, do you have the time, please?
B: Yes, it's ten o'clock.
- b C: Is this seat free?
D: Sure, take it.
- c E: Is this bus going downtown?
F: Yes, it is.
- d G: Is it OK to smoke here?
H: I'm sorry, it's a nonsmoking area.
- e I: Excuse me ... how do I get to the railroad station?
J: Sorry, I don't live here.

Consolidation Modules

6–10

Recording 1

- Can I have the bill please?
- How much is this T-shirt?
- I'd like to order two large pizzas, please.
- I'm sorry, I don't understand. Can you say it again, please?
- Do you sell shampoo?
- Do you have this in a bigger size?
- No, thanks, I'm just looking.

Module 11

Recording 1

Cats started living with people as pets thousands of years ago, and now there are about 500 million domestic cats around the world. Cats are usually very good hunters and can catch mice and small birds – although they often don't eat them, if they can get normal cat food! In fact, they are very lazy animals: on average, they sleep for about sixteen hours a day. They also spend a lot of time keeping themselves clean by washing their fur with their tongues.

Male cats are called toms and female cats are called queens: female cats are pregnant for about nine weeks, and usually have between two and five kittens. There are over one hundred breeds of cat, and even a hairless cat called the sphynx cat!

Recording 2

RADIO JOURNALIST: People say that a dog is a man's best friend. People and dogs first started living together about ten thousand years ago. Now there are fifty-three million dogs just in the US – Americans spend over two billion dollars on dog food every year – four times what they spend on baby food! Altogether there are about a hundred and fifty breeds of dog. Many dogs work for humans, doing jobs such as helping the blind, helping the police and customs officers to find drugs, and even racing! Greyhound racing is popular in many countries. The fastest greyhounds can run as fast as 65 kilometers per hour. Perhaps the most famous working dog was named Rin Tin Tin, who died in 1932. He earned his money by making movies – he made fifty movies and earned about forty-four thousand dollars for each one!

Recording 3

- Which language or languages do people speak in Canada?
- Where was the Hollywood actor Arnold Schwarzenegger born?
- How many players are there on a basketball team?
- How long does it take to boil an egg?
- When did Bill Clinton become president of the United States?
- Which is the biggest desert in the world?
- When did Joseph Niépce invent the first camera?
- How far is it from the Earth to the Moon?
- When did France win the World Cup in soccer?
- Sushi is a popular type of food. Where does it come from?

Recording 4

- Canada has two official languages: French, which is spoken by about 40% of the population, and English, which is spoken by the remaining 60%.
- Although he has lived in the United States for many years, the popular Hollywood actor and director Arnold Schwarzenegger was born in Graz, a city in Austria, in 1947.
- A basketball team has five players.

- There are several different methods of boiling an egg: but most cooks agree that it should take between three and four minutes, depending on whether you like your egg hard or soft.
- Bill Clinton first became president of the United States in 1992. He won a second election in 1996.
- With an area of almost eight and a half million square kilometers, the Sahara is the largest desert in the world.
- Joseph Niépce invented the camera in 1826. It took him eight hours to take the first photograph!
- The distance from the Earth to the Moon is approximately 380,000 kilometers.
- France won the World Cup for the first time in 1998. They beat Brazil 3–0 in the final in Paris.
- Sushi is a type of food made from fish which is raw – or not cooked. It is most commonly eaten in Japan.

Module 12

Recording 1

Tania

Tania, 18: On Saturday night I'm going out with a big group of people ... probably to a club, because it's one of my friend's birthday ... then on Sunday I'm going with the whole family to my grandparents' house for lunch ...

Amir

Amir, 25: I'm pretty tired, so I'm not going to do much this weekend ... just have quiet time at home. I want to finish the book I'm reading and sleep lots!

Phil

Phil, 33: I'd like to go away somewhere this weekend – maybe go walking in the country – but it depends on the weather ...

Aphra

Aphra, 28: It's my boyfriend's birthday on Sunday... so on Saturday, I'm going shopping to buy his present ... I'd like to get him a new watch if I can find a nice one, then on Sunday I'm going to cook a special birthday meal for him.

Zoe

Zoe, 20: I've got to work on Saturday ... so that's Saturday ... I don't know about Sunday ... sleep probably ...

Val

Val, 46: I'm going on vacation on Sunday – to South Africa – so tomorrow I'm going to pack ... and iron ... and do all the jobs I need to do before I go away ...

Recording 4

Conversation A

ow = older woman yw = younger woman

ow: Let's stop for a break – this is really tiring!

yw: Good idea – should I make some coffee?

ow: It's OK, I'll make it.

yw: No, I'll make it – you sit down.

ow: OK ... thanks ...

Conversation B

w = woman m = man

w: I'm really bored, should we go out somewhere tonight?

m: OK, what do you want to do?

w: We could go and see a movie ...

m: OK – but which movie?

w: How about that new one with Julia Roberts? I can't remember the name of it.

M: OK, if you want ...
 w: Should I find out when it's on, and what time it starts?
 M: Yes, good idea ...

Recording 5

c = Craig R = Ruth B = Betsy
 R: What are you doing on Sunday, anything interesting?
 C: Nothing much.
 B: Me neither.
 R: Maybe we could go somewhere together ... why don't we have a day out, we're always saying we're going to, but we never do ...
 B: Yeah, but where?
 R: I'd like to go to Lyme Regis – everyone says it's beautiful ...
 C: Yes, it is, but it's a long way ... it takes about three hours to get there ... better for a weekend than just one day ...
 B: Or how about Bath ... that's great, and there are great stores ...
 C: But again, it's a long way ...
 B: Yeah, I guess so ...
 B: I know – how about Leeds Castle? I'd love to go there, it looks so beautiful in photographs, and it's not too far ...
 C: Yeah, I'd really like to go there too ... there are beautiful walks, people say.
 R: OK, then ... but what about transportation? Can you get the train there?
 B: Don't worry about that – I can borrow the car – I'll drive us there ...
 R: Oh fantastic – well, let's go there then ...
 C: The only thing is, I think it's pretty expensive to get in ... and then if we have to pay for lunch and ...
 R: Well, let's take a picnic ... then we won't spend money on lunch
 B: Yeah, good idea ...
 R: I'll make it ... what should we have – sandwiches? fruit? potato chips? sausages?
 C: Yeah, great, and I'll get some drinks ... lemonade and Coke and stuff ...
 B: OK then ... so what time should I pick you up?
 C: Not too early, about eleven o'clock?
 R: The only problem is that I need to be home pretty early – I've got some work to do before Monday morning ...
 B: OK then, well, let's leave at about ten o'clock, and then we can be back about six-thirty – is that OK for everyone?
 R: Yeah, perfect.
 C: Great ... it'll be great ...

Recording 7

Everybody thinks that in Canada it's always cold, and in the north, in the Yukon Territory it's true; there's snow maybe eight months of the year. But I come from Vancouver, on the west coast, and there the winters aren't too bad. Most days it's cloudy and it can be pretty wet sometimes, but it's not really cold. The summers are nice: it's sunny and warm – I guess the average is about eighteen degrees. In the Prairies – that's the central part of the country – it gets very hot in summer. In the winter it's very windy because of a wind we call the "chinook." It can be a problem for the farmers, since it doesn't rain very much. In the eastern part of the country ...

Module 13

Recording 1

One day, Marty went out to buy a newspaper. He saw a competition in the newspaper and decided to enter: Marty loved competitions. There was a simple question to answer:
 Where do koalas live?
 First, he told the man next door about the competition, and asked if he knew the answer: but the man didn't know, so Marty looked in a book.

A few days later, a letter came through the door. Marty opened the letter excitedly ... inside there was a piece of paper ... a check for £1,000!!
 Then he looked at the name on the envelope. He saw that the letter wasn't for him: it was for the man next door.

Recording 2

J = Jane
Conversation 1
 J: Hello, can I speak to Paul, please?
 A: Sorry, he's not here.
 J: Oh, OK ... do you know when he'll be back?
 A: Not really, no ...
 J: OK, I'll try again this afternoon.
 A: OK, bye.
Conversation 2
 B = woman in travel agency
 B: TKO Travel, good morning!
 J: Hello, is this Julia Thomson?
 B: Speaking.
 J: Hello, this is Jane Hancock, I'm calling about the flight tickets ...
 B: Oh, OK, yes ...
 J: ... for Copenhagen. Are they ready yet?
 J: Yes, well, unfortunately there's a little problem ...

Conversation 3
 AM = answer machine J = Jane
 AM: Hello, this is Tania Shaw... Sorry, I'm not here at the moment. Please leave a message after the tone:
BEEP!
 J: Hi, it's Jane, can you call me back? It's about the flight tickets. My number is 890921. Talk to you soon. Bye!

Conversation 4
 M = Jane's mom
 M: Hello?
 J: Hello, Mom, it's me. Is Dad there?
 M: He's asleep in front of the television. Should I wake him up?
 J: No, it's OK. Can you ask him to call me?
 M: Yes, of course. Is everything OK?
 J: Oh yes, I'm fine. I've just got to do all these things before Saturday.

Module 14

Recording 1

Postcard 1
 OK, so these are all pictures of my city, which is Budapest, in Hungary ... and in the picture there's a bridge, the name of this bridge is "Elizabeth Bridge" ... it's one of the most famous bridges over the River Danube ... also you can see Váci Utca ... or Váci Street ... there are no cars there, it's a pedestrian street, full of fashionable stores ... also you can see a castle, ... and the famous Heroes' Square ...

Postcard 2
 Here you can see some of the most famous sights of Rio de Janeiro in Brazil. It's not the capital – that's Brasilia – but for me, it's the most beautiful city ... there's a picture of the Maracanã Stadium, the famous sports stadium, it's maybe the most famous soccer stadium in the world, Maracanã, you can also see the famous beach at Copacabana and of course you have the famous statue of Christ, which you can see from all over the city. It's on a hill called Corcovado ...

Recording 4

As your train moves out of the little railroad station at St. Moritz, prepare yourself for a day to remember! The journey from the ski resort of St. Moritz to the attractive town of Zermatt in central Switzerland is only 290 km, but on the way it passes through some of the most beautiful scenery in Europe. During its journey, the train goes through 91 tunnels, and travels over almost 300 bridges ... if you don't like heights, don't look down when you travel over the Oberalp Pass: The track is almost 2,000 m high! As you look out of the train window, you can see some of Switzerland's most fantastic mountains ... the train goes past mountains like the famous Jungfrau. And as your train comes into the station at Zermatt, if you look up, you will see the Matterhorn – Switzerland's highest mountain.

Recording 5

... and if you look up, on the right-hand side of the bus you have a very good view of Edinburgh Castle at the top of the hill ... the oldest part of the building – St. Margaret's Chapel – is almost 900 years old, and the castle as a whole has been occupied since at least ... *fade*

We are now driving along the street known as the Royal Mile ... this is one of the oldest streets – and at 1.6 kilometers, the longest in Edinburgh ... as you can see, there are many historic houses in the street, and many bars, coffee shops, and restaurants here where you can relax over a drink and ... *fade*

The very old house on your left is John Knox's house. Approximately 500 years old, it is the oldest house on the Royal Mile, and one of the oldest in Scotland ... it is where John Knox – the religious reformer who lived in Edinburgh – died in 1572. Knox was well known in his time for ... *fade*

The fine neoclassical building, which contains about four thousand paintings, not only by Scottish painters, but also by well-known European painters such as the Italian master Titian. The gallery is open every day from nine o'clock ... *fade*

... and opposite Holyrood Palace you can see the Our Dynamic Earth exhibition, which shows the history of Planet Earth with a variety of the latest high tech displays. It opened for the first time in July 1999, and a family ticket costs £20 for two adults and three children ... *fade*

Recording 6

... OK ... let's see ... probably the best way is ... go along this road ... over South Bridge there ... and carry on for about 500 meters until the end of this road, North Bridge ... when you come to the tourist information center on the corner ... turn left onto Princes Street ... go straight for about 500 meters ... past the market and the Scott Monument on your left ... and just before the Floral Clock, turn left, that street's called the Mound ... you go straight ... and the National Gallery is on your left – it's the second big building on your left ...

How long does it take?

Probably about 20 minutes.

OK, thank you.

You're welcome.

Module 15

Recording 2

Francine

Languages were always my favorite subjects at school. When I was at elementary school where they taught us French from the age of eight ... I found the classes interesting, and I soon found that I was good at learning languages ... so then I started learning Spanish also. Now I'm at university ... next year I'm going to Lisbon to study Portuguese ... when I graduate, I'd like to look for a job where I can use my languages ... in an international company, maybe.

Bill

I was always very bad at school. I failed all my exams, and I left high school at the age of 16. I'm really sorry I didn't work harder at school. I worked as a van driver for a few years ... then I went to college to get some qualifications. I did a course in Information Technology. I studied in the evenings after work: for the first time I really enjoyed going to class: I took my exams again and this time I passed! It shows that it's never too late to learn. Now I've got my own computer sales company!

Recording 3

Part A

Well, we can't really say that one language is easier or more difficult than another language ... it depends. In some ways, yes, English is an easy language to learn ... take the verbs for example ... now in some languages, you have to make many, many changes to the verb – in Latin, for example, there are 120 different forms of one verb! In English, there are only five ... with the verb "go," for example, there's "go," "goes," "went," "going," and "gone" ... but we use these forms in a lot of different ways! And the spelling and pronunciation of English are more difficult than in many languages ... we have a lot of sounds in English ... and the spelling isn't very regular.

Part B

Well, nobody knows exactly how many people are learning English in the world today ... but it's certainly more than it was fifty years ago ... For example, fifty years ago very few people in China learned English, but now the number of people learning English in China is bigger than the population of the United States! So there are probably about 300 million people learning English now, which is more than any other language ... and some experts say that by the year 2050 – that's about fifty years from now – half of the world's population will speak English ... I'm not sure, I think we'll have to wait and see ...

Recording 4

Clara

At first I thought about the Sports Studies course because I really enjoy swimming and soccer, but in the end I decided that the Leisure and Tourism course is better for me. You know, I like meeting people and I'd really like to work abroad for a few years, maybe as a tour guide or in a hotel, maybe in Spain.

Taka

I'd really like to do a course in art because I'm very interested in art, but I have to think about my job. I work as a fashion designer and when I go back to Japan I want to use a computer to design clothes, so I'm going to do the Basic Information Technology course. I can study art and photography in my free time!

Ben

Yeah, well, I want to have a good time at college, you know, meet lots of people and I don't want to work too much! I like computers a lot and I might do a job with computers one day in the future, but at the moment I'm really interested in music, you know, I'm in a rock band. So I've decided to do the Performing Arts course. Then in the first year I can do drama and music and in the second year I'll probably do a course in singing. Then me and my friends in the band can be rich and famous!

Author acknowledgments

We would like to thank the following people for their help and contribution: Andy Connor, Tessa Lochowski, Matthew Moor, and Tanya Whatling. We would also like to thank everyone at Pearson Education for all their input, support, and encouragement, in particular Frances Woodward (Senior Publisher), Jo Stevenson (Senior Designer), Judith Walters (Senior Editor), Alma Gray (Producer), Andrew Thorpe (Mac Artist).

The publishers and authors are very grateful to the following people and institutions for reporting on the manuscript:

Károlyné Abraham, Budapest; Cristina Anastasiadis, IH Zurbano, Madrid; Fernando Armesto, Links, Buenos Aires; Annamaria Bergamini, Milan; Tom Bradbury, London School of English; Juilia Brannon, Edwards Language School, London; Rosaria Campana, Milan; Pauline Carr, Milan; John Clarke, British Council, Milan; Lynda Fletcher, Crawley College; Yvonne Gobert, Paris; Ana Gutiérrez, EOI San Blás, Madrid; Lisa Hale, St Giles, London; Alison Knowles, IH Buenos Aires; Juilia Korwin, Milan; Nora Krishmar, Links, Buenos Aires; Juarez Lopes, British House, Pelotas, Brazil; Mark Lloyd, IH Serrano, Madrid; Katie Mann, Crawley College; Sue Messenger, Crawley College; Katarzyna Niedźwiecka, Łódź; Francine Pens, EF International School of English, London; Carol Perry, EOI Porta Morera, Alicante; Elżbieta Rodzeń-Leśnikowska, Łódź; Ana Szabó, Cultura Inglesa, São Carlo; Márta Szálka, Toldi Ferenc Gimnázium, Budapest; Alice Szamandone, Budapest; Lyanne Szartimay, Budapest; Arek Tkacz, Łódź; Monica Zafaroni, Links, Buenos Aires.

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material:

Carlin Music Corporation, London NW1 8BD for lyrics of "Return to Sender" words and music by Otis Blackwell & Winfield Scott © 1962 by Elvis Presley Music Inc – all rights administered by R & H Music – all rights reserved; International Music Publications Limited for lyrics of "Trains and Boats and Planes" words by Hal David and music by Burt Bacharach © 1964 New Hidden Valley Music and Casa David Music, USA, Warner/Chappell Music Ltd, London W6 8BS.

Illustrated by: Melanie Barnes, Philip Bannister, Kathy Baxendale, Emma Brownjohn (New Division), Jessie Eckel (New Division), Melvyn Evans (New Division), Martina Farrow (New Division), Diane Fawcett (Artist Partners), Rebecca Gibbon (The Inkshed), Robert Nelmes (The Organisation), David Pattison, Gavin Reece (New Division), David Smith (The Organisation), Marcus Wilde (Three Blind Mice), Moira Wills (New Division).

Photo acknowledgments

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright photographs:

ACE Photo Agency/Jason Burns for page 35 (bottom right), /Jigsaw for page 33 (bottom); Action Images for page 9 (5); All Action/Paul Smith for page 57 (e); Animals Unlimited for page 93 (bottom right); Aquarius, London for page 57 (h); Aspect Picture Library/J. Alex Langley for page 118 (b). /Brian Seed for page 104 (d); Associated Press for pages 58, 75 (top left); Bridgeman Art Library/Mozart Museum, Salzburg, Austria for page 61 (bottom); Britstock-IFA for page 24 (middle right), /Esbj Anderson for page 10 (1), /Eric Bach for page 53 (1), /Roger Cracknell for page 34 (top right), /M. Gottschalk for pages 114 (2 top right), 138 (lower middle right), /Walsh for page 118 (a); Camera Press for page 134 (bottom right), /William Conran for page 139 (bottom right), /Richard Open for page 9 (6), /Richard Stonehouse for page 21 (e), /Theodore Wood for page 31 (middle left); Bruce Coleman Collection/Adriano Bacchella for page 93 (top left), /Pacific Stock for page 91 (l), /Hans Reinhard for page 93 (top right), 93 (bottom left); Colorific!/Paul Conklin for page 114 (1 top right); Corbis/James L. Amos for page 96 (bottom), /Bettman for page 56 (c), 56 (f), /David Lees for page 108 (r), /George Lepp for page 91 (h), /Yang Liu for page 79 (top left), /Francis G. Mayer for page 75 (bottom left), /Neil Miller/Papilio for page 102 (a), /Minnesota Historical Society for page 59 (left), /Vince Streato for page 24 (bottom left), /Underwood & Underwood for page 59 (right), /Bob Winsett for page 19 (lower middle); James Davis for page 114 (1 left); Dorling Kindersley for page 50; Greg Evans International for pages 26 (left), 72, 77 (top right), 90 (c), 118 (f); Eye Ubiquitous/Antonio Aiello for page 125 (lower middle right); Famous/Norbert Ivanek for page 75 (bottom right); Focus PR for page 74 (2 left); Tim Graham for page 20 (c); Ronald Grant Archive for pages 31 (bottom left), 65 (1), 65 (2), 65 (3), 65 (5), 66 (a), 66 (b), /20th Century Fox for page 21 (f), /1992 Universal City Studios & Amblin for page 65 (6); Robert Harding Picture Library/N. Blythe for page 138 (top left), /C.

Bowman for pages 102-103 (c), /Rolf Richardson for page 118 (c), /Peter Scholey for page 77 (lower middle right), /Noble Stock for page 105; Michael Holford for page 94 (top left); Image Bank for page 104 (a), /T. Anderson for page 45 (right), /L. D. Gordon for page 128 (top left), /Juan Silva for page 8; Images Colour Library for pages 102 (b), 104 (c), 108 (bottom middle), 125 (bottom right), 130; Impact/Giles Barnard for page 49 (top), /Anthony Taylor for page 29 (top left); Katz/Adrian Kool for page 26 (right); Kobal Collection for page 66 (c); Tessa Lochowski for page 60; London Features International for page 61 (top); Longman/by Peter Lake for pages 9 (3), 9 (8), 9 (9), 13, 24 (top left), 49 (bottom), 53 (2), 68 (middle), 78, 84 (right), 85, 87, 99 (top), 108 (l), 125 (top); Moviestore Collection for page 56 (b); NHPA/A.N.T. for page 90 (a), /N.A. Callow for page 90 (f), /Andy Rouse for page 90 (e), /A. Warburton & 5. Toon for page 91 (d); Network/Gideon Mendel for page 118 (d), /Mark Peterson/SABA for page 53 (3), /Harriet Logan for page 19 (upper middle); Oxford Scientific Films/Niall Benvie for page 90 (b), /David Cayless for page 90 (g), /Peter Hawkey/Survival Anglia for page 91 (i); The Photographers Library for pages 19 (bottom), 22 (c), 22 (f), 45 (left), 74 (1 right), 74 (2 right), 74 (4 left), 74 (4 right), 79 (bottom right), 91 (i), 91 (k), 91 (n), 118 (e), 123 (bottom), 138 (bottom right); Photostage/Donald Cooper for page 128 (bottom right); Pictor International for pages 14 (bottom right), 23 (e), 24 (top right), 29 (top right), 42, 43 (top), 43 (bottom), 91 (m), 125 (middle left), 125 (upper middle right), 138 (bottom left); Pictures/Clive Sawyer for page 27; Popperfoto for pages 9 (1), 138 (upper bottom left), /Pierre Viroit Reuters for page 74 (1 left), /VisionA-100 for page 84 (middle); Redferns for page 56 (g); Retna/Adrian Boot for page 57 (d), /Bill Davila for page 75 (top right), /Ed Geller for page 31 (middle right), /John Kelly for page 31 (top right), /Mitchell Layton for page 136 (bottom right), /Photofest for pages 20 (b), 57 (a), 65 (4), 131; Rex Features for pages 9 (2), 20 (a), 21 (g), 31 (bottom right), /ABACA for page 140 (top), /Dave Lewis for page 31 (top left), /Pierre Villard/Sipa for page 20 (a); Spectrum Colour Library for pages 10 (2), 114 (1 bottom right), 138 (upper middle right); Sporting Pictures for page 9 (4); The Stock market for pages 37 (bottom right), 39 (c), 39 (e), 39 (h), 138 (lower top middle), 140 (bottom), /Georgina Bowater for page 39 (i), /Charles Gupton for page 39 (a), /David Lawrence for page 39 (b), /1999 Rob Lewine for page 79 (top right), /95 Mugshots for page 128 (top right); gettyone Stone/Glen Allison for page 138 (top right), /Brian Bailey for page 49 (middle), /Ken Biggs for pages 41 (left), 94 (bottom right), /Dan Bosler for page 34 (top left), /Stewart Cohen for pages 15 (top right), 134 (middle), 134 (bottom left), /Donna Day for page 35 (top left), /Ary Diesendruck for page 114 (2 bottom), /Laurence Dutton for page 123 (top), /Fisher/Thatcher for pages 10 (3), 79 (bottom left), 128 (middle left), /Lorentz Gullachsen for page 33 (top), /Frank Herholdt for page 70, /Dale Higgins for page 41 (middle), /Walter Hodges for page 128 (middle right), /Silvestre Machado for page 114 (2 top left), /Ranald Mackechnie for page 22 (d), /Simon McComb for pages 15 (top left), 35 (bottom left), 133, /Dave Nagel for page 128 (bottom left), /Mervyn Rees for page 138 (lower middle left), /Lorne Resnick for page 39 (f), /Charles Sleicher for page 77 (bottom right), /Brooke Slezak for pages 37 (top left), 139 (middle right), /Zeynep Sumen for page 77 (left), /Jerome Tisne for page 22 (a), /Terry Vine for page 128 (upper middle right), /John Warden for page 104 (b), /David Young-Wolff for page 35 (top right); Superstock for pages 9 (7), 36 (bottom), 37 (top right), 39 (d), 113, 139 (top right); Swatch AG/Foto Schlaefli for page 74 (3 left); Telegraph Colour Library for pages 19 (top), 22 (bottom left), 24 (bottom right), 25, 29 (middle), 69, 128 (lower middle right), /Heimo Aga for page 39 (g), /Walter Bibikow for page 41 (right), /Denis Boissary for page 23 (g), /Gary Buss for page 43 (middle), /R. Chapple for page 94 (top right), /Bill Losh for pages 37 (bottom left), 140 (middle), /Matassa for page 138 (upper middle left), /J.P. Nacivet for page 94 (bottom left), /Simon Potter for page 22 (b), /Travel Pix for page 138 (lower top left), /Jochem D. Wijnands for page 77 (upper middle right); Topham Picturepoint for pages 61 (middle), 74 (3 right), /Associated Press for page 125 (bottom left), /Press Association for pages 96 (middle), /Joe Sohm/The Image Works for page 96 (top); Trip/H. Rogers for page 36 (top); John Walmsley for page 26 (middle).

Cover photograph: Telegraph Colour Library.

Special thanks to the following for their help during location photography:

Boardmans, Bishops Stortford; Pearsons Ltd., Bishops Stortford.

Freelance picture research and commissioned photography by Ann Thomson.

A M E R I C A N C U T T I N G E D G E

MINIDICTIONARY



LEVEL 2

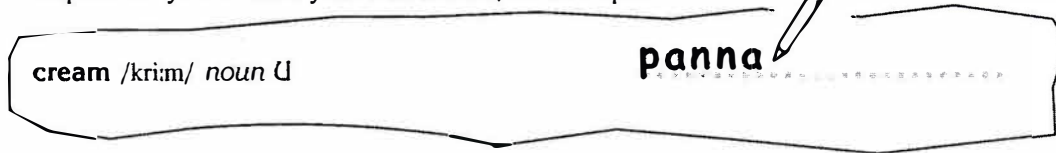
deborah tempest

Welcome to the *American Cutting Edge Minidictionary*!

This *Minidictionary* includes words and meanings from *American Cutting Edge Students' Book*. This makes it a quick and easy way of finding out more about the words you find in the book. It also gives you practice in how to use a monolingual English dictionary.

• What information does the *Minidictionary* provide?

- simple definitions
- example sentences with words in real contexts, often with examples from the *Students' Book*
- pictures for many definitions
- information about grammar and word combinations
- pronunciations in the International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA)
- a space for you to write your translations, for example:



- You will also find information about:
- opposites
 - common errors
 - verb forms

• Which words are in the *Minidictionary*?

The *Minidictionary* explains most of the vocabulary used in *American Cutting Edge Students' Book*, but **not**:

- very simple words in English, that you know already. You will not find entries for words like *small*, *car*, or *want* in the *Minidictionary*
- words used in the *Workbook* or *Teacher's Resource Book*

• How does the *Minidictionary* present grammar?

- Every word in the *Minidictionary* has a "word class" to show if it is a noun, an adjective, an adverb, or a verb.
- Every noun and verb has a label to show whether it is countable, uncountable, transitive, or intransitive:
 - *noun* C countable noun (e.g. *mouse*)
 - *noun* U uncountable noun (e.g. *soup*)
 - *verb* T transitive verb (e.g. *like*)
 - *verb* I intransitive verb (e.g. *appear*)



A

abroad /ə'brɔ:d/ *adverb*

when you **go abroad**, you go to another country: *John is working abroad in Spain for a year. * I like going abroad for my vacations.*

accent /'æksent/ *noun* C **accents**

the way that someone says the sounds of a language: *Sally has an American accent.*

accept /ək'sept/ *verb* T **accepts, accepting, accepted, have accepted**
to say "yes" when someone asks you to do something, take something, or have something: *Do you accept credit cards? * I accepted Kate's invitation to the wedding.*

activity /æk'tɪvɪti/ *noun* C **activities**

something that you do: *Swimming is one of my favorite activities.*

address /'ædres/ *noun* C **addresses**

the number of the house and the name of the street and town where someone lives or works: *What's your address? * My address is 21 Charles Street.*

advertisement /ædvɜ:taɪzmənt/ *noun* C **advertisements**

words and pictures printed in newspapers and magazines that tell you about something you can buy, somewhere you can go, or something you can do: *an advertisement for Eurostar*

afraid /ə'freɪd/ *adjective* **more afraid, most afraid**

1 afraid of frightened that something or someone will hurt you: *She's afraid of dogs.*

2 I'm afraid... a polite way to say that you are sorry about something: *I'm afraid I can't come.*

afternoon /'æftə:nu:n/ *noun* C **afternoons**

the part of the day after 12 p.m. and before the evening: *I went shopping on Monday afternoon. * I'll see you tomorrow afternoon.*

age /eɪdʒ/ *noun* C, U **ages**

1 your age is the number of years that someone has lived: *He left school at the age of 18. * The course is open to young people over 16 years of age.*

2 a period of time in history: *The exhibition shows fashion through the ages.*

aged /eɪdʒd/ *adjective*

aged 3, 16, 40, etc., of the age of 3, 16, 40, etc.: *They have two children, aged 10 and 12.*

altogether /,ɔ:l'tə'geðə/ *adverb*

when you include everyone or everything: *That's \$10.50 altogether, please.*

1

2

.....

1

How old are you?
not What is your age?

2

.....

.....



Antarctic /æn'tɑ:rkɪk/ *noun* **the Antarctic**
the most southern (S) part of the world where it is very cold.
See the picture at the entry for Arctic.

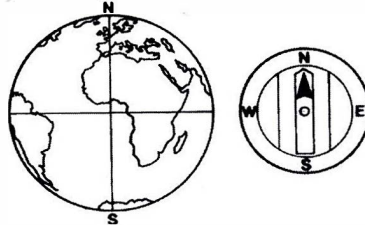
apartment /ə'pɑ:rtmənt/ *noun* **C apartments**
A set of rooms on one floor of a building where someone lives: *Her apartment is near the beach.*

appear /ə'pɪr/ *verb* **I appears, appearing, appeared, have appeared**
if something **appears** somewhere, you see it or notice it there: *The first stamp appeared in 1840. * A cat appeared in the yard.*

apple /'æpəl/ *noun* **C apples**
a hard round red or green fruit that grows on trees

approximate /ə'prɑ:kɪmət/ *adjective*
an **approximate** number or amount is nearly correct but not exact:
What is the approximate population of the world?

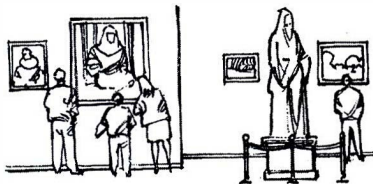
Arctic /ɑ:rkɪk/ *noun* **the Arctic**
the most northern (N) part of the world where it is very cold



area /'eriə/ *noun* **C areas**
part of a city, country, or place: *Camden Lock market is in an attractive area of north London. * A lot of restaurants have a no-smoking area.*

art /ɑ:t/ *noun* **U**
drawing and painting: *She's doing a course in art at college. * a work of art (=a beautiful drawing, painting, etc.)*

art gallery /ɑ:t ,gæləri/ *noun* **C art galleries**
a place you go to see drawings, paintings, etc.



artist /ɑ:tɪst/ *noun* **C artists**
someone who draws or paints pictures



aspirin /'æspɪrɪn/ *noun* **U**
a medicine you take to get rid of pain, for example when you have a headache, a pain in your back, etc.

.....
OPPOSITE: Arctic

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....
OPPOSITE: Antarctic

.....

.....

.....

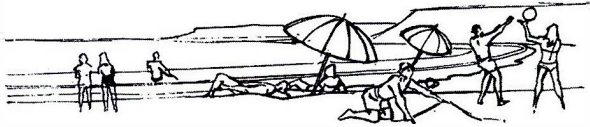
.....

.....



beach /bi:tʃ/ *noun* C **beaches**

an area next to the sea, where people often go to relax, or swim in the sea: *Let's go to the beach.* * *Greece has some beautiful sandy beaches.*



beard /bɪəd/ *noun* C **beards**

hair that a man grows on his face: *David has a beard.*

beautiful /'bjʊ:tɪfəl/ *adjective* **more beautiful, most beautiful; beautifully** *adverb*

very nice to see, hear, or feel: *Isabel is a beautiful baby.* * *The weather was beautiful.* * *The old city is very beautiful.*

because /br'kɔ:z/ *conjunction*

use **because** to give a reason: *I want to study English because it is a very useful language.* * "Why didn't you come to the party?" "Because I was sick."

become /br'kʌm/ *verb* T **becomes, becoming, became, have become**

to change and start to be something else: *He became an actor in 1990.* * *When did you become interested in photography?*

bedroom /'bedru:m/ *noun* C **bedrooms**

a room where you sleep

begin /br'gɪn/ *verb* I, T **begins, beginning, began, have begun**

to start or to start doing something: *What time does the movie begin?* * *I began to learn the piano when I was seven.*

believe /br'i:lv/ *verb* T **believes, believing, believed, have believed**

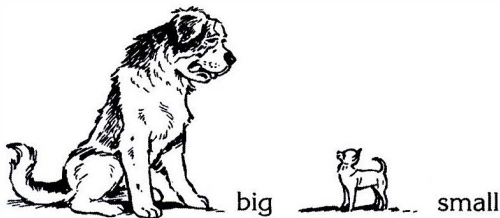
to think that something is true: *I don't believe that Tom is 50 - he looks so young!*

belong to /br'ɒ:ŋ tu:/ *verb* T **belongs to, belonging to, belonged to, have belonged to**

if something **belongs to** you, it is yours and you own it: "Who does this coat belong to?" "It's Anne's." * *This watch belonged to my father.*

big /br'g/ *adjective* **bigger, biggest**

large, not small: *a big house* * *Which is the biggest city in the world?*



bill /brl/ *noun* C **bills**

a piece of paper that tells you how much you have to pay for something, for example food in a restaurant: *Can I have the bill, please?* * *The bill is \$29.50.*

.....

.....

.....
OPPOSITE: ugly, horrible

.....

.....

.....

.....
OPPOSITE: end, stop

.....

.....

.....
OPPOSITE: small

.....



biologist /bəˈraɪlədʒɪst/ *noun* C **biologists**
someone who studies animals and plants

bird /bɜːrd/ *noun* C **birds**
an animal with wings and feathers that produces eggs and can usually fly



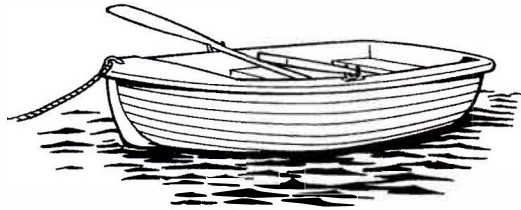
birthday /ˈbɜːrθdeɪ/ *noun* C **birthdays**
the day each year that is the same as the date you were born on:
*My birthday is June 5th. * Sam got lots of birthday cards.*

blind /blaɪnd/ *adjective*
someone who is **blind** cannot see anything: *Stevie Wonder was born blind. * a blind man*

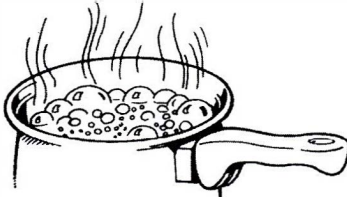
blood /blʌd/ *noun* U
the red liquid inside your body

blouse /blaʊs/ *noun* C **blouses**
a shirt that a girl or woman wears

boat /bəʊt/ *noun* C **boats**
a vehicle that you travel across water in: *We went down the river by boat.*



boil /bɔɪl/ *verb* I, T **boils, boiling, boiled, have boiled**
1 to heat a liquid until it is very hot: *To make tea, first boil some water.*
2 when a liquid **boils**, it gets very hot and makes steam and bubbles:
Water boils at 100 °C.



bored /bɔːrd/ *adjective*
when you are **bored**, you feel tired and unhappy because you have nothing interesting to do: *I'm bored. Let's go out somewhere.*

boring /ˈbɔːrɪŋ/ *adjective* **more boring, most boring**
something that is **boring** makes you feel tired and unhappy because it is not interesting at all: *Mr. Shaw is a boring teacher.*

born /bɔːrn/ *adjective*
be born when a person or animal is **born**, they come out of their mother's body and start their life: *The baby was born yesterday morning at six o'clock.*

OPPOSITE: interesting,
exciting



borrow /'ba:rou/ verb T **borrow**s, **borrowing**, **borrowed**, **have borrowed**

to take or use something that belongs to someone else, when you agree to give it back to them later: *Can I borrow your pen, please?*

bowl /'bou/ noun C **bowls**

a round dish you put food in: *a bowl of cereal*

boyfriend /'bɔɪfrend/ noun C **boyfriends**

a boy or man that someone has a special, romantic relationship with: *Leo is Anya's boyfriend.*

break /breɪk/ noun C **breaks**

a short time when you stop working or studying so you can rest: *I'm tired. Can we take a break now?*

breakfast /'brekfəst/ noun U

the meal you eat in the morning: *What do you eat for breakfast?*

breed /bri:d/ noun C **breeds**

a type of animal: *There are lots of different breeds of dogs.*

bridge /brɪdʒ/ noun C **bridges**

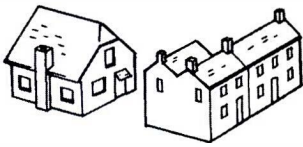
a thing that goes over a road or a river so that people, trains, or cars can cross it

brother /'brʌðə/ noun C **brothers**

a boy or man who has the same parents as you: *I have a brother called David.*

building /'bɪldɪŋ/ noun C **buildings**

a place made of stone, wood, etc., with four walls and a roof, for example a house or store



business /'bɪznəs/ noun U

1 making money by buying and selling things: *He's studying business and computing.*

2 on **business** because of your work: *Nina is going to London on business.*

busy /'bɪzi/ adjective **busier**, **busiest**

1 if you are **busy**, you have a lot of things to do: *Are you busy this weekend? * I had a busy day at work today.*

2 a **busy** place is full of people, cars, or activity: *San Francisco's downtown is very busy on Saturdays.*

.....
OPPOSITE: lend

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



buy /baɪ/ *verb* T **buys, buying, bought, have bought**
to give money to get something: *Can you buy some bread when you go shopping?* * *I bought the plane tickets over the Internet.*

buyer /'baɪər/ *noun* C **buyers**
someone who buys something: *A Japanese buyer paid \$75 million for the painting.*

C

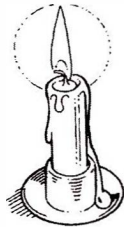
cake /keɪk/ *noun* C, U **cakes**
a sweet food that you make from flour, sugar, eggs, and butter: *Would you like a piece of cake?* * *chocolate cake*

call /kɔ:l/ *verb* T **calls, calling, called, have called**
1 to telephone someone: *Call me on 0208 541000.* * *Let's call a taxi* (=to telephone and ask a taxi to come).
2 to speak loudly and clearly so that someone far away can hear you: *In the past, policemen had to use whistles to call for help.*
3 to give someone or something a name: *What are you going to call the baby?*
4 **be called** to have as a name: *a man called Tom Green*

call /kɔ:l/ *noun* C **calls**
when you telephone someone: *There's a call for you, Mr. Day.*

calorie /'kæləri/ *noun* C **calories**
an amount of energy that is in food: *How many calories are there in chocolate?*

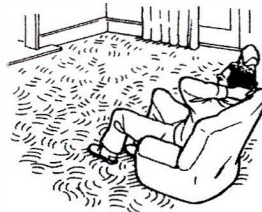
candle /'kændl/ *noun* C **candles**
a thing you burn to make light



capital /'kæpɪtl/ *noun* C **capitals**
the most important city in a country, usually where the government is: *What's the capital of Thailand?*

career /'kæriə/ *noun* C **careers**
a job that you learn to do and work in for many years: *a teaching career*
* *I'm interested in a career in tourism.*

carpet /'kɑ:rpɪt/ *noun* C **carpets**
a thick piece of material that covers a floor



carry /'kæri/ *verb* T **carries, carrying, carried, have carried**
1 to hold something and take it somewhere: *Steve helped me to carry the shopping.*
2 **carry on** to continue doing something: *Carry on along this road for about 200 meters.*

.....
OPPOSITE: sell

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

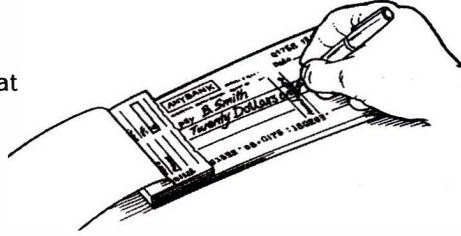
1

2



cheap /tʃi:p/ *adjective cheaper, cheapest*
 not costing a lot of money: *I got a cheap flight to New York.* * Computers are getting cheaper.

check /tʃek/ *noun C checks*
 a piece of paper from a bank that you write on and use to pay for things: *I paid by check.*
 * a check for \$20.



chef /ʃef/ *noun C chefs*
 someone whose job is to cook in a restaurant or hotel

cherry /tʃeri/ *noun C cherries*
 a small round red fruit with a large pit inside

childhood /tʃaɪldhʊd/ *noun U*
 the period of time in your life when you are a child: *Did you have a happy childhood?*

choose /tʃu:z/ *verb T chooses, choosing, chose, have chosen*
 to decide to do or have the thing you like best: *I'm trying to choose a present for my mom's birthday.* * Clare chose a pizza and I had pasta.

church /tʃɜ:rtʃ/ *noun C churches*
 a place where people in the Christian religion go to pray

classical music /klæsɪkl 'mju:zɪk/ *noun U*
 music by people like Mozart, Beethoven, etc., which people think is serious and important

clean /kli:n/ *adjective cleaner, cleanest*
 not dirty: *clean clothes* * Cats like to keep themselves clean.

close /klaʊz/ *verb closes, closing, closed, have closed*
 1 I if a store, restaurant, etc., closes, it is no longer open so you cannot go there: *The bank closes at 4:30.* * What time does the bar close?
 2 T to make something shut: *Close the window, please.* * She closed her eyes and went to sleep.

club /kʌb/ *noun C clubs*
 a place you go to to listen to music and dance

coach /kəʊtʃ/ *verb T coaches, coaching, coached, have coached*
 to teach a sport: *Tim coaches young tennis players.*

coast /kəʊst/ *noun C coasts*
 the area of a country that is close to the sea: *Vancouver is on the west coast of Canada.*

cold /kəʊld/ *adjective colder, coldest*
 not warm or hot: *It's very cold here in the winter.* * cold water

OPPOSITE: expensive

OPPOSITE: dirty

OPPOSITE: open

OPPOSITE: warm, hot



college /'kɑ:lɪdʒ/ *noun* C **colleges**

a place where you go to study after you leave school: *I went to college to study art.*

color /'kɒlə/ *noun* C **colors**

blue, red, green, yellow, orange, etc., are **colors**: *What color is your car?*

colorblind /'kɒlə'blaɪnd/ *adjective*

not able to see the difference between the colors red and green

colorful /'kɒləfʊl/ *adjective*

having lots of different colors: *colorful flowers*

come /kʌm/ *verb* I **comes, coming, came, have come**

1 to arrive: *What time do you come home from work?* * *A postcard came from Anna this morning.*

2 **come from** where you **come from** is the place where you were born and usually live: *I come from London.*

comfortable /'kʌmfərtəbl/ *adjective* **more comfortable, most**

comfortable

comfortable clothes, shoes, chairs, etc., feel nice to wear, sit on, or be in: *I usually wear comfortable clothes at home like jeans and T-shirts.* * *This car is very comfortable.*

common /'kɒ:mən/ *adjective* **more common, most common**

1 if something is **common**, you often see it: *Sam is a common name in English.*

2 **have something in common** to be interested in or like the same things as another person: *Sadie and I have a lot in common.* * *I have a lot in common with Sadie.*

communicate /kə'mju:nikeɪt/ *verb* I **communicates, communicating, communicated, have communicated**

to exchange information with other people, for example by speaking, writing, telephoning, etc.: *I usually communicate with my friends by phone.*

communication /kə'mju:nɪ'keɪʃn/ *noun* U

when you exchange information with other people: *Email has made communication much quicker and easier.*

company /'kʌmpəni/ *noun* C **companies**

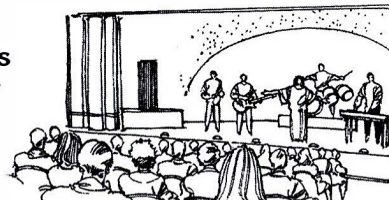
a business that makes things to sell or gives people a service: *Sony is a big Japanese company.*

composer /kəm'pəuzə/ *noun* C **composers**

someone who writes music, especially as a job: *Mozart was a famous composer from Austria.*

concert /'kɒ:nsə/ *noun* C **concerts**

a performance of music played for lots of people



1

2

OPPOSITE: uncomfortable

1

OPPOSITE: rare

2



TRANSLATION

connection /kə'nekʃn/ noun C

when two or more things are joined together, especially by electricity, computers, or telephone: *All you need is a computer and a telephone connection and you can use the Internet.*

.....
verb = connect

contain /kən'teɪn/ verb T **contains, containing, contained, have contained**

if something **contains** another thing, it has that thing inside it: *Does this dish contain any meat? * The bottle contains one liter.*

.....

cooking /'kʊkɪŋ/ noun U

making food ready to eat: *I really enjoy cooking.*

.....
verb = to cook

copy /'kɑ:pɪ/ verb T **copies, copying, copied, have copied**

1 to write, draw, or make something so it looks exactly the same as something else: *I copied the address into my notebook.*

2 to try to do the same as another person: *Practice the dialog by copying the voices on the tape.*

1

2

copy /'kɑ:pɪ/ noun C **copies**

1 something that is made to look exactly the same as something else: *He sent me a copy of the letter to Kristen.*

2 one of many books, CDs, newspapers, etc., that are all the same: *a copy of Time magazine * The book sold millions of copies last year.*

1

2

cost /kɔ:st/ verb T **costs, costing, cost, have cost**

to be the amount of money that you must pay to buy something: *How much do the tickets cost? * These shoes cost \$50.*

.....

cost /kɔ:st/ noun C **costs**

the amount of money you must pay to buy something: *The cost of the flight includes airport tax.*

.....

couple /'kʌpl/ noun C **couples**

two people who are married or in a relationship: *a young couple*

.....

cousin /'kʌzɪn/ noun C **cousins**

the child of your aunt or uncle: *Mike has ten cousins.*

.....

cream /kri:m/ noun U

a thick liquid made from milk: *strawberries and cream*

.....

cross /krɒs/ verb T **crosses, crossing, crossed, have crossed**

1 to go from one side of a road, river, bridge, etc., to the other: *Be careful how you cross the road.*

2 **cross out** to draw a line through something you have written because it is wrong: *Cross out the wrong answer.*

.....

crowd /kraʊd/ noun C **crowds**

a lot of people all together: *There are crowds of tourists here in the summer.*

.....



culture /'kʌltʃə/ *noun* C, U
a country's **culture** is its general way of life, and its art, music, ideas, and traditions

customer service /'kʌstəmər 'sɜ:rvɪs/ *noun* C
people providing help to customers who have paid for their products or services

cybercafé /'saɪbər,kæfeɪ/ *noun* C **cybercafés**
a coffee shop where you can use computers that are connected to the Internet

D

dance /dæns/ *verb* I **dances, dancing, danced, have danced**
to move your feet and other parts of your body around to music: *This is great music to dance to.* * *Do you like dancing?*

dance /dæns/ *noun* U
the activity or art of dancing: *She studies drama, music, and dance.*

date /deɪt/ *noun* C **dates**
the day of the month that it is: *The date today is July 1st.* * *Today's date is July 1st.*

date of birth /,deɪt əv 'bɜ:θ/ *noun* C **dates of birth**
the date you were born: *Josh's date of birth is May 3rd 1986.*

daughter /'dɔ:tər/ *noun* C **daughters**
a girl child: *Henry has four daughters but no sons.*

decide /dɪ'saɪd/ *verb* I **decides, deciding, decided, have decided**
to think carefully about the different things you can do or have and choose one of them: *We decided to go to Paris for the weekend.* * *I can't decide what to wear to the party.*

delicious /dɪ'lɪʃəs/ *adjective* **more delicious, most delicious**
very good to eat: *Thanks for the meal, it was delicious.*

deliver /dɪ'lɪvər/ *verb* T **delivers, delivering, delivered, have delivered**
to take letters, goods, etc., to the person or place they have been sent to: *Let's order a pizza and ask them to deliver it.* * *The mailman usually delivers the mail at about eight o'clock.*

demonstrate /demənstreɪt/ *verb* T **demonstrates, demonstrating, demonstrated, have demonstrated**
to show someone how to do something or how a machine works: *A sales clerk demonstrated the DVD player to me.*

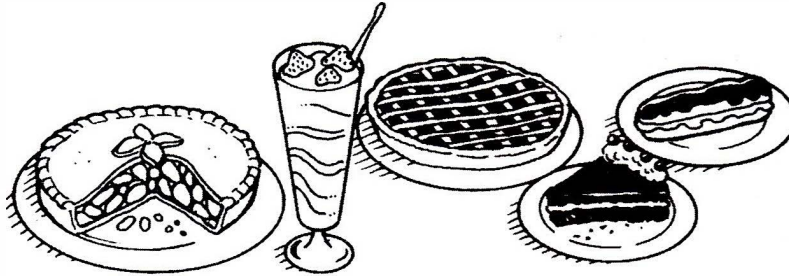
department store /dɪ'pɑ:rtmənt ,stɔ:ɪ/ *noun* C **department stores**
a very large store that sells many different kinds of things

A vertical column of dotted lines for writing translations, aligned with the text on the left.



desert /'dezərt/ *noun* C **deserts**
 an area of land where it is very dry and there are not many plants because it does not rain there very often

dessert /dɪ'zɜ:rt/ *noun* C **desserts**
 sweet food you eat at the end of a meal, such as pie or cake



diamond /'daɪəmənd/ *noun* C **diamonds**
 a very hard stone that looks like glass and costs a lot of money

die /daɪ/ *verb* I **dies, dying, died, have died**
 to stop being alive: *Faye's mother died last year.*

diet /'daɪət/ *noun* C **diets**
 1 the sort of food that you usually eat: *Athletes need to be fit and have a healthy diet.* (=eat food that is healthy)
 2 **be/go on a diet** to eat only some types of food, or less food than usual because you want to get thinner: *Kelly's on a diet.*

difference /'dɪfrəns/ *noun* C **differences**
 the way that one thing or person is not the same as another: *Someone who is colorblind cannot see the difference between red and green.*

different /'dɪfrənt/ *adjective* **more different, most different**
 not the same as another person or thing: *Max has worked in lots of different countries.* * *Nell is very different from her parents.*

difficult /'dɪfɪkəlt/ *adjective* **more difficult, most difficult**
 not easy to understand or do: *Do you think English is a difficult language?* * *It's not difficult to learn to use a computer.*

dinner /'dɪnər/ *noun* C **dinners**
 the main meal of the day, usually the one you eat in the evening: *What time do you usually have dinner?*

direct /dɪ'rekt, daɪ-/ *adjective* **more direct, most direct**
 without stopping, turning, or changing your direction: *There isn't a direct flight, you have to change planes in Paris.* * *The train goes direct to Heathrow from Paddington station.*

direct /dɪ'rekt, daɪ-/ *verb* T, I **directs, directing, directed, have directed**
 to give instructions to the actors in a movie or play about what to do and how to perform: *He wrote the movie and also directed it.* * *At drama school we tried directing as well as acting.*

.....

.....

.....

.....

1

2

.....

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: easy

.....

.....

.....



directions /dɪ'rekʃnz, daɪ-/ *noun plural*

instructions that tell you how to get to a place: *I was lost and so I asked someone for directions.* * *Can you give me directions to the National Gallery?*

discover /dɪs'kʌvə/ *verb T discovers, discovering, discovered, have discovered*

to find a thing or place for the first time: *Marie Curie discovered radium and polonium.* * *Which European discovered Australia?*

distance /dɪ'stəns/ *noun C distances*

how far it is from one place to another: *The distance from London to Oxford is about 100 kilometers.* * *The beach is only a short distance from the hotel.*

divorced /dɪ'vɔ:rst/ *adjective*

not married to someone any more because your marriage has been legally ended: *My parents are divorced.*

document /'dɔ:kjʊmənt/ *noun C documents*

an official piece of paper or book such as a driver's license or a passport: *Don't lose your identity card, it's an important document.*

doll /dɔ:l/ *noun C dolls*

a child's toy that looks like a very small person

downtown /'daʊn'taʊn/ *adjective, adverb, noun*

1 *adjective*, of or in the middle of a city or town: *hotels in downtown Las Vegas*

2 *adverb* in or into the middle of a city or town: *There are lots of stores downtown.* **I drove downtown.*

3 *noun* the middle of a city or town: *Seattle's downtown is relatively small.*

draw /drɔ:/ *verb T draws, drawing, drew, have drawn*

to make a picture with a pencil: *Draw a picture of a dog.*

drink /drɪŋk/ *verb drinks, drinking, drank, have drunk*

1 *T* to put liquid into your mouth:

I don't drink coffee, I prefer tea.

* *It's good for you to drink lots of water.*

2 *I* to drink alcoholic drinks:

"Would you like a glass of wine?"

"No, thanks. I don't drink."



drink /drɪŋk/ *noun C drinks*

a liquid, for example water or coffee that you drink: *Can I have a drink, please?* * *I went to the bar to buy some drinks.*

Dotted lines for translation writing.



drug /drʌg/ *noun* C **drugs**

something that people eat, smoke, or inject (=put into their blood using a needle) because it makes them feel happy or excited. In many countries it is against the law to use drugs: *Heroin is an illegal drug.* * *Dogs help the police search for drugs.*

drum /drʌm/ *noun* C **drums**
a musical instrument that you h
Tim plays the drums in a band.



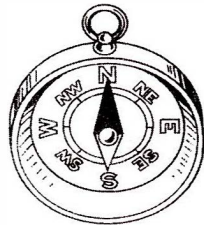
DVD /di: vi: 'di:/ *noun* C **DVDs (digital videodisc)**
a thin, round plastic disc with film, music, or video stored on it. You play DVDs on a computer or in a **DVD player**.

E

early /'ɜ:li/ *adverb, adjective* **earlier, earliest**

- 1 before the usual time or the time you expect: *The plane arrived ten minutes early.*
- 2 near the beginning of a period of time: *The children usually wake up early in the morning.* * *the early part of the twentieth century*
- 3 in your **early twenties, thirties, etc.**, about the age of 20–23, 30–33 etc.: *Lea is in her early twenties.*

east /i:st/ *noun* U
one of the four points that tell you the direction of something. **East** is the way you look to see the sun rise: *Manitoba is in the east of Canada.*



east

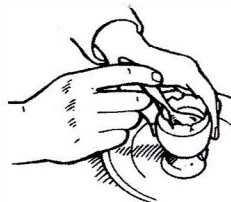
easy /i:zi/ *adjective* **easier, easiest**
not difficult to understand or do: *The homework was really easy.* * *Tennis is not an easy game.* * *Is your car easy to drive?*

eat /i:t/ *verb* T **eats, eating, ate, have eaten**
to put food into your mouth, chew it, and swallow it: *She eats lots of fruit.* * *What did you eat for lunch today?*



economics /i:kə'næ:miks, ,ek-/ *noun* U
the study of how a country or area manages business and money

egg /eg/ *noun* C **eggs**
birds lay eggs and we eat several types, including chicken and duck eggs: a **boiled egg**



.....

.....

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: late

.....

OPPOSITE: west

.....

OPPOSITE: difficult

.....

.....

.....



election /ɪˈleɪʃn/ noun C **elections**

an occasion when people vote in order to choose a leader or a government: *Bill Clinton won the election for the second time in 1996.*

electronics /ɪˌlekˈtrɔːnɪks, ˌelɪk-/ noun U

making things using the kind of technology that is in a computer

elementary school /eləˈment(ə)riː skuːl/ noun C **elementary schools**

a school for children from the first through eighth grades (=students of the same age who are in the same group for a particular year)

⇒ A school for children after grade eight is a **high school**.

email /iːˈmeɪl/ noun C **emails**

a message that you send to someone using a computer. You can send or receive an email message: *What's your email address? * Did you get my email?*

email /iːˈmeɪl/ verb T **have emailed**

when you **email** someone, you use a computer to send them a message: *I emailed Rob with the information.*

end /end/ noun C **ends**

the last or final part of something; where something stops: *the end of the war * I cried at the end of the movie.*

end /end/ verb I **ends, ending, ended, have ended**

to finish or stop: *What time did the party end?*

OPPOSITE: begin, start

endless /endləs/ adjective

an **endless** number or amount of something is a very large number or amount of it, so that it seems never to end: *There is an endless variety of fruit and vegetables at the market.*

enjoy /ɪnˈdʒɔɪ/ verb T **enjoys, enjoying, enjoyed, have enjoyed**

to get pleasure from something: *Did you enjoy your vacation? * I really enjoy reading.*

environment /ɪnˈvaɪrənmənt/ noun

the environment the land, air, and water in which people, animals, and plants live: *Rachel Carson wrote books about the environment.*

environmental /ɪnˈvaɪrənmentl/ adjective

relating to the natural environment of the land, air, and sea: *There are a lot of environmental problems in the world.*

evening /iːˈvɪnɪŋ/ noun C **evenings**

the end of the day and the beginning of the night: *Saturday evening * I went out for the evening with Steve.*

exactly /ɪɡˈzæktli/ adverb

say this to give exact information, or a completely correct number or amount: *The journey takes exactly half an hour. * Nobody knows exactly how the accident happened.*



excellent /'eksələnt/ *adjective*
very good or very good quality: *Our city has excellent public transport.*
* *There was excellent food at the hotel.*

.....
no comparative

exciting /ɪk'saɪtɪŋ/ *adjective* **more exciting, most exciting**
making you feel happy because it is full of interesting things: *Los Angeles is a very exciting place.* * *The kids are bored. They want something exciting to happen!*

.....
OPPOSITE: boring

exercise /'eksəsaɪz/ *noun* U
physical activity like running, swimming, etc., that you do to make your body healthy: *Polly goes to an exercise class every week.* * *Swimming is good exercise.*

.....

exhibition /,eksɪ'bɪʃn/ *noun* C **exhibitions**
a public show, for example in a museum or art gallery, where people can come to see things: *an art exhibition*

.....

expensive /ɪk'spensɪv/ *adjective* **more expensive, most expensive**
costing a lot of money: *an expensive restaurant* * *His car was very expensive.*

.....
OPPOSITE: cheap

explain /ɪk'spleɪn/ *verb* T **explains, explaining, explained, have explained**
to tell someone about something, so that they understand it: *Can you explain who everyone is in the wedding photo?* * *She explained how to get to the station.* * *I didn't understand the question but the teacher explained it to me.*

.....

explorer /ɪk'splɔːrər/ *noun* C **explorers**
someone who travels to places that nobody has visited before in order to find out about them: *Christopher Columbus was a famous explorer.*

.....

eye /aɪ/ *noun* C **eyes**
you see with your eyes



F

.....

fact /fækt/ *noun* C **facts**
1 something that you know is true or has happened: *a book of amazing facts about animals*
2 **in fact** say this to add something that is really true: *Cats are quite lazy; in fact they sleep about 16 hours a day.*

.....

fall /fɔːl/ *noun* U the part of the year after summer, and before winter: *Leaves change color in fall.*
⇨The other seasons are **spring, summer, and winter.**

.....

famous /'feɪməs/ *adjective* **more famous, most famous**
if someone or something is **famous**, a lot of people know about them or recognize them: *Copacabana beach is very famous.* * *a famous artist*

.....



TRANSLATION

fantastic /fæn'tæstɪk/ *adjective* **more fantastic, most fantastic**
very good; wonderful: "How was your vacation?" "It was fantastic!"
* Mark's got a fantastic new job.

far /fɑ:r/ *adverb, adjective* **farther/further, farthest/furthest**
a long distance away: **How far** is it downtown from here? (=what distance away is it) * *How far did you walk?*

farm /fɑ:rm/ *noun* **C farms**
land and buildings where a **farmer** grows food and keeps animals

fashion /fæʃn/ *noun* **U**
the new and different styles of clothes that people like to wear: a *fashion designer*
(=someone whose job is making drawings of new clothes)



fast /fæst/ *adjective* **faster, fastest**
very quick: *The fast train to London takes an hour.* * *What is the fastest animal in the world?*

fast /fæst/ *adverb* quickly: *How fast can you run?* * *She drives too fast.*

favorite /'feɪvərɪt/ *adjective*
your **favorite** person or thing is the one you like more than any other:
What was your favorite subject at school?

favorite /'feɪvərɪt/ *noun* **C favorites**
the person or thing you like more than any other: *I like all her songs but I think this one is my favorite.*

feather /'feðər/ *noun* **C feathers**
birds have **feathers** all over their bodies



feed /fi:d/ *verb* **T feeds, feeding, fed /fed/, have fed**
to give someone food, for example a baby or an animal: *Don't forget to feed the pets.* * *The baby wants to feed herself.* (=use a spoon to put food in her mouth)

film /fɪlm/ *verb* **I, T films, filming, filmed, have filmed**
to make a film: *He stops filming to play golf.*

find out /,faɪnd 'aʊt/ *verb* **T finds out, finding out, found out, have found out**
to get some information about something or someone: *I went to the library to find out about piano lessons.*

fine /faɪn/ *adjective*
I'm **fine** I'm well and quite happy: "How are you?" "Fine, thanks."

finish /'fɪnɪʃ/ *verb* **I, T finishes, finishing, finished, have finished**
to stop or to stop doing something: *Classes finish at three o'clock every day.* * *After I finished work I went for a beer.*

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: near

.....

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: slow

.....

OPPOSITE: slowly

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: begin, start



fish /fɪʃ/ *noun* C **fish** or **fishes**
 an animal that lives in the sea

float /flaʊt/ *verb* I **floats, floating, floated, have floated**
 to stay on the surface of water: *Wood can float.* * *We had lunch in a floating restaurant.*

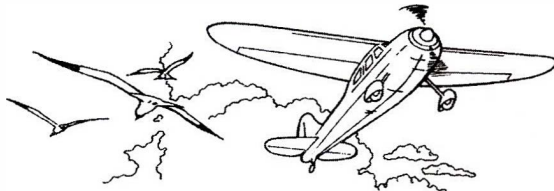
flower /'flaʊər/ *noun* C **flowers**
flowers are the brightly colored parts of plants:
I gave Mom a bunch of flowers.



fly /flaɪ/ *noun* C **flies**
 a small insect with two wings



fly /flaɪ/ *verb* I **flies, flying, flew, have flown**
1 birds **fly** by moving their wings up and down: *How far does a bird fly every year?*
2 to travel in a plane: *You can fly from Heathrow airport.*



flying /'flaɪ-ɪŋ/ *noun* U
 traveling in a plane: *Carol hates flying.*

folk music /'fouk ,mju:zɪk/ *noun* U
 traditional music that has been played by ordinary people in a particular area for a long time

foreign language /'fɔ:ɪən 'læŋgwɪdʒ/ *noun* C **foreign languages**
 a language that people speak in another country: *Alex speaks five foreign languages.*

forget /fə'get/ *verb* I T **forgets, forgetting, forgot, have forgotten (or have forgot)**
 if you forget something, you don't keep it in your mind: *"Did you remember to buy the carrots?" "Sorry, I completely forgot!"*
 * *Don't forget your keys!*

OPPOSITE: remember

form /fɔ:m/ *noun* C **forms**
1 a way that you write or say a word: *Write the past tense forms of these verbs.*
2 a piece of paper printed with questions and spaces for you to write in: *Please fill in the application form.*

free /fri:/ *adverb, adjective* **freer, freest**
1 *adverb* not costing anything: *Children under 12 can get into the museum free.* (=they do not pay) * *Call free on 0800 243546.*
2 *adjective* not busy so you can do what you want: *What do you like doing in your free time?*
3 *adjective* if a seat, room, etc., is **free**, no one is using it: *Is this seat free?* (=can I use it)

1

2

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1

2

.....

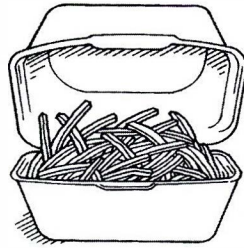
1

2

3



French fries /frentʃ 'fraɪz/ *noun plural*
thin pieces of potato cooked in hot oil



fresh /freʃ/ *adjective fresher, freshest*
fresh food looks and tastes good because it is not old or was made a short time ago: *We picked this fruit a few hours ago – it's very fresh.*

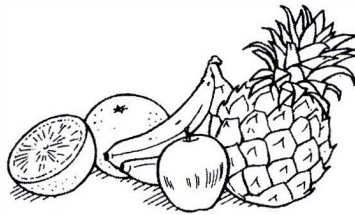
fried /fraɪd/ *adjective*
cooked in hot oil: *fried potatoes*

friend /frend/ *noun C friends*
a person that you know and like a lot: *Kate is a good friend of mine.*
* *I hope to make lots of friends in my new job.*

friendly /frendli/ *adjective friendlier, friendliest*
someone who is **friendly** is kind, helpful, and nice to other people: *That sales clerk wasn't very friendly!* * *a friendly dog*

from /fra:m/ *preposition*
Where are you from? * *We drove from east to west.* * *I worked in France from 1996 to 1999.*

fruit /fru:t/ *noun U, C fruits*
something that grows on a tree and you can eat: *a piece of fruit*

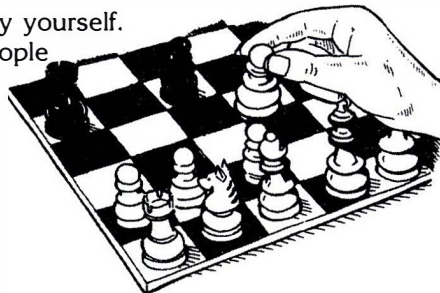


fruit juice /fru:t dju:s/ *noun U*
the liquid that comes out of fruit: *Which fruit juice would you like? We have apple, orange, or pineapple.*

fun /fʌn/ *noun U*
something that makes you happy and that you enjoy doing: *I had lots of fun with my friends on the weekend.* * *The school disco was fun.*

G

game /geɪm/ *noun C games*
an activity or sport you do to enjoy yourself.
You can play games with other people or by yourself: *a game of tennis*
* *Liz loves playing computer games.* (=a game you play on a computer)



gardens /'gɑ:rdnz/ *noun plural*
a public park where there are a lot of flowers and plants: *Kensington Gardens*

verb = fry

not friend



geography /dʒiːɑːɡrəfi/ *noun* U

the study of the countries of the world and the natural things in them such as rivers, mountains, forests, and weather

get /get/ *verb* T **gets, getting, got, have got (or have gotten)**

1 to become, by changing from one state to another: *Lou and Ian are getting married.*

2 to take, find, or receive something: *You need to get some qualifications if you want to get a good job.*

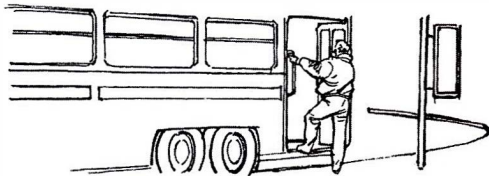
3 to buy something: *Can you get some cat food please?*

4 to travel: *How do you get to work – by bus or car?*

get off /get ˈɒf/ *verb* T **gets off, getting off, got off, have got off**
to leave a bus, train, or plane:
You get off the train at Paddington.



get on /get ˈɒn/ *verb* T **gets on, getting on, got on, have got on**
to go into a bus, train, or plane: *The bus was so crowded I couldn't get on it.*



get up /get ˈʌp/ *verb* I **gets up, getting up, got up, have got up**

to stop sleeping and get out of bed: *I usually get up at seven o'clock.*



give /ɡɪv/ *verb* T **gives, giving, gave, have given**

1 to let someone have something: *I gave the baby some milk.*

2 to tell someone something: *Can you give me directions downtown?*

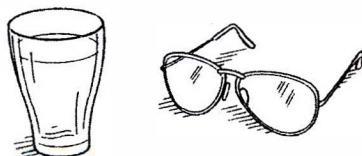
given name /ˈɡɪvən neɪm/ C **given names**

a name given to you when you are born, and used before your family name; a first name: *My given name is David.*

glass /glæs/ *noun* C **glasses**

1 a thing made of glass that you drink from: *a glass of water * wine glasses*

2 glasses things you wear to help your eyes see better: *Anne wears glasses.*



.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: go to bed/sleep

.....

OPPOSITE: take

.....

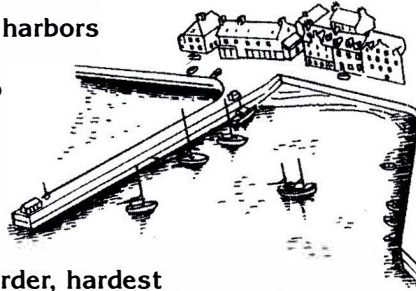
OPPOSITE: family

1

2



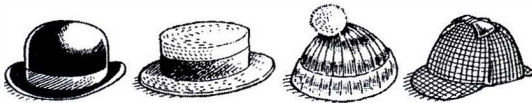
harbor /ˈhɑ:bər/ *noun* C **harbors**
a place at the edge of the sea where ships stop



hard /hɑ:rd/ *adjective* **harder, hardest**
1 not easy to bend or break; not soft: *Wood is a hard material.* * Do you like boiled eggs hard or soft?
2 difficult to do: *The exam was really hard.*

hard /hɑ:rd/ *adverb*
using a lot of physical or mental effort: *Jo works very hard at school.*

hat /hæt/ *noun* C **hats**
a piece of clothing that you wear on your head



hate /heɪt/ *verb* T **hates, hated, have hated**
to have a strong feeling of not liking someone or something: *I hate spiders.* * Men usually hate shopping.

have /hæv/ *verb* T **has, having, had, have had**
1 something that you **have** is yours: *They have three children.* * Rosy has blue eyes. * Does Dan have a girlfriend?
2 to eat or drink something: *We had fish for lunch.* * Let's have coffee.

head /hed/ *noun* C **heads**
the most important person in a school or company: * *Bill Gates is the head of Microsoft.*

headphones /ˈhedfəʊnz/ *noun plural*
a piece of equipment that you wear over your ears for listening to music



hear /hɪr/ *verb* I, T **hears, hearing, heard, have heard**
1 to get sounds coming into your ears: *I can't hear you – can you speak a bit louder please?* * When you hear the beep please leave a message.
2 **hear about** to get news or find out about something: *How did you hear about the job?*

heights /haɪts/ *noun plural*
very tall places or buildings: *I don't want to go up to the top of the tower, I'm afraid of heights.*

help /help/ *verb* T **helps, helping, helped, have helped**
to do something useful for someone that makes their work easier: *My mom helped me with my homework.* * I'll help you to clean the house.

herb /ɜ:rb/ *noun* C **herbs**
a plant that you use in cooking to add more taste

1
OPPOSITE: soft

2
OPPOSITE: easy

.....
OPPOSITE: love

.....
BOSS

1

2



high school /haɪ sku:l/ *noun* C **high schools**

a school for children in grades nine to twelve (=students of the same age who are in the same group for a particular year)

↔ school for children before grade nine is an **elementary school**

hill /hɪl/ *noun* C **hills**

an area of high land. A hill is not as tall as a mountain:

They live at the top of a hill.

* *San Francisco is full of hills.*



historic /hɪ'stɔ:ɪk/ *adjective* **more historic, most historic**

a **historic** place is important and famous because of things that happened there in the past: *an old city full of historic interest*

history /'hɪstəri/ *noun* U

1 the study of all the things that happened in the past: *History is a fascinating subject.*

2 all the things that happened in the past in a particular place or subject: *the history of art*

hobby /'hɑ:bi/ *noun* C **hobbies**

something you enjoy doing in your spare time: *My hobbies are reading, soccer, and playing on the computer.*

holiday /'hɑ:lədeɪ/ *noun* C **holidays**

a day when people do not go to work or school, and businesses, stores, banks, etc., are closed because of a national celebration: *July 14th is a legal holiday in France.*

home /hoʊm/ *noun* C **homes**

1 the house or apartment where you live: *Their home is in Scotland.*

2 when you are **at home**, you are in your house or apartment: *"Did you go out last night?" "No, I stayed at home."*

3 **the home of** something is the place where it started: *Hollywood is the home of the movie industry.*

home /hoʊm/ *adverb*

to or in the place where you live: *What time are you going home today?*

* *I usually get home (=arrive at my home) at about six in the evening.*

hot /hɑ:t/ *adjective* **hotter, hottest**

not cold. The sun is hot: *It's really hot today.* * *Where is the hottest place on earth?*

housework /'haʊswɜ:rk/ *noun* U

work that you do to keep your house clean and tidy: *Ben really likes doing housework.*

human /'hju:mən/ *adjective*

connected with people, not animals or machines: *the human body*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: cold



human /'hju:mən/ *noun* C **humans**
a person: *How many humans are there in the world?*

hungry /'hʌŋɡri/ *adjective* **hungrier, hungriest**
when you are **hungry** you want to eat: *Is dinner ready? I'm hungry!*

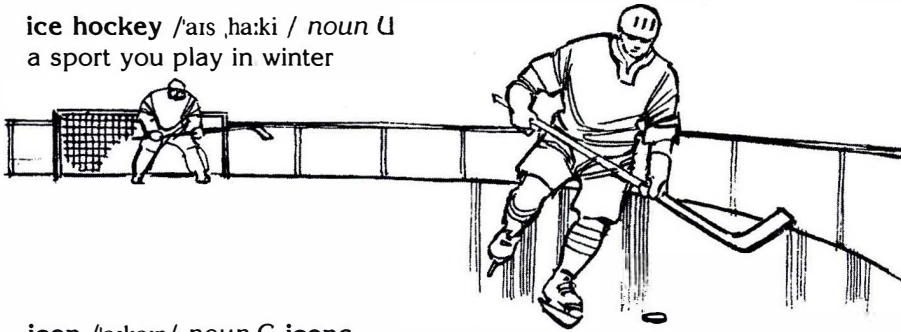
husband /'hʌzbənd/ *noun* C **husbands**
a man that a woman is married to: *Her husband's name is John.*

I

ice cream /'aɪs 'kri:m/ *noun* C, U **ice creams**
1 U a type of cold sweet food made from cream (=thick milk) with fruit, chocolate, etc.:
This Italian ice cream is delicious!
2 C a small piece of ice cream: *I bought ice creams for all the kids.*



ice hockey /'aɪs ,hɑ:ki / *noun* U
a sport you play in winter



icon /'aɪkən/ *noun* C **icons**
a very famous person who people admire a lot: *Nelson Mandela was an icon of the twentieth century.*

idea /'aɪdɪə/ *noun* C **ideas**
1 a plan or suggestion that you think of: *"Let's go out tonight." "Good idea. What do you want to do?"* * *The Internet was a fantastic idea.*
2 **it's a good idea to** say this to tell someone that it would be sensible to do something: *It's a good idea to learn a foreign language.*

imagine /'ɪmædʒən/ *verb* T **imagines, imagining, imagined, have imagined**
to make a picture in your mind of a situation that is not real: *Can you imagine your life without a television?*

important /'ɪmpɔ:rtənt/ *adjective* **more important, most important**
1 if a thing is **important**, you need to have it, think about it, or do it: *What is the most important thing in life?* * *My family is very important to me.*
2 having a lot of power or influence: *Tim Berners-Lee had an important idea - the World Wide Web.*

impossible /'ɪmpə:səbl/ *adjective* **more impossible, most impossible**
if something is **impossible**, you cannot do it or have it: *Parking downtown is impossible.* * *It's impossible to park downtown.*

OPPOSITE: possible



improve /ɪm'pru:v/ verb I, T **improves, improving, improved, have improved**

to get better or make something better than it was before: *Jenny took a course to improve her computer skills.*

include /ɪn'klu:d/ verb T **includes, including, included, have included**
to have as a part of another thing: *Does the price include airport tax?*

including /ɪn'klu:dɪŋ/ preposition

say this to show that something is part of a larger group: *People drive on the left in lots of countries, including Britain, India, and Australia.*

independence /ɪndr'pendəns/ noun U

when a country is free and not controlled by another country

industry /ɪndəstri/ noun C **industries**

all the people and work involved in producing a particular product or service: *the movie industry* * *Japan has a big car industry.*

information /ɪnfərmeɪʃn/ noun U

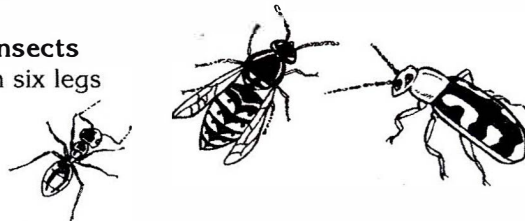
facts about something or facts that you tell someone: *I am going to the library to get some information about Texas.* * *a useful piece of information*

information technology /ɪnfərmeɪʃn tek'nɔ:lədʒi/ noun U

using computers to get and store information: *Mike has a qualification in information technology.*

insect /ɪnsekt/ noun C **insects**

a very small animal with six legs



interest /ɪn'trəst/ noun C **interests**

something that you like doing or learning about: *My main interests are music and reading.* * *I don't really have an interest in soccer.*

interested /ɪn'trəstɪd/ adjective **more interested, most interested**

feeling that you want to do, see, or learn about something, because it seems interesting to you: *Stefan is interested in all kinds of sports.*

interesting /ɪn'trəstɪŋ/ adjective **more interesting, most interesting**

something that is **interesting** attracts your attention and makes you want to do, see, or learn about it: *Is your job interesting?* * *an interesting television program*

Internet /ɪntənet/ noun singular

an international computer system that allows people all over the world to find and send information using their computers: *Try looking it up on the Internet.* * *Internet shopping* * *I can surf the Internet* (=spend time using it) *free in the evenings.*

Internet café /ɪntənet ˌkæfeɪ/ noun C **Internet cafés**

a coffee shop where you can use computers that are connected to the Internet.

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: exclude

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



interview /'ɪntərvju:/ *noun* C **interviews**

a conversation in which someone is asked questions, especially a famous person: *an interview with a famous actor*

interview /'ɪntərvju:/ *verb* T **interviews, interviewing, interviewed, have interviewed**

to ask someone questions in order to find out about their life, their opinions, etc.: *Interview two other students and find out as much as you can about them.*

interviewer /'ɪntərvju:ə/ *noun* C **interviewers**

someone who asks questions in an interview



invent /ɪn'vent/ *verb* T **invents, inventing, invented, have invented**

to make or design something completely new, especially a new machine or a new method of doing something: *Who invented the first camera?*

invention /ɪn'venʃn/ *noun* C **inventions**

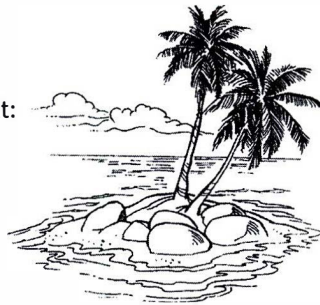
something that someone has invented: *What was the most important invention of the twentieth century – was it the car, the telephone, or the computer?*

inventor /ɪn'ventə/ *noun* C **inventors**

someone who invents things: *Alexander Graham Bell was the inventor of the telephone*

island /'aɪlənd/ *noun* C **islands**

an area of land with water all around it: *Britain is an island.*



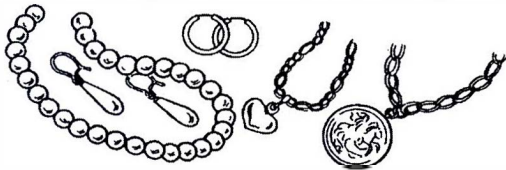
J

jeans /dʒi:nz/ *noun plural*

trousers made of blue cotton called denim

jewelry /dʒu:əlri/ *noun* U

things like rings, necklaces, or earrings that you wear for decoration



join /dʒɔɪn/ *verb* T **joins, joining, joined, have joined**

to become a member of a group, or do something with a group of other people: *Ted joined the army when he was 18.*



journey /ˈdʒɜːmi/ *noun* C **journeys**

traveling from one place to another: *a long journey* * *How long does your journey to work take?*

K

keep /ki:p/ *verb* I, T **keeps, keeping, kept, have kept**

1 to stay in the same state, or make something stay in the same state: *Cats like to keep themselves clean.* * *Keep the drinks cold in the fridge.*

2 to continue doing something: *Freddy keeps playing the same record again and again.*

3 **keep in touch** to continue to see, write to, or telephone someone, so that you are still friends: *Nina lives in America but we keep in touch.*

4 **keep a diary** to regularly write in your diary about things that have happened

kill /kɪl/ *verb* T **kills, killing, killed, have killed**

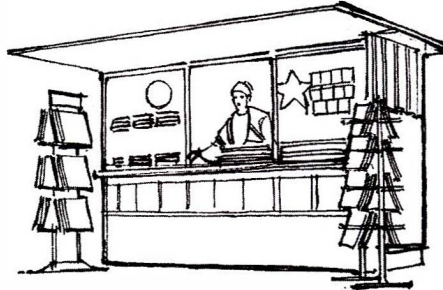
to make a person or animal die: *Do sharks ever kill humans?* * *He was killed in the accident.*

kind /kaɪnd/ *noun* C **kinds**

a type or sort of person or thing: *What kind of food do you like?* * *They sell all kinds of interesting things in the market.*

kiosk /ˈki:ɔːsk/ *noun* C **kiosks**

a very small store, for example in a station or on the street: *a newspaper kiosk*



knife /naɪf/ *noun* C **knives**

an object you use to cut food with: *a knife and fork*



know /noʊ/ *verb* I, T **knows, knowing, knew, have known**

1 when you have learned something, you know it: *Look up the words you don't know in the dictionary.* * *Jan knows a lot about computers.*

* *Only Ruth knew the right answer.*

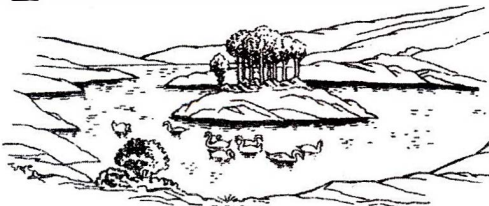
2 when you know someone or something, you have met them or seen them before: *Do you know Rob Walker?* * *I know New York quite well.*

L

lake /leɪk/ *noun* C

an area of water with land all around it:

There's an island in the middle of the lake.



1

2

3

4

.....

.....

.....

.....

1

2

.....



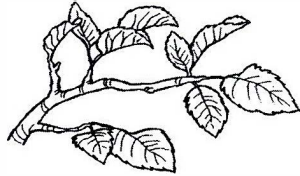
latest /'leɪtəst/ adjective

newest or most modern: *Have you heard their latest CD?* * *Lucy always dresses in the latest fashion.*

law /lɔ:/ noun U

all the rules that a government makes in a country, saying what people may and may not do: *Charles is studying law at college.*

leaf /li:f/ noun C leaves
leaves grow on trees



least /li:st/

at least not less than: *You must be at least 17 years old to drive a car.*

leave /li:v/ verb I, T **leaves, leaving, left, have left**

1 to go away from a place: *When did you leave school?* * *"Is Sandra still here?" "No, she left half an hour ago."*

2 **leave a message** to speak on an answering machine so that someone can listen to it later: *Please leave a message after the tone.*

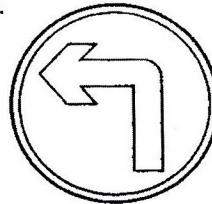
left /left/ adjective, adverb, noun

1 adjective opposite of right: *I write with my left hand.*

2 adverb towards the left side: *Turn left here.*

3 noun singular the left side of somewhere:

*In Britain we drive **on the left**.* * *Cross the road at the traffic light and the movie theater is on your left.*



leisure /'li:ʒər/ noun U

time when you are not working or studying and you can do things you enjoy

less /les/ adjective

a smaller amount of something: *Vicky lives **less than** 10 minutes from here by car.*

let /let/ verb T

say **let's** when you want to do something and you ask someone to do it with you: *Let's have a break now.* * *Let's go swimming this afternoon.*

letter /'letər/ noun C letters

a message that you write on a piece of paper and send to someone: *I got a letter from Glenda today.*

like /laɪk/ verb T **likes, liking, liked, have liked**

1 to think that someone or something is nice or good: *He doesn't like flying.* * *I really like your new dress!*

2 used as a more polite way of saying "want": *Would you like a dessert?*

like /laɪk/ preposition

1 the same as or similar to someone or something else: *Tina looks like her mother.*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: more

.....

.....

1
OPPOSITE: hate

2
.....

1
.....



2 for example: *In Brazil we grow tropical fruit like mangoes and pineapples.*

3 **what is ... like?** say this to find out more about someone or something: *What's the weather like today?*

line /laɪn/ *noun* C **lines**
 a row of people who are waiting for something.
There was a long line at the post office this morning.



link /lɪŋk/ *verb* T **links, linking, linked, have linked**
 to join two things, place, words, etc., together: *Rachel Carson believed that plants, animals, and people are all linked.* * *Millions of people are linked by computers to the Internet.*

listen to /lɪsn tu:/ *verb* T **listens to, listening to, listened to, have listened to**
 to use your ears to hear something: *I enjoy listening to music.*

not I enjoy hearing music

literature /lɪtrətʃər/ *noun* U
 books, plays, and poems that people think are very good and important:
I studied English literature at college.

live /lɪv/ *verb* I **lives, living, lived, have lived**
1 to have as your home: *Where do you live?*
2 to be alive: *How long can you live without water?* * *Leonardo da Vinci lived in the fifteenth century.*

lively /laɪvli/ *adjective* **livelier, liveliest**
 interesting and exciting: *The student bar has a really lively atmosphere.*

long /lɒŋ/ *adjective* **longer, longest**
 a great distance when you measure from one end to the other: *Paul had long hair when he was young.* * *Which is the longest street in Paris?*

OPPOSITE: short

long /lɒŋ/ *adverb*
 a long time, or for a long time: *How long does it take to cook pasta?* * *Did you wait long for the bus?*

look /lʊk/ *verb* I **looks, looking, looked, have looked**
1 **look at** to use your eyes to see something: *Look at that horrible big spider!* * *George looked at his watch – it was ten o'clock.*
2 **look tired, interesting, etc.**, to seem to be tired, interesting, etc.: *You look a bit tired, why don't you go to bed?* * *That movie looks interesting – let's go and see it.*
3 **look good, ordinary, etc.**, to have a nice/ordinary, etc. appearance: *Kate has lots of nice clothes – she always looks good.* * *an ordinary-looking man*

look after /lʊk 'æftər/ *verb* T **looks after, looking after, looked after, have looked after**
 to take care of someone or something: *Mark looked after my dog while I was on vacation.*



look for /'lʊk fɔːr/ *verb* T **looks for, looking for, looked for, have looked for**

to try to find someone or something: *Sally is looking for a new job.*

lose /luːz/ *verb* T **loses, losing, lost, have lost**

1 to no longer have a particular attitude, quality, ability, etc., or to gradually have less of it: *Susie is trying to lose weight – she’s lost two kilos so far.*

2 to not win a game, argument, election, war, etc.: *The government lost by one vote.*

3 to be unable to find something: *I’ve lost the tickets to the show.*

lost /lɒst/ *adjective*

if you are **lost**, you do not know where you are and cannot find your way to the place you want to go: *We got lost on the New York subway.*

love /lʌv/ *noun* U

1 **love from** used at the end of a letter to a friend or someone in your family: *Love, Ally.*

2 **give someone your love** say this to send friendly greetings to someone: *Give our love to Mom and Dad.*

love /lʌv/ *verb* T **loves, loving, loved, have loved**

to like someone or something very much: *“Do you like chocolate?” “Yes. I love it!” * Jamie loves cooking. * I love the way of life in California.*

lunch /lʌntʃ/ *noun* U

the meal you eat in the middle of the day: *What time is lunch?*

M

magazine /'mæɡəziːn/ *noun* C **magazines**

a kind of thin book with a paper cover that you can buy every week, or every month. It has articles, pictures, and stories inside: *I read a magazine while I waited for the train.*

mail /meɪl/ *noun* U

1 the system of sending and receiving letters and parcels to and from people: *I like shopping by mail (=using the mail), it’s very quick and easy.*

2 letters and parcels that people send each other: *The mail arrives at about eight o’clock in the morning.*

make /meɪk/ *verb* T **makes, making, made, have made**

1 to put things together in order to produce something; to create something: *I’m making a cake for Rose’s birthday. * Steven Spielberg is a movie director – he makes movies.*

2 **make friends** to start to have someone as a friend: *Children usually make friends very quickly.*

3 **make money** to get or earn money: *How much money does Bill Gates make every day?*

.....

.....

.....

1

2

OPPOSITE: hate

.....

.....

.....

1

2

3



makeup /ˈmeɪk ʌp/ noun U

creams and powders that you can put on your skin to make yourself look more attractive: *Bella never wears makeup.*

manager /ˈmænɪdʒər/ noun C **managers**

someone whose job is to be in charge of a business, a bank, a department in a company, etc.: *a bank manager* * *Can I speak to the manager, please?*

marital status /ˌmæɪrɪl 'steɪtəs/ noun U

whether you are married or not: *What is your marital status – single, married, or divorced?*

market /ˈmɑːrki:t/ noun C **markets**

a place where people come to buy and sell different things. A market is usually outside: *Camden Lock market* * *There is a fruit and vegetable market in the town square every Friday.*

marketing /ˈmɑːrki:tɪŋ/ noun U

the job of trying to sell a company's products, for example by deciding how and where to advertise the products: *Mary is our marketing manager.*

marriage /ˈmæɪrɪdʒ/ noun U, C **marriages**

the relationship between a man and a woman who are legally married to each other: *After a few years of marriage they started to have problems.* * *They had a long and happy marriage.*

married /ˈmæɪrɪd/ adjective

someone who **is married** has a husband or wife: *Edward isn't married, he's single.* * *Alice and Gary are getting married.*

OPPOSITE: single

match /mætʃ/ noun C **matches**

a game in which people or teams play against each other in a sport: *Who won the match?* * *Venus Williams played a great tennis match.*

mathematics /ˌmæθə'mætɪks/ noun U

the study and science of numbers, shapes, and measuring things

maximum /ˈmæksɪməm/ adjective

the largest possible size or number: *What is the maximum speed you can drive in your country?*

OPPOSITE: minimum

meal /mi:l/ noun C **meals**

food that you eat at a particular time: *We usually have a big meal in the evening.* * *Cara is going to cook her boyfriend a meal.*

mean /mi:n/ verb T **means, meaning, meant, have meant**

1 to have a particular meaning: *What does that sign mean?* * *I don't know what this means, it's in Spanish.*

2 to have something as a result or make something happen: *Millions of people are learning English, but that doesn't mean it's easy.*

**means** /mi:nz/ *noun* C **means**

a way of doing something: *Flying is a very quick means of transportation.*

meat /mi:t/ *noun* U

the parts of an animal that you can cook and eat: *Vegetarians don't eat meat.*

media /'mi:diə/ *noun* singular **the media**

newspapers, television, and radio: *Jon wants to work in the media as a journalist.*

**medicine** /'medəsn/ *noun* C **medicines**

a special pill or drink you have when you are sick that helps you to get better: *A lot of people are interested in natural medicines.*

meet /mi:t/ *verb* I, T **meets, meeting, met, have met**

1 to see and speak to someone for the first time: *Where did you meet your boyfriend?* * *Have you met my sister Hannah?*

2 to go somewhere and wait for someone: *I'll meet you at twelve o'clock.*

3 to go somewhere and see and talk to people: *After work I often meet my friends in a coffee shop for a drink.*

message /'mesɪdʒ/ *noun* C **messages**

something you say or write and send to another person: *I sent Ron an email message.* * *Bea was out when I phoned so I left a message.*

method /'meθəd/ *noun* C **methods**

the way that someone does something: *Which method of transport do you use to get to school?* * *There are several different methods of cooking an egg.*

midday /mɪd'deɪ/ *noun* U

the middle of the day; 12 p.m.: *We arrived at about midday.* * *The market closes at midday.*

middle /'mɪdl/ *noun* C **middles**

not near the edge or side of something: *The sun is hottest in the middle of the day.* * *Judy lives in the middle of Paris.*

mile /maɪl/ *noun* C **miles**

a measure of distance that people use in Britain and the US that is equal to 1.6 kilometers: *It's two miles from here to the station.* * *Ten miles is 16 kilometers.*

modern /'mɑ:dəm/ *adjective* **more modern, most modern**

something that is **modern** is made or designed using new ideas or styles: *a modern transport system for the twenty-first century* * *Everything in their house is very modern.*

OPPOSITE: old-fashioned



more /mɔːr/ *adjective*

a bigger amount of something: *Do you want some more coffee?* * *It took more than three hours to drive to Cambridge.*

morning /ˈmɔːrnɪŋ/ *noun C mornings*

the first part of the day before 12 p.m.: *I got the letter on Friday morning. The sun was shining this morning but now it's raining.* * *I start work at six o'clock in the morning.*

mountain /ˈmaʊntən/ *noun C mountains*

a very high hill that is difficult to get to the top of: *The Matterhorn is the highest mountain in Switzerland.*



mouse /maʊs/ *noun C mice* /maɪs/

a small gray or brown animal with a long tail



movement /ˈmuːvmənt/ *noun C movements*

a group of people who have the same ideas and beliefs: *the environmental movement* (=people who want to help to look after and save the environment)

movie /ˈmuːvi/ *noun C movies*

1 a story filmed by a camera as a set of moving pictures, and watched in a movie theater or on television: *Amélie was a great movie.*

2 **the movies** a movie theater: *Do you like going to the movies.*

movie theater /ˈmuːvi ˈθiətər/ *noun C movie theaters*

a place where you go to see a movie: *I went to a movie theater with my boyfriend.*

murder /ˈmɜːrdər/ *verb T murders, murdering, murdered, have murdered*
to deliberately kill another person: *Who murdered President Lincoln?*

museum /ˈmjuːziəm/ *noun C museums*

a place where people can go to look at important objects from the past or works of art: *The museum is free for children and students.* * *London is full of interesting museums.*

N

national lottery /ˌnæʃnəl ˈlɑːtəri/ *noun C national lotteries*

a type of game organized by the government in which people buy tickets with numbers. If you have or choose particular numbers you can win a lot of money: *The biggest prize in the national lottery this week is ten million dollars.*

natural /ˈnætʃərəl/ *adjective more natural, most natural*

something that is **natural** exists in the world of nature and is not caused or made by human beings: *A lot of people are interested in natural medicines made from plants and herbs.*

.....

OPPOSITE: less

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



nature /neɪtʃər/ noun U

all the things in the world like trees, animals, rivers, and mountains that are not made by people: *Small children are fascinated by nature.*



near /nɪər/ adverb, adjective **nearer, nearest**

close to another place: *Zak's school is very near his house.* * *We went to a bar near the river.* * *Where is the nearest subway station?*

OPPOSITE: far

nearby /nɪərbaɪ/ adverb

not far away: *The hotel is downtown and there are lots of stores and restaurants nearby.*

not nearby to

necessary /nesəsəri/ adjective **more necessary, most necessary**

if something is **necessary**, you need to have it for a particular reason or purpose: *It is necessary to have a passport if you want to travel to another country.*

OPPOSITE: unnecessary

need /ni:d/ verb T **needs, needed, needing, have needed**

if you **need** something, you must have it in order to live or do something successfully: *How much water do you need to drink every day?* * *Rick doesn't have any money; he needs to get a job.*

OPPOSITE: do not need

nervous /nɜːrvəs/ adjective **more nervous, most nervous**

worried or afraid about something you have to do, because you think it will be very unpleasant: *When she got on an airplane for the first time she felt quite nervous.*

network /netwɜːrk/ noun C **networks**

a large group of things that are connected to each other across a city, country, etc.: *France has a very efficient train network.* * *a computer network*

new /nuː/ adjective **newer, newest**

1 if something is **new**, someone has just bought it, made it, etc.: *Have you seen Jake's new car?* * *I want a new pair of jeans.*

2 if something is **new**, you have not had it, seen it, learned it, etc., before: *I think Nina's new boyfriend is much nicer than her old one.* * *Let's go and see the new exhibition at the National Gallery.*

OPPOSITE: old

newspaper /nuːzpeɪpər/ noun C **newspapers**

large folded pieces of paper that are printed with news and articles: *He reads the newspaper on the train every morning.*



New World /nu: 'wɜ:rlɔ:/ *noun* U

an old name for the countries that are now called North and South America

nice /naɪs/ *adjective* **nicer, nicest**

1 something **nice** is good, enjoyable, or attractive: *What a nice house!* * *This is the nicest park in New York.*

2 someone who is **nice** is kind or friendly: *"What's Alex like?" "Oh, she's really nice."* * *My teacher is very nice to me.*

3 Nice to meet you say this when you meet someone for the first time

night /naɪt/ *noun* C **nights**

the time when it is dark: *What did you do last night?* (=yesterday in the evening) * *I'm having a party on Saturday night, I hope you can come.*

normal /'nɔ:rməl/ *adjective* **more normal, most normal**

not special or different from usual: *On a normal day it takes me half an hour to get to work.*

north /nɔ:rθ/ *noun* U

one of the four points that tell you the direction of something. **North** is the direction at the top of a map, towards the top of the world: *Liverpool is in the north of England.*



north

south

OPPOSITE: south

nowadays /'naʊədəɪz/ *adverb*

at this time, especially when compared with what happened in the past: *Nowadays, most people have a cellphone.*

novel /'nɔ:vəl/ *noun* C **novels**

a book that tells a long story: *I like reading novels.*

O

occasion /ə'keɪʒn/ *noun* C **occasions**

a day or time when something happens: *I bought this dress to wear on special occasions.*

office /'ɒ:fɪs/ *noun* C **offices**

a room in a building where someone works: *Oliver doesn't like working in an office, he likes to work outside.*





one-way /ˌwʌn 'weɪ/ *adjective*

a **one-way** ticket lets someone travel to a place but not back again: *a one-way ticket to Thailand.*

online /ˌɒnˈlaɪn/ *adverb*

using the Internet: *shopping online* * *Have you ever bought anything online?*

only child /ˌoʊnli 'tʃaɪld/ *noun C* **only children**

an **only child** has no brothers or sisters

open /ˈoʊpən/ *adjective*

1 not closed: *Don't leave the door open.* * *The book was open on the table.*

2 ready for people to go in; not closed: *A lot of supermarkets are open 24 hours a day.*

3 ready for people to use; not closed: *The lines (=telephones) are open from 9 to 6 every day.*

4 possible for anyone to use, do, visit, etc.: *The competition is open to anyone over the age of 18.*

5 an **open** person is easy to talk to and honest: *Klara is very open, she doesn't have any secrets.*

open /ˈoʊpən/ *verb I, T* **opens, opening, opened, have opened**

1 to make something open: *Please open your books to page 12.* * *Can I open the window, please?* * *She opened her eyes.* * *I opened the letter excitedly.*

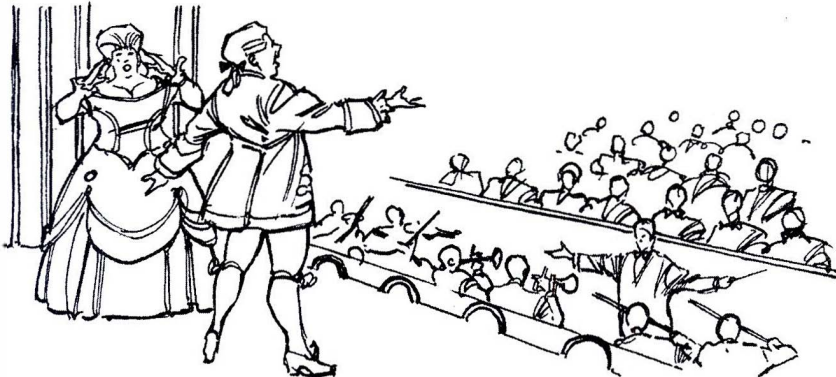
2 to be ready for people to go in: *What time does the bank open?* * *The new gallery opened in 2000.*

open space /ˈoʊpən 'speɪs/ *noun C* **open spaces**

outside in the country and far away from buildings, roads, etc.

opera /'ɑːprə/ *noun C, U*

a musical play in which the actors sing the words to music



order /'ɔːrdər/ *noun C, U* **orders**

1 C something you ask a waiter or waitress to bring you in a restaurant, etc.: *Can I take your order now, please?*

2 U the way that you arrange or place things: *Put the pictures in the correct order.*

OPPOSITE: round-trip

OPPOSITE: close, shut

OPPOSITE: close, shut

1

2



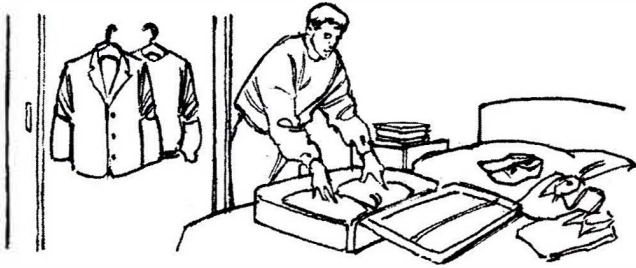
order /'ɔ:rdə/ *verb* T **orders, ordering, ordered, have ordered**
to ask a waiter or waitress to bring you something in a restaurant, etc.:
I ordered a cup of coffee and a sandwich.

ordinary /'ɔ:rdənəri/ *adjective*
not special, unusual, or different in any way: *He was just an ordinary person, but he suddenly became famous.*

originally /ə'ri:dʒɪnəli/ *adverb*
in the beginning: *I am originally from London, but I live in Manchester.*

P

pack /pæk/ *verb* I, T **packs, packing, packed, have packed**
to collect the clothes and other things you need for a journey, and put them in a bag: *It won't take me long to pack for my vacation.*

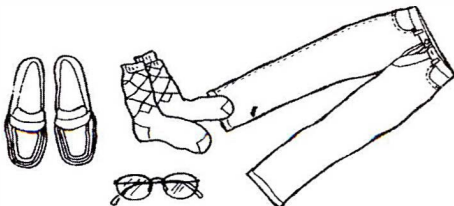


packet /'pækɪt/ *noun* C **packets**
a small bag or box that has food, cigarettes, etc., inside: *a packet of pasta*

painting /'peɪntɪŋ/ *noun* C **paintings**
a picture someone has made using paint: *a painting by Claude Monet*



pair /peɪ/ *noun* C **pairs**
two things or people of the same type: *a pair of earrings* * *Which shoes do you like, the black pair or the red pair?*





personal stereo /ˌpɜːrsənəl ˈsteriəʊ/ *noun* C **personal stereos**

a small cassette player with earphones (=things you put in your ears to listen to something) which you can carry around with you to listen to music

pet /pet/ *noun* C **pets**

an animal that someone keeps and looks after in his or her house, such as a dog or a cat: *Do you have any pets? * We have a pet – a dog called Lucky.*



photography /fəˈtɑːɡrəfi/ *noun* U

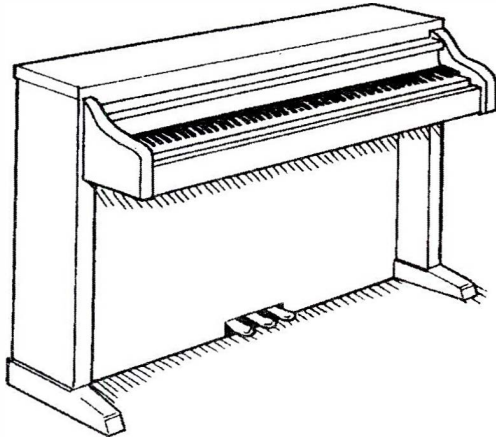
the art or work of taking photographs

physics /ˈfɪzɪks/ *noun* U

the science of how the world works, for example how light, heat, and sound move

piano /piˈænoʊ/ *noun* C **pianos**

a musical instrument that you play with your hands: *Can you play the piano?*



picnic /ˈpɪknɪk/ *noun* C **picnics**

food that you take to eat outside somewhere away from home



piece /piːs/ *noun* C **pieces**

a part of something: *I usually have a cup of coffee and a piece of toast for breakfast. * She cut the cake into six pieces.*

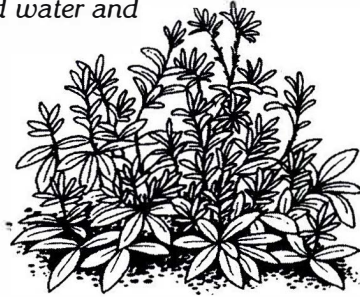


place /pleɪs/ *noun* C **places**

a building, a town, or a country: *Boston is an exciting place to live.*

plant /plænt/ *noun* C **plants**

anything with green leaves that grows in the earth: *Plants need water and light to live.*



platform /plætfɔ:m/ *noun* C **platforms**

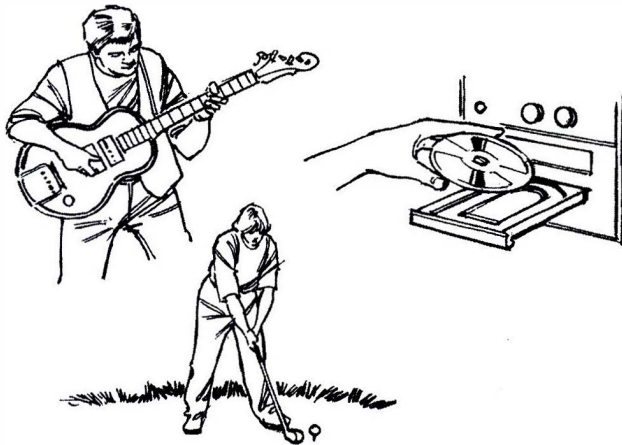
a long flat area in a station where you get on and off a train: *The train for Lyon leaves from platform 10.*

play /pleɪ/ *verb* T **plays, playing, played, have played**

1 to make music with a musical instrument: *Can you play the piano?* * *Dave plays the guitar in a band.*

2 to put a tape or CD into a cassette player or a CD player so you can listen to it: *Let's play my new CD.*

3 to do a game or sport: *Sam hates playing soccer.* * *The president plays golf with his friends every week.*



poem /pəʊəm/ *noun* C **poems**

a piece of writing that is arranged in lines, and often uses words that rhyme (=have the same sound): *The teacher asked us to write a poem about our favorite animal.*

poison /pɔɪzn/ *noun* U

a dangerous liquid or substance that can kill you

polite /pəlaɪt/ *adjective* **politer/more polite, politest/most polite**

behaving in a way that is very nice towards other people and correct for a particular social situation: *The children were all very polite.*

* *Intonation is very important when you want to be polite.*

popular /pəːpjulər/ *adjective* **more popular, most popular**

liked by a lot of people: *Martha was the most popular girl in my class at school.* * *Which actors are popular in your country?*

Vertical dotted line with horizontal dotted lines for translation input.

OPPOSITE: rude



population /ˌpɑːpjʊleɪʃn/ *noun singular*
the number of people living in a place: *The population of the world is more than six billion.*

portrait /pɔːtreɪt/ *noun C portraits*
a painting or picture of someone: *a portrait of the princess*

possible /ˈpɔːsəbl/ *adjective more possible, most possible*
if something is **possible**, someone can do it: *I ran home as fast as possible.* * *There is more than one possible answer to the question.*

postcard /ˈpəʊstkɑːrd/ *noun C postcards*
a card with a photograph or picture on one side that you send to someone: *I sent Susie a postcard of the beach.* (=with a photograph of the beach on it)

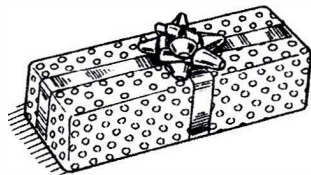
poster /ˈpəʊstər/ *noun C posters*
a large piece of paper with writing or pictures on it that you put on a wall



prefer /prɪfəːr/ *verb T prefers, preferring, preferred, have preferred*
to like one thing or person better than another: *Which do you prefer – lemonade or Coke?* * *I don't drive to work, I prefer to walk.*

pregnant /ˈpregnənt/ *adjective*
a woman or female animal who is **pregnant** is going to have a baby: *How long is a cat pregnant for?*

present /ˈpreznt/ *noun C presents*
a nice thing you give to someone on a special occasion: *Mom got some lovely presents for her birthday.* * *Mom got some lovely birthday presents.*



president /ˈprezɪdnt/ *noun C presidents*
the leader of a government in a country that does not have a king or queen: *President Nelson Mandela* * *Who is the president of the United States?*

price /praɪs/ *noun C prices*
the amount of money that you pay to buy something: *The price is written on the box – it's 40 dollars.*

prize /praɪz/ *noun C prizes*
something special that is given to someone who has won a competition or race or who has done something very good: *There's a prize of \$10,000 for the winner this week.*

A vertical column of dotted lines on the right side of the page, intended for writing translations.



probably /ˈprɔːbəbli/ *adverb*

something that is **probably** true might be true but you are not completely sure: *It will probably take two hours to get to the airport from here.*

problem /ˈprɔːbləm/ *noun C* **problems**

something that makes a situation difficult: *There are a lot of traffic problems downtown. * I had a problem with my computer this morning.*

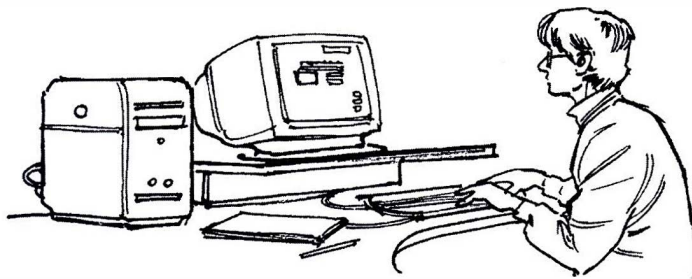
professional /ˌprəfeʃənəl/ *adjective*

a **professional** musician, soccer player, etc., plays music, soccer, etc. as their job and gets paid for it: *Ellie became a professional singer when she was 16.*

OPPOSITE: amateur

programming /ˈprɒɡræmɪŋ/ *noun U*

the work of writing instructions for a computer so that it can do a particular job. A person who does this is a **programmer**.



prohibited /ˌprəʊhɪbɪtɪd/ *adjective*

definitely not allowed, because of an official rule: *Parking on the main street is prohibited at all times.*

OPPOSITE: permitted

promotion /ˌprəməʊʃn/ *noun U*

the work of telling people about products or services and persuading them to buy them: *Cathy works in promotion for a travel company.*

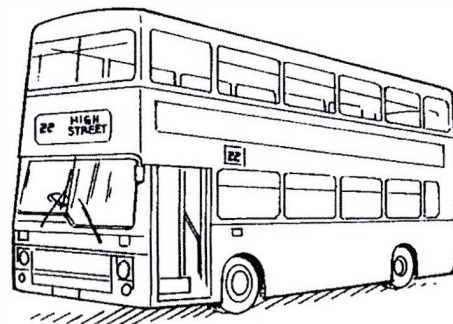
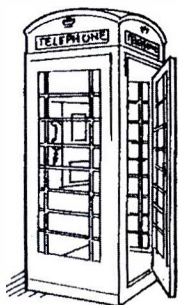
verb = promote

public /ˈpʌblɪk/ *adjective*

1 where other people can see you or be with you, for example in the street or in a restaurant, not in your own home: *There are some public telephones inside the station. * Smoking in public is prohibited in some places.*

OPPOSITE: private

2 **public transportation** transportation services that everyone can use, especially trains and buses: *Is there a good public transportation system in your home town?*





put /pʊt/ verb T **puts, putting, put, have put**

1 to move or place something somewhere: *I'm on a diet – don't put any cheese on my pasta, please!* * *Where did I put my keys?*

2 to write something: *Don't forget to put your name on your homework.*

* *Listen to the story and put the sentences in order.*

Q

qualification /ˌkwɑ:lɪfəˈkeɪʃn/ noun C **qualifications**

you get **qualifications** after you complete a course of study and pass exams: *What qualifications do you need to be a teacher?* * *He has a qualification in Information Technology.*

quiet /kwaɪət/ adjective **quieter, quietest; quietly** adverb

1 without a lot of noise: *I'm trying to study, please be quiet.*

2 not busy and without a lot of things happening: *We had a quiet, relaxing weekend at home.*

1 OPPOSITE: noisy

2 OPPOSITE: busy

R

racing /reɪsɪŋ/ noun U

a sport in which horses or dogs run in a competition to see which is the fastest: *greyhound racing*

radio /reɪdiəʊ/ noun C **radios**

a piece of equipment that brings voices and music from far away so you can hear them: *I always listen to the radio in the mornings.* * *a radio program* * *a program on the radio*

real /riəl/ adjective

something that is **real** actually exists, and is not just a plan or idea: *His dream of the World Wide Web is now real.*

OPPOSITE: imaginary

receive /rɪˈsi:v/ verb T **receives, receiving, received, have received**

to take or get something that someone gives you: *I received Tanya's email this morning.*

reception /rɪˈsepʃn/ noun U

the part of a hotel or office near the entrance, where visitors or customers go when they arrive: *All visitors please report to reception.* (=tell someone in reception that you are here)

recommend /ˌrekəˈmend/ verb T **recommends, recommending, recommended, have recommended**

to suggest to someone that they should do something, go somewhere, buy something, etc.: *Can you recommend a good Italian restaurant?* * *This is a good cheap airline; I recommend it.*

reformer /rɪˈfɔ:mər/ noun **reformers**

someone who wants to change laws or rules because they do not agree with them: *a religious reformer*



TRANSLATION

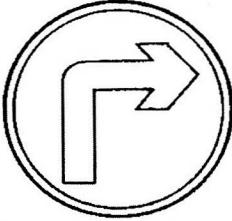
right /raɪt/ *adjective, adverb, noun*

1 adjective opposite of left: *She wears a gold ring on her right hand.*

2 adverb towards the right side: *Turn right at the traffic light.*

3 noun singular the right side of somewhere: *That's me – on the right of the picture.* * *In France they drive on the right.*

4 adjective correct: *Which is the right answer, A, B, or C?* * *You're right, the bank's closed now.* * *Is this the right bus for the airport?*



ring /rɪŋ/ *verb* | **rings, ringing, rang, have rung**

to make the continuous sound of a bell: *The phone's ringing – can you answer it please?*

river /rɪvə/ *noun* C **ivers**

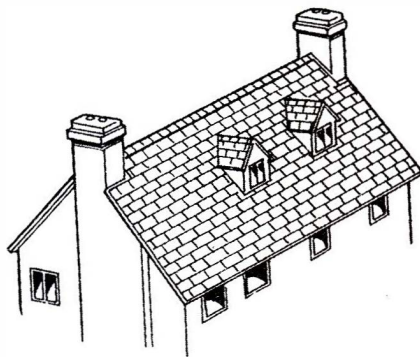
a long line of water that flows through a country towards the sea

rock 'n' roll /rɔ:k ən 'roul/ *noun* U

a type of loud, fast music, which first became popular in the 1950s

roof /ru:f/ *noun* C **roofs**

the top of a house or building



round-trip /raʊnd 'trɪp/ *adjective*

a **round-trip** ticket lets someone travel to a place and back again: *a round-trip ticket from San Francisco to Milan.*

rug /rʌg/ *noun* C **rugs**

a piece of thick material like a small carpet

run /rʌn/ *verb* | **runs, running, ran, have run**

to move very quickly on your legs, going faster than when you walk: *How fast can a cheetah run?* * *If we run, we can catch that bus there!*

.....
OPPOSITE: left

.....
OPPOSITE: wrong

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....
OPPOSITE: one-way

.....

.....

S



safe /seɪf/ *adjective* **safer, safest**

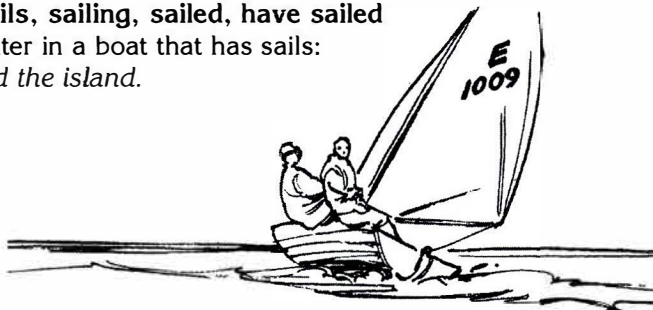
1 not harmful or dangerous: *When the traffic light is red it is **safe to cross** the road. * Flying is one of the **safest** forms of transportation.*

2 a **safe** place is one where something will not easily get lost or stolen: *Keep your tickets and passport in a **safe** place.*

sail /seɪl/ *verb* | **sails, sailing, sailed, have sailed**

to travel across water in a boat that has sails:

They sailed around the island.



sales clerk /seɪlz ˌklɜːk/ *noun* **C sales clerks**

someone whose job is selling things in a store

scenery /ˈsiːnəri/ *noun* **U**

all the natural things you can see in an area of countryside, such as fields, mountains, and lakes: *beautiful scenery*

school /skuːl/ *noun* **C schools**

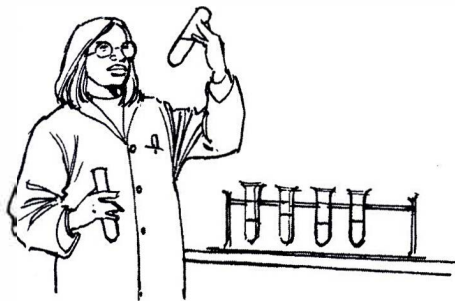
a place where children go to learn or where you go to learn a special thing: *Which school does Lucy go to? * art school*

science /ˈsaɪəns/ *noun* **U**

the study of the natural and physical world to explain what things are made of, how they work, etc.: *Physics and chemistry are part of science.*

scientist /ˈsaɪəntɪst/ *noun* **C scientists**

someone who studies or works in science



sea /siː/ *noun* **U the sea**

the water that covers large parts of the world: *I would like to live near the sea. * You can see the sea from the window.*

seat /siːt/ *noun* **C seats**

something you sit on, especially in a car, train, movie theater, etc.: *the back seat of the car * Excuse me, is this seat free?*

.....
OPPOSITE: dangerous

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



see /si:/ verb I, T **sees, seeing, saw, have seen**

1 T to look at things with your eyes: *You can see all over the city from the top of the tower.* * *What animals did you see at the zoo?*

2 T to meet or visit someone, or spend some time with them: *I saw Jane a few days ago.*

3 T to watch a game, TV program, etc.: *Let's go and see a movie this evening.*

4 I to understand: *"Just press this red button to take a photo."* "Oh, I see."

5 T to look at something to find information: *See the useful language box.*

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5

sell /sel/ verb T, I **sells, selling, sold, have sold**

1 to have something in a shop for people to buy: *Do you sell computer games?*

2 to be bought by people: *The book has sold millions of copies.*

.....
OPPOSITE: buy

send /send/ verb T **sends, sending, sent, have sent**

to arrange for something to go to another place: *I sent the letter two days ago but it hasn't arrived.* * *Email is a very quick way to send information to someone.*

.....
OPPOSITE: receive

series /sɪrɪz/ noun C **series**

a set of TV or radio programs that have the same people or the same subject in them: *Who played Superman in the TV series?*

.....

shave /ʃeɪv/ verb T, I **shaves, shaving, shaved, have shaved**

to cut off hair from your face or body: *Andy has shaved his head.* * *Andy has a shaved head.*

.....

shine /ʃaɪn/ verb I **shines, shining, shone, have shone**

to make light or look bright: *The sun is shining today.*

.....

shop /ʃɑ:p/ verb I **shops, shopping, shopped, have shopped**

to buy things from a store: *It's easy to shop by telephone or over the Internet nowadays.*

.....

shopping /ʃɑ:pɪŋ/ noun U

1 when you go to stores to buy things or to look at things you might buy later: *Debs hates shopping.* * *How often do you go shopping?*

* *I went shopping this morning to get a present for Mark.*

2 all the things you have bought from stores: *a heavy bag of shopping*

.....

shopping center /ʃɑ:pɪŋ ˌsentər/ noun C **shopping centers**

a large covered area where there are a lot of different stores

.....

short /ʃɔ:t/ adjective **shorter, shortest**

1 not long from one end to the other: *Rose looks great with short hair.* * *a short letter*

2 only lasting a little time: *We had a short conversation on the phone.*

3 not tall: *Joe is quite a short man.*

.....
1 OPPOSITE: long

.....
2 OPPOSITE: long
3 OPPOSITE: tall

shorts /ʃɔ:ts/ noun plural

short pants that you wear for sport or in hot weather

.....



sights /saɪts/ *noun plural*

the interesting places there are to visit in a place: *The Eiffel Tower is one of the most famous sights in Paris.*

sightseeing /saɪtˌsiːɪŋ/ *noun U*

when you visit famous and interesting places as a tourist: *We're going to go sightseeing in London for the day.*

sign /sɑːm/ *noun C signs*

a picture, notice, or board that gives information, for example on a road or in a public place: *The sign said "No Smoking" in four different languages.* * *What does that sign mean?*
* *Follow the road signs to the airport.*



sign /sɑːm/ *verb I, T signs, signing, signed, have signed*

to write your name on a letter, form, etc.: *Please sign here.* * *When did Washington sign the Declaration of Independence?*



similar /sɪmɪlər/ *adjective*

like someone or something but not exactly the same: *Fran's jacket is very similar to mine.* * *Leo and his brother Sam are very similar.*

similarity /sɪmɪləˈrɪəti/ *noun C similarities*

one of the ways in which two people or things are similar to each other: *There are a lot of similarities between Britain and Germany.*

simple /sɪmpl/ *adjective simpler, simplest*

basic and plain, without anything extra or unnecessary added: *We had a meal of bread, cheese, and fruit – simple but delicious!* * *It is possible to communicate using very simple language.*

OPPOSITE: complex

sing /sɪŋ/ *verb I, T sings, singing, sang, have sung*

to make music with your voice: *Children love singing.* * *She sang a lovely song in the school play.*

singer /sɪŋər/ *noun C singers*

someone whose job is singing: *Céline Dion is one of my favorite singers.*

single /sɪŋɡl/ *adjective*

not married: *Rob is about 35, rich, handsome – and single!*

OPPOSITE: married

sister /sɪstər/ *noun C sisters*

a girl or woman who has the same parents as you: *I have two sisters, Amanda and Helen.*



size /saɪz/ *noun* C **sizes**

1 how big or small something is: *Which size of Coke would you like, small, medium, or large?*

2 how big or small clothes, shoes, etc., are, especially according to a set of measurements: *Can I try these shoes in a bigger size, please?*

ski resort /'ski: rɪzɔ:rt/ *noun* C **ski resorts**

a town in the mountains where people go skiing: *a popular ski resort in the Swiss Alps*

sleep /sli:p/ *verb* I **sleeps, sleeping, slept, have slept**

to rest completely with your eyes closed, especially at night: *Cats sleep for about 16 hours a day. * Be quiet, the baby's sleeping.*

sleep /sli:p/ *noun* U

time that you are asleep: *How many hours' sleep do you have every night?*

slim /slɪm/ *adjective* **slimmer, slimmest**

a slim person has a fairly thin body and is not at all fat: *Heather is very slim.*

slow /sləʊ/ *adjective* **slower, slowest**

not moving or happening quickly: *This train is very slow.*

slowly /'sləʊli/ *adverb*

not quickly: *We walked slowly up to the top of the hill. * Nicky eats very slowly.*

small /smɔ:l/ *adjective* **smaller, smallest**

little; not big: *This car is too small for our family, we need a bigger one. * She comes from a small village in Poland.*

snack /snæk/ *noun* C **snacks**

food that you eat between your main meals, for example some fruit or a sandwich

sneaker /sni:kə/ *noun* C **sneakers**

a shoe made for running or playing sports, but which many people wear as an ordinary shoe: *a pair of sneakers.*

software /'sɔ:ftweɪ/ *noun* U

programs (=instructions that tell a computer what to do) that you use on a computer

soldier /'səʊldʒɪə/ *noun* C **soldiers**

someone who is a member of an army (=people who are trained to fight to protect their country)

son /sʌn/ *noun* C **sons**

a boy child: *Beatrix has two young sons, Émile and Max.*

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

OPPOSITE: quick, fast

.....

OPPOSITE: quickly

.....

OPPOSITE: big, large

.....

.....

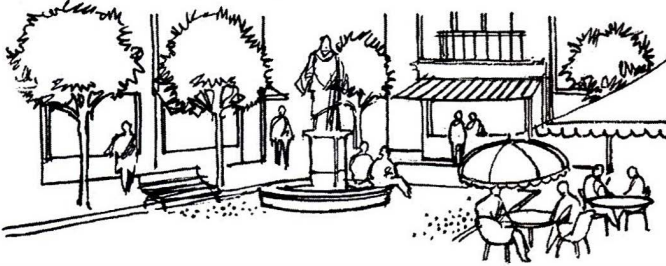
.....

.....

.....

**square** /skwer/ noun C squares

an open area in a town with buildings around it: *There is a market in the town square every Friday.*

**stamp** /stæmp/ noun C stamps

a small piece of paper you buy and put on a letter in order to send it

star /stɑːr/ noun C stars

a famous and very good singer, performer, soccer player, etc.: *Harrison Ford is the star of many Hollywood movies.* * *Who is your favorite pop star?*

start /stɑːrt/ verb I, T starts, starting, started, have started

to begin something or begin to do something: *When did you start learning English?* * *What time do you start work?* * *The movie starts at 8:30.*

OPPOSITE: end, finish

statue /stætʃuː/ noun C statues

a model of a person, made out of stone, metal, etc., and often put in a public place so that people can look at it

stay /steɪ/ verb I stays, staying, stayed, have stayed

1 to live in a place for a short time: *We stayed in a lovely hotel in Edinburgh.* * *How long are you going to stay in Japan?*

2 to continue to be open and not closed: *The supermarket stays open until midnight.*

3 to not go out in the evening, but stay at home: *I'm too tired to go out – I'm staying in tonight to watch TV.*

3 OPPOSITE: go

step /step/ noun C steps

stone or wooden things you walk on to go up and down in a place outside

still /stiːl/ adverb

say this to show that something has not changed: *I still love you.* * *My sister is still at school.*

stop /stɑːp/ verb I, T stops, stopping, stopped, have stopped

1 I to finish moving, working, or doing something: *Let's stop for a cup of coffee.* * *It's stopped raining now.*

2 T to not do something any more: *Why don't you stop smoking?* * *Stop asking so many questions!*

3 T to make someone or something stop: *She stopped someone in the street and asked for directions.* * *Please stop the car – I feel sick!*

OPPOSITE: start

**surprise** /sə'praɪz/ *noun* C **surprises**

something nice that happens suddenly when you do not expect it: *Thanks for the present, what a lovely surprise!*
 * *I didn't know about the party – it was a complete surprise.*

surprised /sə'praɪzd/ *adjective* **more surprised, most surprised**
 how you feel when something happens which you did not expect:
Everyone was very surprised when Jo got married.

surprising /sə'praɪzɪŋ/ *adjective* **more surprising, most surprising**
 if something is **surprising**, you did not expect it to happen: *It's not surprising* (=it doesn't make you surprised) *that Sherrie is good at swimming – all her family play a lot of sports.*

survey /'sɜ:rveɪ/ *noun* C **surveys**
 asking questions about what people think, or what they do: *a survey on people's favorite TV programs*

sweater /'swetə/ *noun* C **sweaters**
 a warm piece of clothing you wear over the top half of your body

swim /swɪm/ *verb* I **swims, swimming, swam** /swæm/, **have swum** /swʌm/
 to move your body through water: *Can you swim? * I learned to swim in the sea when I was a child.*

symphony /'sɪmfəni/ *noun* C **symphonies**
 a long piece of classical music played by an orchestra: *a Beethoven symphony*

T

take /teɪk/ *verb* T **takes, taking, took, have taken**
1 to travel in a bus, train, etc.: *I usually take the subway to work. * We took a train to London.*
2 to go with someone to a place: *I'll take you home in my car. * Susie has to take the dog for a walk every day.*
3 to move or carry something somewhere: *Take an umbrella with you, it might rain.*
4 **take an exam, take a course:** *I am taking my English exam tomorrow. * Tina's taking a course in Italian*
5 **take a photograph** to use a camera to photograph someone or something: *I took lots of photos at the party.*
6 **it takes** a particular amount of time is needed to do something: *How long does it take to get downtown from here? * It takes about half an hour by train. * My journey to school takes 15 minutes.*

take out /,teɪk 'aʊt/ *verb* I, T **takes out, taking out, took out, have taken out**
 to buy food from a restaurant and take it with you to eat somewhere else: *Do you want to eat here or take out?*

tall /tɔ:l/ *adjective* **taller, tallest**
tall people, trees, or buildings have a greater height than most other people or things: *Jack is 1m 65cm tall (=his height is 1m 65cm). * What is the tallest building in the world?*

OPPOSITE: short



tartan /'tɑ:rtɪn/ *noun* U

a pattern of squares and lines that comes from Scotland

task /tæsk/ *noun* C **tasks**

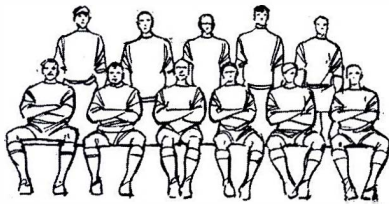
a piece of work that you must do: *Do the task on page 12 in pairs.* * *James helps his mother with easy tasks like washing the dishes.*

teach /ti:tʃ/ *verb* T **teaches, teaching, taught, have taught**

to give lessons to children in a school, or to students at a college or university: *Mark teaches geography in a high school.*

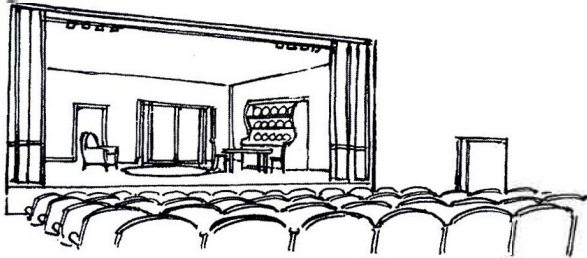
team /ti:m/ *noun* C **teams**

a group of people who play a game together: *How many people are there on a soccer team?* * *We took the quiz in small teams.*



theater /'θiətə:/ *noun* C **theaters**

a building where plays and other kinds of entertainment are performed on a stage: *Do you like going to the theater?*



think of /'θɪŋk əv/ *verb* T **thinks of, thinking of, thought of, have thought of**

to have an opinion about someone or something: *"What did you think of the new teacher?" "Oh, she was really nice."*

thirsty /'θɜ:rsti/ *adjective* **thirstier, thirstiest**

when you are **thirsty**, you need to drink something: *I'm thirsty. Can I have a glass of water, please?*

~~not have thirsty~~

through /θru:/ *adverb, preposition*

from one side or end to the other side or end: *We walked through the park.* * *One day an important letter came through the door.*

ticket office /'tɪkɪt ɔ:fɪs/ *noun* C **ticket offices**

a place in a station, theater, etc., where you buy tickets





track /træk/ *noun* C **tracks**
the metal things that a train moves along

tradition /trə'dɪʃn/ *noun* C **traditions**
a custom that has existed for a long time among a group of people: *In Britain it is a tradition to give presents at Christmas.*

traffic /'træfɪk/ *noun* U
all the cars and other vehicles that are on the roads: *The traffic's very busy in the mornings and evenings.*

traffic jam /'træfɪk dʒæm/ *noun* C
a long line of cars, buses, etc., which are either moving very slowly or not moving at all: *There are always a lot of traffic jams in Bangkok.*

transportation /træns'pɔ:teɪʃn/ *noun* U
ways of moving people or goods from one place to another, for example cars, trains, and planes: *I don't have a car so I use public transportation.*
* *Planes are a very fast method of transportation.*

travel /trævl/ *verb* I **travels, traveling, traveled, have traveled**
to go from one place or country to another: *Most people travel into downtown London by bus and subway.* * *Bill writes travel books.*
(=books about traveling)

tropical /tra:'pɪkl/ *adjective*
from a country in the very hot parts of the world: *tropical medicine*

tunnel /'tʌnl/ *noun* C **tunnels**
a passage under the ground, under a river, or through a mountain: *The train went into a tunnel.*

turn off /tɜ:m 'ɒ:f/ *verb* T **turns off, turning off, turned off, have turned off**
to move a switch or handle that controls something so that it stops working: *Please turn off cellphones in the movie theater.*

OPPOSITE: turn on

turn on /tɜ:m 'ɒ:n/ *verb* T **turns on, turning on, turned on, have turned on**
to move a switch or handle that controls something so that it starts to work: *Can you turn on the light, please?*

OPPOSITE: turn off

typewriter /'taɪp,rɪtə/ *noun* C **typewriters**
a machine that prints letters or numbers onto paper when you press its keys. In most offices, there are now usually computers instead of typewriters.

typical /'tɪpɪkl/ *adjective* **more typical, most typical**
having most of the qualities that a particular type of person, thing, or place usually has: *This soup is a typical dish from the south of Spain.*

U

uncle /'ʌŋkl/ *noun* C **uncles**
the brother of your father or mother, or the husband of your aunt: *Uncle John lives in America.*



understand /ʌndə'stænd/ verb I,T **understands, understanding, understood, have understood**

to know what something means or why something happens: *Sorry, I don't understand, can you say that again, please?* * *No one understood how the accident happened.*

uniform /'ju:nɪfɔ:m/ noun C **uniforms**

a special set of clothes that people wear when they work in some jobs, or that children have to wear at some schools: *Our school uniform is green and white.*

unnecessary /ʌn'nɛsəseri/ adjective

if something is **unnecessary**, you don't need it: *We can live without all this new technology – I think it's unnecessary.*

OPPOSITE: necessary

unusual /ʌn'ju:ʒuəl/ adjective **more unusual, most unusual**

different from what is usual or ordinary: *This cheese has an unusual taste.*

OPPOSITE: usual

useful /'ju:sfl/ adjective **more useful, most useful**

a **useful** thing can help you do something more easily: *"Please" and "thank you" are very useful words to learn in a foreign language.* * *A cellphone can be very useful.*

usual /'ju:ʒuəl/ adjective **usually** adverb

normal and ordinary; happening often: *I woke up at 7 o'clock this morning as usual.*

OPPOSITE: unusual

V

vacation /və'keɪʃən/ noun C **vacations**

time you spend in a different place, in order to rest and enjoy yourself: *What's the best place for a vacation in your country?* • *Alan is on vacation in Australia at the moment.*

variety /və'raɪəti/ noun C **varieties**

a lot of different types of things: *There is a large variety of restaurants in London.*

vegetable /'vedʒtəbl/ noun C **vegetables**

food that comes from plants, such as carrots, potatoes, and beans

video /'vɪdiəʊ/ noun C, U **videos**

1 U a type of tape for recording film, TV programs, etc: *I've got lots of films on video.*

2 C a film or program that is recorded on videotape: *I'm going to watch a video tonight.*

3 C a machine for recording and watching videotapes: *I've set the video/video recorder to record the program so we can watch it later.*

village /'vɪlɪdʒ/ noun C **villages**

a very small town in a country area: *She comes from a small village in Mexico.*



violin /ˈvaɪəlɪn/ *noun* C **violins**
a musical instrument with strings



visit /ˈvɪzɪt/ *verb* T **visits, visiting, visited, have visited**
to go to see a person or a place for a short time: *Gina is going to visit her parents tomorrow.* * *There are a lot of interesting places to visit in New Zealand.*

visitor /ˈvɪzɪtər/ *noun* C **visitors**
someone who goes to see a person or place for a short time: *We have some visitors this weekend.* * *Thousands of visitors come to Warwick Castle every year.*

W

wait /weɪt/ *verb* I **waits, waiting, waited, have waited**
to stay in a place until someone or something comes, or until something happens: *In Tokyo, you don't have to wait a long time for a subway train.* * *I'll wait for you outside the movie theater.*

walk /wɔ:k/ *noun* C **walks**
1 go for a walk to walk somewhere for exercise or enjoyment: *It's a lovely day – let's go for a walk by the river.*
2 a journey you make by walking: *It's a ten-minute walk from here to the nearest stores.*

walk /wɔ:k/ *verb* I **walks, walking, walked, have walked**
to move somewhere on your feet: *It's better for children to walk to school than to go by car.* * *We walked around the old city for hours.*

war /wɔ:r/ *noun* C **wars**
a period of fighting between two countries or groups of people: *The war ended in 1945.* * *Have you seen the movie Star Wars?*

watch /wɔ:tʃ/ *verb* T **watches, watching, watched, have watched**
to look at someone doing something or at something that is happening for a period of time: *We watched a great movie on TV last night.* * *I don't play soccer but I like watching it.*

way /weɪ/ *noun* C **ways**
1 the road that you have to go on to get to a place: *Can you tell me the way downtown from here?*
2 on the way when you are going somewhere: *I stopped on the way to buy some flowers for Mary.*
3 all the way all of the distance: *He traveled all the way from India by boat.*
4 how you do something: *There is more than one way to learn a language.* * *I love the way of life (=the way that people live) here in California.*

not the same as **expect**

not ~~I don't play soccer~~ but
I like seeing it.



wear /wer/ *verb* T **wears, wearing, wore, have worn**
to have clothes on your body: *When I'm not working I like to wear jeans and a T-shirt.* * *Emma wore a beautiful red dress to the party.*

weather /weðər/ *noun* U
how hot or cold it is, and how much sun, wind, or rain there is somewhere at a particular time: *What's the weather like in New Zealand?* * *We had fantastic weather on vacation.*

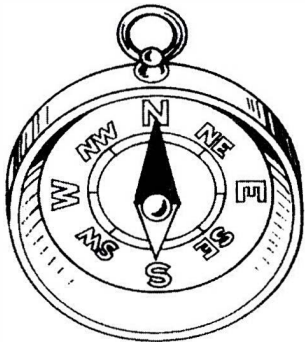
web /web/ *noun* C **webs**
1 a thin net of threads that a spider makes to catch insects
2 a number of things that are all connected to each other: *a web of information*
3 **the World Wide Web** a huge network of files that link text, pictures and sounds on the Internet so that people can find and store information easily

web page /webpeɪdʒ/ *noun* C **web pages**
where you can find information about something on the Internet

weigh /weɪ/ *verb* T **weighs, weighing, weighed, have weighed**
to measure a particular amount in weight: *The baby weighed three kilos when she was born.* * *How much does a whale weigh?*

west /west/ *noun* U
one of the four points that tell you the direction of something. **West** is the way you look to see the sun go down: *Thomas lives in the west of Ireland.*

west



whistle /ˈwɪsl/ *noun* C **whistles**
a thing you put in your mouth and blow to make a loud noise

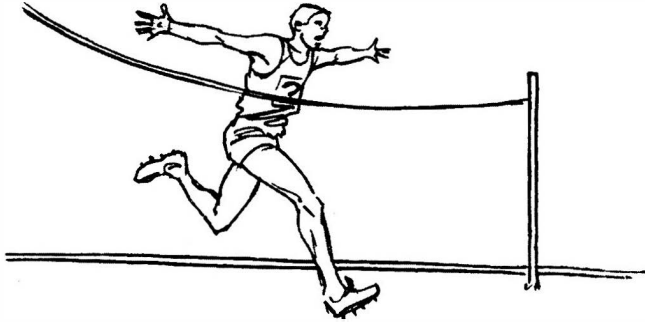


widowed /ˈwɪdoʊd/ *adjective*
someone who is **widowed** was married but whose husband or wife has died

OPPOSITE: east



win /wɪn/ *verb* T **wins, winning, won, have won**
 to be the most successful person in a game, race, competition, etc.:
Who do you think is going to win the election?
 ⇨ Someone who wins something is a **winner**.



OPPOSITE: lose

wind /wɪnd/ *noun* U
 air that moves: *"Candle in the wind" is a song by Elton John.*

wine /waɪn/ *noun* U
 an alcoholic drink made from grapes

wonderful /wʌndəfəl/ *adjective*
 very good or enjoyable: *I had a wonderful time in Madrid.*

work /wɜːrk/ *verb* I **works, working, worked, have worked**
 to do something as a job: *Joe works as a taxi driver.* * *Where do you work?* * *Skip is a working dog (=a dog that works) – he helps the police to find drugs.*

writer /ˈraɪtər/ *noun* C **writers**
 a person who writes books or stories or for newspapers: *Shakespeare is one of the most famous writers in English.*

X

X-ray /ˈeks reɪ/ *noun* C **X-rays**
 a type of photograph that a doctor takes of the inside of someone's body

Y

yard /jɑːrd/ *noun* C **yards**
 a piece of land in front of or behind a house where you can grow flowers or sit and relax: *The children are playing in the yard.*

young /jʌŋ/ *adjective* **younger, youngest**
 a young person has not yet lived for a long time: *Young people from all over the world come here to study English.*

OPPOSITE: old

Z

zoology /zəʊˈlɒdʒi/ *noun* U
 the study of animals and how they live

A M E R I C A N C U T T I N G E D G E

Everything you expect from a world-class course ... and more

Cutting Edge is a multilevel general English course for adults and young adults. It combines rich international content, comprehensive grammar, and real-life functional language within a clear, easy-to-teach structure.

Cutting Edge includes these additional key features:

- ▶ **High-frequency, useful vocabulary**
A special focus on phrases and language “chunks” makes vocabulary easy to remember and easy to use
- ▶ **Regular, well-structured speaking tasks**
A straightforward structure of task preparation, performance, and outcome develops students’ speaking skills
- ▶ **Complete teaching program**
 - Unique *Minidictionary* helps train the learner to study independently
 - *Teacher’s Resource Books* with a large bank of photocopiable activities, teacher’s tips, and alternative teaching suggestions

www.irLanguage.com

مرجع زبان ایرانیان



Students’ Book (with *Minidictionary*)
Class Cassettes/Audio CDs (set of 2)
Workbook
Student’s Cassette/Audio CD
Teacher’s Resource Book
Tests

